Pilot Guide

GENESYS AEROSYSTEMS

3D SYNTHETIC VISION EFIS

HIGHWAY-IN-THE-SKY NAVIGATION

GRAPHICAL FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

INTEGRATED AUDIO/RADIO MANAGEMENT


# IDU-450 Version 8.0F Pilot Guide (Rotorcraft)

# Pilot Operating Guide and Reference

## (Rotorcraft)

## EFIS Software Version 8.0F

## Document 64-000102-080F

© 2018

Genesys Aerosystems

All Rights Reserved

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form, or by any means, without prior written consent of Genesys Aerosystems.

FlightLogic and Virtual VFR are trademarks of Genesys Aerosystems.

All other brand names and trademarks are the property of their respective holders.

One S-TEC Way, Municipal Airport, Mineral Wells TX 76067

Phone: (800) 872-7832 Fax: (940) 325-3904

www.genesys-aerosystems.com

# Revision Record

| Rev | Notes/Pages changed, added, or deleted by current revision | Date | Author |
|---|---|---|---|
| A | Corrected typographical errors in undistributed original document. | 03/2018 | G. Schmidt |

Retain this record in front of manual. Upon receipt of a revision, insert changes and complete table below.

| Revision Number | Revision Date | Insertion Date/Initials |
|---|---|---|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

Table of Contents

# List of Figures and Tables

# Section 1 Introduction

## 1.1. Introduction

Aviation has become more complex with sophisticated “automation centered” systems, which minimize pilot involvement and automate control of the aircraft and its systems, thereby relegating the pilot to the role of manager and emergency backup.

The Genesys Aerosystems Electronic Flight Instrument System (EFIS) is designed as a “pilot-centered” system. While still highly automated, it presents the pilot with information necessary to make decisions and take appropriate actions. For example, the Highway-in-the-Sky (HITS) allows for highly automated approaches, but its predictive nature provides the pilot awareness of upcoming maneuvers. Instead of overloading the pilot with information and options, the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS presents only necessary information to reduce workload, decrease task complexity, and minimize confusion, which results in safer flying with less stress and fatigue.

The Genesys Aerosystems EFIS goal is IFR-VFR equivalence with HUD symbology overlaying real-time 3-D virtual view of the outside world. This “synthetic vision” provides the pilot in IMC with simple visual clues for navigation and aircraft control as those used in VFR conditions. The “virtual VFR” eliminates the need to scan multiple instruments for aircraft control or interpret complicated enroute and approach procedures. As experience is gained with this integrated system, the pilot will fly with more precision, awareness, and confidence.

## 1.2. EFIS/FMS Description

The integrated display unit (IDU) has eight pushbuttons along the vertical sides referenced as L1 through L4 starting at the top left corner of the display moving down and R1 through R4 from the top right corner moving down the display from a pilot’s perspective.

There are two encoders along the bottom with the left encoder only controlling the backlighting intensity left-hand encoder (❷). References throughout this guide refer to the right-hand encoder (❶) and when to push and/or scroll for desired outcomes.


**Figure 1-1: IDU-450 Input Identification**

On the bezel between the two encoders, a slip indicator or blank housing acts as the USB memory door. When lifted prior to power-up, the ground maintenance mode is initiated after power-up. If a limits change, software, or database update is planned, the USB drive must be inserted prior to power-up.

A sensor on the face of the IDU bezel measures ambient light levels. Use the left encoder to control the brightness of the panel lighting or display lighting. Panel lighting refers to the illumination of legends, encoders, and buttons (push and scroll clockwise to increase or counter clockwise to decrease). Display lighting refers to the illumination of the LCD display (without pushing, scroll as described with panel lighting). Lighting may be controlled locally or remotely with a default state being with the local control.

**NOTE:**

If entering ground maintenance mode with bright light shining or reflecting directly into the display, shield the light sensor to avoid the IDU from going directly into the flight mode.

## 1.3. About This Guide

Operation of the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS is described in detail and divided into sections as follows:

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**: Locate areas by topic

**INTRODUCTION (Section 1)**: Basic explanation of the pilot guide.

**SYSTEM OVERVIEW (Section 2)**: Description of system and hardware; IDU behavior during initialization; warning alerts, time-critical warning alerts, master visual and aural alerts caution alerts, and advisory alerts with conditions; coloring conventions; abbreviations and acronyms; and database update procedures.

**DISPLAY SYMBOLOGY (Section 3)**: Identification of each screen element of the PFD/MFD, and explanation of symbology.

**REVERSIONARY MODES (Section 4)**: Views of displays with various sensor failed conditions and resulting symbology, as well as, examples of various configurations and display formats used with specific tables showing affected functions. Explanation of what to expect when a particular sensor fails and what changes on the display immediately or after a specified amount of time.

**MENU FUNCTIONS AND STEP-BY-STEP PROCEDURES (Section 5)**: Menu structure of each feature and step-by-step procedures for operation of each task. Basic description of all encoder and button functions with menu tile definitions.

**QUICK START TUTORIAL (Section 6)**: Basics necessary for flying a flight with this system. Includes simple steps to manage displays for existing flight conditions to quickly gain familiarity with where to locate controls to manipulate the system for each operation.

**IFR PROCEDURES (Section 7)**: Detailed information and instruction about selecting and flying instrument procedures with examples of the most popular published procedures with views of referenced published procedures. Includes descriptions of selection of departure, published instrument approach, standard terminal arrival procedures, as well as, how the active flight plan quickly reflects changes to ATC clearances.

**TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (Section 8)**: Description of Enhanced HTAWS and HTAWS functionality for this aircraft with all configurations. Defines the various parameters, which automatically apply to each mode of flight.

**APPENDIX (Section 9)**: Contains support material and other useful information about system operation, guidance from Jeppesen, and supplemental information such as flight planning; magnetic vs. true north modes; airspeed/altitude miscompare thresholds; EFIS Training Tool; and downloading routes / user waypoints.

**APPENDICES**: Traffic, Remote Bugs Panel, WX-500 Lightning Strikes, Datalink, Weather Radar, and Video. Sections on equipment and features not installed in every aircraft and may be removed at the discretion of the end-user.

**INDEX**: Alphabetical listing of terms or keywords with corresponding page numbers.

**GLOSSARY**: Alphabetical listing of definitions for terms.

**This pilot guide must be carried in the aircraft and made available to the pilot at all times. It can only be used in conjunction with the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) approved Rotorcraft Flight Manual (RFM). Refer to the applicable AFM for aircraft specific information, such as unique ground tests, limitations, and emergency procedures.**

**Genesys Aerosystems is committed to producing the highest quality product possible and welcomes feedback concerning this publication. Please e-mail comments and suggestions to genesys-support@genesys-aerosystems.com**

**If you encounter problems with the operation of your Genesys Aerosystems EFIS, please contact your display dealer for service and repairs or visit www.genesys-aerosystems.com.**

# Section 2 System Overview

## 2.1. Abbreviations and Acronyms

| | |
|---|---|
| µm Hg | Micrometer of Mercury |
| 0R | No Radius |
| 3-D | Three-Dimensional |
| AC | Advisory Circular |
| ACTV | Active |
| ADAHRS | Air Data Attitude Heading Reference System |
| ADC | Air Data Computer |
| ADF | Automatic Direction Finder |
| ADS-B | Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast |
| AFCS | Automatic Flight Control System |
| AFM | Aircraft Flight Manual |
| AGL | Above Ground Level |
| AHRS | Attitude Heading Reference System |
| AIRAC | Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control |
| AIRMET | Airmen's Meteorological Information |
| ALT | Pressure Altitude |
| ALT SEL | Altitude Selection |
| AMLCD | Active Matrix Liquid Crystal Display |
| ANP | Actual Navigation Performance |
| ANT | Antenna |
| AP | Autopilot |
| APP | Waypoint is part of an Instrument Approach Procedure |
| APPR | Approach |
| APT | Airport |
| APV | Approach with Vertical Guidance |
| AOA | Angle of Attack |
| ARINC | Aeronautical Radio, Inc. |
| ARTCC | Air Route Traffic Control Center |
| AS | SAE Aerospace Standard |

| | |
|---|---|
| ASEL | Aircraft Selected Altitude |
| ATC | Air Traffic Control |
| ATT | Attitude |
| Baro | Barometric setting |
| Baro-VNAV | Barometric Vertical Navigation |
| BC | Backcourse navigation |
| BFO | Beat Frequency Oscillator |
| BRT | Brightness |
| BTM | Bottom |
| C | Celsius |
| CA | Course to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| CALC | as in RAIM (R2) |
| CAS | Crew Alerting System |
| CD | Course to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| CCW | Counter Clockwise |
| CDA | Continuous Descent Approach |
| CDI | Course Deviation Indicator |
| CF | Course to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| CI | Course to Intercept (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| CLR | Clear |
| CNX | Cancel |
| COM | Communication |
| CONT | Continue |
| CPLT | Co-Pilot |
| CPM | Computer Processor Module |
| CPU | Central Processing Unit |
| CR | Course to Radial Termination (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| CRC | Cyclic Redundancy Check |
| CRS | Course |
| CSA | Conflict Situation Awareness (ADS-B) |
| CTRST | Contrast |
| CW | Clockwise |
| dBZ | Decibel relative to radar reflectivity (Z) |

| | |
|---|---|
| DCLTR | Declutter |
| DCND | Descend |
| DEC HT | Decision Height Bug |
| DEL | Delete |
| DESIG | Designate |
| DF | Direct to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| DFCS | Digital Flight Control System |
| DFLT | Default |
| DG | Directional Gyro |
| DH | Decision Height |
| DLNK | Datalink |
| DME | Distance Measuring Equipment |
| DO | RTCA Document |
| DOD | Department of Defense |
| DP | Departure Procedure |
| DR | Dead Reckoning |
| EFIS | Electronic Flight Instrument System |
| EGM | Earth Gravity Model |
| EGNOS | European Geostationary Navigation Overlay Service |
| EGPWS | Enhanced Ground Proximity Warning System |
| EQPMNT | Equipment |
| ESSNTL | Essential |
| ETA | Estimated Time of Arrival |
| ETE | Estimated Time Enroute |
| ETT | EFIS Training Tool |
| EXCD | Exceedance |
| EXPND | Expand (also EXP) |
| F | Fahrenheit |
| FA | Course from a Fix to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| FAA | Federal Aviation Administration |
| FAF | Final Approach Fix |
| FAR | Federal Aviation Regulation |
| FAWP | Final Approach Waypoint (same as FAF) |

| | |
|---|---|
| FC | Course Fix to along Track Distance (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| FD | Course from a Fix to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg); Flight Director |
| FDE | Fault Detection and Exclusion |
| FG | Fixed Gear |
| FG + F | Fixed Gear with Defined Landing Flaps Position |
| FIS | Flight Information Service |
| FIS-B | Flight Information Service-Broadcast |
| FL | Flight Level |
| FLTA | Forward Looking Terrain Awareness |
| FM | Course from Fix to Manual termination (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| FMS | Flight Management System |
| FOV | Field of View |
| FPL | Flight Plan |
| fpm | Feet per minute |
| FPM | Flight Path Marker |
| FPNM | Feet Per Nautical Mile |
| FSD | Full Scale Deflection |
| FT | Feet |
| FTE | Flight Technical Error |
| FTP | Fictitious Threshold Point |
| FNCT | Function |
| GAGAN | India’s GPS and GEO-Augmented Navigation System |
| GARP | GNSS Azimuth Reference Point |
| GBAS | Australia’s Ground Based Augmentation System |
| GLS | GNSS Landing System |
| GMETAR | Graphical METAR (also GMTR) |
| GMF | Ground Maintenance Function |
| GN | Gain |
| GND | Ground |
| GNSS | Global Navigation Satellite System |
| GPI | Glidepath Intercept |

| | |
|---|---|
| GPIP | Glide Path Intercept Point |
| GPS | Global Positioning System |
| GPSV | Global Positioning System Vertical Navigation |
| GPWS | Ground Proximity Warning System |
| GRD | Grid; Ground |
| GS | Glideslope |
| H | Hold |
| HA | Terminates at an altitude (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| HF | Holding, Pattern to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| HM | Altitude or Manual Termination (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| HAL | Horizontal Alert Limit |
| HAT | Height Above Threshold |
| HDG | Heading |
| HFOM | Horizontal Figure of Merit |
| hh:mm:ss | Hours: Minutes: Seconds |
| HITS | Highway in the Sky |
| HLTH | Health |
| HORIZ | Horizontal |
| HOTAS | Hands on Throttle and Stick |
| hPa | Hectopascal |
| HPL | Horizontal Protection Level |
| HRZ SYNC | Horizon Synchronization |
| HSI | Horizontal Situation Indicator |
| HUD | Head Up Display |
| IAP | Instrument Approach Procedure; Initial Approach Point |
| IAS | Indicated Airspeed |
| IAWP | Initial Approach Waypoint (same as IAP) |
| ICAO | International Civil Aviation Organization |
| ID | Identity or Identification |
| IDENT | Identification (Transponder Ident) |
| IDU | Integrated Display Unit |
| IF | Initial Fix leg |
| IFR | Instrument Flight Rules |

| | |
|---|---|
| ILS | Instrument Landing System |
| IM | Inner Marker |
| INFO | Information |
| INHBT | Inhibit |
| inHg | Inches of Mercury |
| INIT | Initialize |
| IO | Input/Output |
| IP | Initial Point |
| IPV | Instrument Procedure with Vertical Guidance |
| ISA | International Standard Atmosphere |
| IVSI | Instantaneous Vertical Speed Indicator |
| IWP | Intermediate Approach Waypoint |
| K | Kilo=1000 |
| KB | Kilobyte |
| kHz | Kilohertz |
| KIAS | Knots Indicated Airspeed |
| KT | Knot - Nautical Mile per Hour |
| KTAS | Knots True Airspeed |
| LAT | Latitude |
| LCD | Liquid Crystal Display |
| LCL | Local |
| LDA | Localizer-type Directional Aid |
| LED | Light Emitting Diode |
| LGND | Legend |
| LIFR | Low IFR conditions (Ceiling < 100’ or visibility < 1 mile) |
| LNAV | Lateral Navigation |
| LOC | Localizer |
| LOI | Loss of Integrity |
| LON | Loss of Navigation; Longitude |
| LP | Localizer Performance |
| LPV | Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance |
| LTP | Landing Threshold Point |
| LVL | Level |

| | |
|---|---|
| MA | Waypoint is part of the missed approach segment of an Instrument Approach Procedure |
| MAGVAR | Magnetic Declination (Variation) |
| MAHP | Missed Approach Holding Point |
| MAHWP | Missed Approach Holding Waypoint (same as MAHP) |
| MAN | Manual |
| MAP | Missed Approach Point; Missed Approach Procedure |
| MASPS | Minimum Aviation System Performance Standard |
| MAWP | Missed Approach Waypoint (also MAWPT) |
| mbar | Millibars |
| MDA | Minimum Descent Altitude |
| MESO | Mesocyclonic |
| METAR | Routine hourly weather report |
| MFD | Multifunction Display |
| MIN | Minimum |
| MM | Middle Marker |
| MOA | Military Operations Area |
| MOT | Mark On Target |
| MSAS | Japan's MTSAT-based Satellite Augmentation System |
| MSG | Message |
| MSL | Mean Sea Level |
| MVFR | Marginal Visual Flight Rules |
| NAS | U.S. National Airspace System |
| NAV | Navigation |
| NAVAID | Device or system providing navigational assistance |
| ND | Navigation Display |
| NDB | Nondirectional Beacon |
| NEXRAD | (Next-Generation Radar) network of weather radars operated by the National Weather Service (NWS) (also NXRD) |
| NIMA | National Imagery and Mapping Agency |
| NM | Nautical Mile |
| NRST | Nearest |

| | |
|---|---|
| nT | Nanoteslas (ref. World magnetic Model) |
| NTSC | National Television System Committee standard analog video system (30 frames per second) used in North America and most of South America |
| NWS | National Weather Service |
| OASIS | Open Architecture Systems Integration Symbology |
| OAT | Outside Air Temperature |
| OBS | Omnibearing Selector |
| ODP | Obstacle Departure Procedure |
| OF | Over-fly |
| OM | Outer Marker |
| OT | Other Traffic (Traffic Function) |
| PA | Proximate Advisory (Traffic Function) |
| PAL | Predominant analog video system (25 frames per second) used outside North America and South America. |
| PDA | Premature Descent Alert |
| PFD | Primary Flight Display (also refers to the primary IDU with software that only shows primary flight instrumentation) |
| PFI | Primary Flight Information |
| PI | Procedure Turn (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| PLI | Pitch Limit Indicator |
| PLT | Pilot |
| PM | Personality Module |
| PN | Part Number; Pan |
| PROC | Procedure |
| PRN | Pseudo-Random-Noise (Satellite communications) |
| PRS | Press |
| PRV | Previous |
| PSH | Push |
| PTK | Parallel offset (Parallel Track) |
| PTRS | Pointers |
| PWR | Power |

| | |
|---|---|
| QFE | Altimeter setting provides height above reference point |
| QNE | Altimeter setting provides pressure altitude readout |
| QNH | Altimeter setting provides MSL altitude at a reporting point |
| RA | Resolution Advisory (Traffic Function) |
| RADALT | Radar Altimeter (also RALT) |
| RAD-DST | Radial and Distance |
| RAIM | Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring |
| RBP | Remote Bug Panel |
| RCP | Radar Control Panel |
| RDR | Radar |
| REC | ADF receiver in BFO or test mode |
| RF | Precision Arc to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| RFP | Radio Frequency Panel |
| RG | Retractable Gear |
| RG + F | Retractable Gear with Defined Landing Flaps Position |
| RHT | Radar Height |
| RMI | Radio Magnetic Indicator |
| RNAV | Area Navigation |
| RNP | Required Navigation Performance |
| RTC | Real Time Computing |
| RTCA | Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics |
| RTD | Resistive Thermal Detector |
| RW | Runway |
| Rx | Receive |
| SAE | Society of Automotive Engineers |
| SAT | Saturation |
| SATLT | Satellite |
| SBAS | Satellite-Based Augmentation System |
| SCC | System Configuration Card (personality module) |
| SECAM | Analog color television system used in France |
| SIC | Side-in-Command |
| SID | Standard Instrument Departure |

| | |
|---|---|
| SIGMET | Significant Meteorological Advisory |
| SLCT | Select |
| SSM | Sign Status Matrix |
| STAB | Stability |
| STAR | Standard Terminal Arrival Routes |
| STBY | Stand-by |
| STD | Standard |
| STRKS | Strikes (Lightning detection) |
| SVS | Synthetic Vision System |
| SYMB | Symbol |
| SYNC | Synchronize |
| SYRD | System Requirements Document |
| TA | Traffic Advisory (Traffic Function) |
| TACAN | Ultra-High Frequency Tactical Air Navigational Aid |
| TAFs | Terminal Aerodrome Forecasts |
| TAS | Traffic Advisory System; True Airspeed |
| TAWS | Terrain Awareness and Warning System |
| TCA | Terminal Control Areas |
| TCAD | Traffic Collision Alert Device |
| TCAS | Traffic Collision Alert System |
| TD | Terrain Data |
| T/D | Top of Descent |
| TERPS | Terminal Instrument Procedures |
| TF | Track to a Fix; Track from Fix to New Fix (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| TFR | Temporary Flight Restriction |
| TGT | Target |
| THLD | Threshold |
| TIS | Traffic Information Service |
| TIS-B | Traffic information Service-Broadcast |
| TLT | Tilt |
| TRANS | Transition |
| TRK | Track |

| | |
|---|---|
| TRNDO | Tornadic |
| TSO | Technical Standard Order |
| TTA | Time to Alert |
| TURB | Turbulence |
| Tx | Transmit |
| USB | Universal Serial Bus, data storage device |
| USR | User Waypoint |
| UTC | Universal Time Coordinated |
| VA | Heading to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| $V_A$ | Speed above which it is unwise to make full application of any single flight control |
| VAL | Vertical Alert Limit |
| $V_{APP}$ | Target approach airspeed |
| VD | Heading to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| VDI | Vertical Deviation Indicator |
| VERT | Vertical |
| $V_{FE}$ | Maximum flap extended speed |
| VFOM | Vertical Figure of Merit |
| VFR | Visual Flight Rules |
| VHF | Very High Frequency |
| VI | Heading to Intercept (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| VLOC | VOR/Localizer |
| VLON | Vertical Loss of Navigation |
| VM | Heading to Manual Termination (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| $V_{MO}$ | Maximum operating limit speed |
| VNAV | Vertical Navigation (also VNV) |
| $V_{NE}$ | Never exceed speed |
| $V_{NO}$ | Maximum structural cruising speed or maximum speed for normal operations |
| VOR | VHF Omnidirectional Radio |
| VORTAC | Collocated VOR and TACAN |
| VOX | Voice |
| VP | VFR waypoints (five digits beginning with “VP”) |

| | |
|---|---|
| VPL | Vertical Protection Level |
| $V_{PROC}$ | Procedure Speed |
| $V_R$ | Rotation speed |
| VR | Heading to Radial Termination (ARINC-424 Leg) |
| $V_{REF}$ | Landing reference speed or threshold crossing speed |
| VS | Vertical Speed |
| VSI | Vertical Speed Indicator |
| VTF | Vectors to Final |
| $V_{TOS}$ | Minimum speed for a positive rate of climb with one engine inoperative |
| WAAS | Wide Area Augmentation System |
| WGS84 | World Geodetic System 1984 |
| WPT | Waypoint |
| WX | Weather |
| XFILL | Crossfill |

## 2.2. System Overview

The IDU-450 EFIS is a complete flight and navigation instrumentation system intuitively providing information via computer-generated displays. The displays include 3-D, enhanced situational awareness primary flight display (PFD) and multi-function display (MFD), which may be configured to show a moving map, an HSI, terrain, traffic, datalink weather, radar, or video.

At any given time, each system only has one IDU transmit enabled to send RS-232 and RS-422 system transmissions. By default, the PFD is transmit enabled and, if it subsequently fails, the respective MFD becomes transmit enabled.

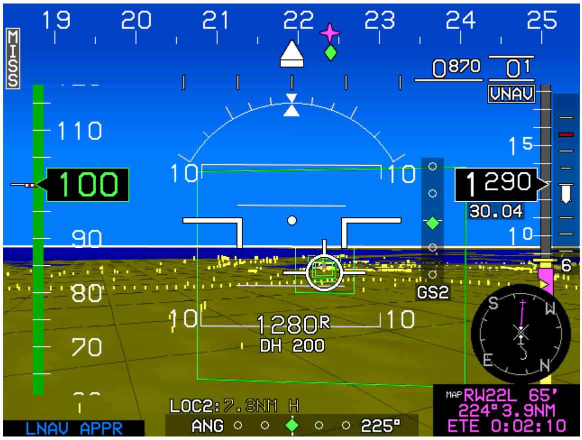



Figure 2-1: IDU-450 Primary Flight Display


Figure 2-2: IDU-450 Multifunction Flight Display

## 2.2.1. Functional Integration and Display Redundancy

IDUs incorporate a high-brightness AMLCD screen; bezel pushbuttons; encoders and enter switches; central processing unit; numerous RS-232, RS-422, and ARINC 429 receive and transmit ports; and discrete IO ports. Hardware and software are identical for all IDUs, and functionality is determined by configuration settings setup during installation. The IDUs are independently connected to all external sensors and independently perform all integrated functions (e.g., TAWS, FMS, EICAS, ADS-B In, weather radar, traffic, strikes, video, or OASIS). This provides an exceptional level of redundancy as compared to traditional display architectures where most of these functions were performed by external line replaceable units.

Figure 2-3 depicts a typical architecture used by IDUs. The IDUs depend upon intra-system (between IDUs on a side – depicted as “Sync”) and inter-system (between IDUs on opposite sides – depicted as “Crosslink”) to achieve synchronization of the integrated functions. The IDUs also depend upon intra-system communications to determine which IDU on a side takes over “talker” responsibilities. The “talker” IDU is the IDU providing data to external sensors and generating aural alerts.

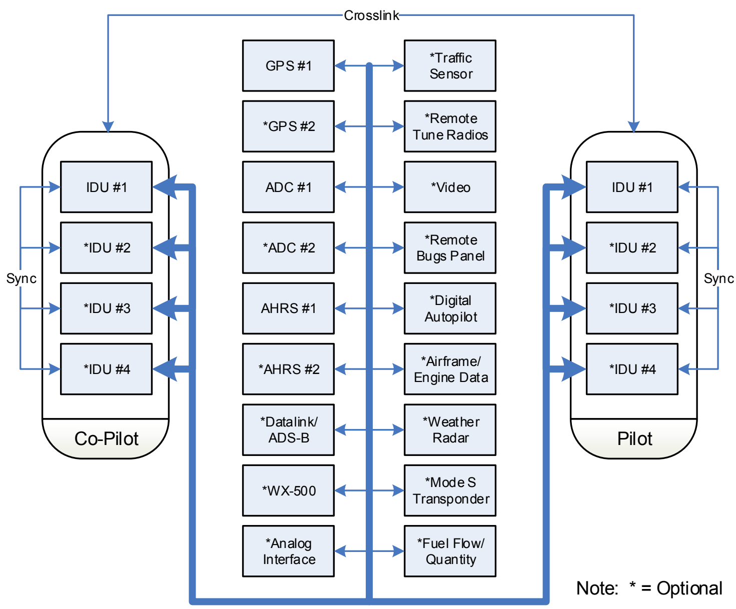



**Figure 2-3: System Diagram**

### 2.2.2. IDU Initialization

Upon power-up, the hardware, including file system, IO, and graphics, is initialized. Immediately after graphics initialization, a logo screen with “INITIALIZING” is displayed with the Genesys Aerosystems logo, software version number, and part number. The software version number delineates: (1) major revision number (i.e., “8.0”), and (2) minor revision letter (i.e., “F”).

| Table 2-1: IDU Software Version and Part Number | |
|---|---|
| **Version Number** | **Part Number** |
| Rev 8.0F | 25-EFIS80F-SW-0002 |

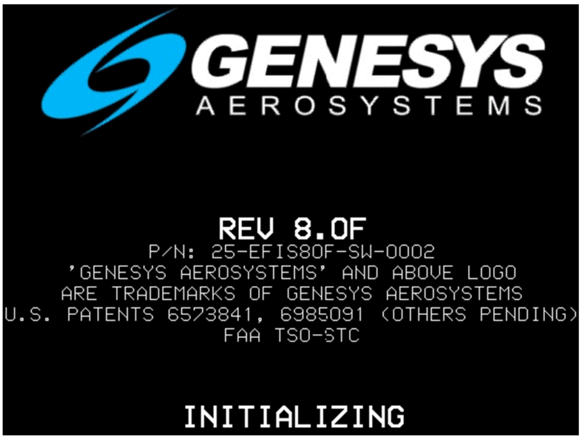



**Figure 2-4: IDU-450 Initialization Screen**

Aircraft configurations are initially read from flash drive storage to provide IDUs with a default configuration setup in the event of personality module failure.

The personality module contains the CPU number (Table 2-2) and system designation (pilot or co-pilot). The CPU number is identified below the part number on the initialization screen (Figure 2-4).

| Table 2-2: CPU Number Designation | |
|---|---|
| **CPU Number/IDU#** | **Definition** |
| “1” | IDU only shows pilot PFD (configured for PFD) on right side and co-pilot PFD (configured for optional co-pilot PFD) on left side. |
| “2” | MFD on pilot and or co-pilot sides. |
| “3” | Additional MFD on pilot and or co-pilot sides. |
| “4” | Additional MFD on pilot and or co-pilot sides. |

Aircraft parameters (latitude, longitude, altitude), as they existed prior to the last system shutdown, are read for a good system initialization, even if system sensors are failed or not yet initialized. For future updates (i.e., updating software version 8.0G to 8.0H), all aircraft settings re-initialize to default values. Otherwise, aircraft settings, as they existed prior to the last system shutdown, are used to initialize the system except for the following default values:

1) Selected sensors are initialized to default values.
2) Active flight plan structure and associated values are cleared.
3) ADAHRS set to slaved mode, and slewing value is initialized to zero.
4) Timers are turned off.
5) Map panning modes are set to off.
6) Fuel caution and alarm thresholds are set to default values.
7) Heading bug is set to 360°.
8) Heading mode is turned off.
9) HSI navigation source is set to FMS.
10) Horizon Synchronization status is set to disabled.
11) Minimum altitude setting is turned off.
12) FMS OBS setting is set to automatic.
13) VOR/LOC 1 OBS setting is set to 360°.
14) VOR/LOC 2 OBS setting is set to 360°.
15) Parallel offset is set to 0 NM.
16) PFD zoom mode is set to off.
17) Manual RNP is set to off.
18) PFD skyway is set to on.
19) Airspeed bug is turned off.
20) Target and preselected altitude bugs are turned off
21) True North mode is turned off.

22) Vertical speed bug is turned off.

23) Crosslink is initialized to on.

24) Map modes are set to allowed values.

25) RDR-2000/2100 mode is set to off, vertical profile is set to off and scale is initialized to 80NM.

The following, are read from the flash drive storage and CRC-32 checked:

1) OASIS configuration

2) Magnetic variation coefficients database

Based upon the air/ground mode parameter value from the last system shutdown, the IDU decides whether it is booting on the ground or in flight.

If booting on the ground, the following actions happen:

1) A logo screen with "**TESTING**" is displayed for a number of seconds while the various hardware subsystems are initialized.

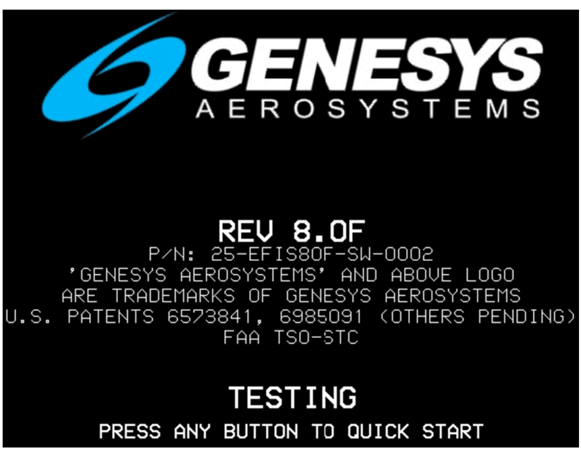



**Figure 2-5: Logo Screen with "TESTING"**

2) CRC-32 values for application executable, limitations files, NavData® files, obstruction files, sounds database, and terrain header files are checked.

During this action, "**PRESS ANY BUTTON TO QUICK START**" is displayed below "**TESTING**." Press any button to stop the ground booting and execute the flight booting.

3) If the BIT (built-in-test) check fails, the program exits with an error message and creates a BIT result file indicating failure.

4) If the BIT check passes, the program continues to initialize and creates a BIT result file indicating passage.

5) If "Baro Auto-Setting on Startup Flag" is enabled in EFIS limits, the application auto-sets the altimeter based upon the terrain elevation at the startup point (only applicable at surveyed airports).

6) A CRC screen displaying:

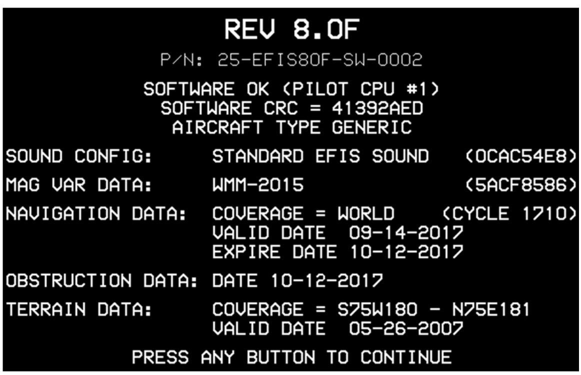



**Figure 2-6: CRC Screen**

a) Software CRC-32;

b) Aircraft type;

c) OASIS configuration name and CRC-32;

d) Sounds database name and CRC-32;

e) Magnetic variation coefficients version and CRC-32; and

f) Database versions and validity dates are displayed along with "**PRESS ANY BUTTON TO CONTINUE**."

7) After a button is pressed, if all critical sensors (GPS, ADC, and AHRS) are in normal condition, the display screens are shown immediately. IDU #1 initializes to the PFD screen.

8) After a button is pressed, if any critical sensor is not in normal condition, a logo screen with a two-minute countdown timer is displayed along with "**PRESS ANY BUTTON TO SKIP**."

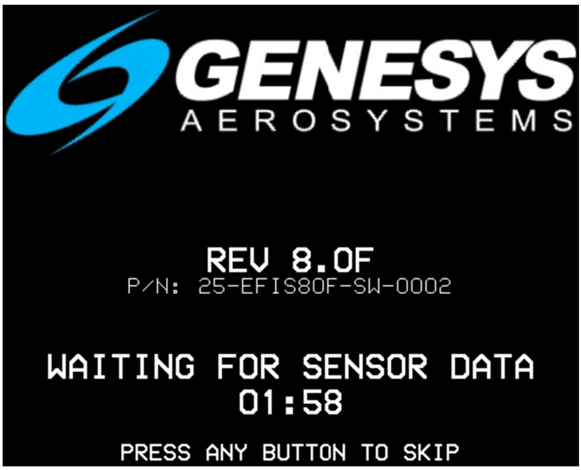



**Figure 2-7: Two-Minute Countdown Screen**

The display screens initialize at the earliest of:

a) when two minutes have elapsed;

b) when the pilot presses any button to escape the startup countdown; or

c) when all critical sensors are in normal condition.

9) The display screen is shown at the earliest of:

a) IDU #1: PFD screen

b) IDU #2 or other CPUs: If OASIS is configured, CPU #2 initializes to the OASIS EICAS function. If OASIS is not configured, CPU #2 initializes to the MFD Screen. All other CPUs initialize to the MFD screen.

10) On the IDU #0 or #2 with fuel totalizer functions enabled, the fuel set menu is activated to remind the pilot to set the fuel totalizer quantity.

If booting in the air, the following actions happen:

1) A logo screen with “**QUICK START**” is displayed.

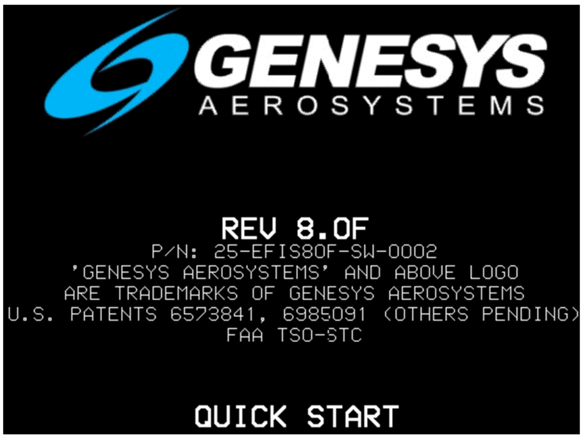



**Figure 2-8: QUICK START Screen**

2) BIT result file created during the last ground boot is checked.

   a) **Failure** = indicates a failure, program exits with an error message.

   b) **Passage** = program continues.

3) The display screens initialize immediately.

4) Display screens initialize as follows:

   a) IDU #1: PFD Screen

   b) Other CPUs: If OASIS is configured, CPU #2 initializes to the Essential EICAS screen. If OASIS is not configured, CPU #2 initializes to the MFD Screen. All other CPUs initialize to the MFD screen.

**NOTE:**

After IDU initialization, if any menu is active, press **EXIT (R1)** on each display and wait at least 20 seconds to allow PFD(s) to synchronize with MFD, and to allow pilot and co-pilot sides to synchronize. If any IDU menu is active, intra-system and inter-system synchronization messages are paused.

## 2.3. General Arrangement

The IDU-450 is 6.375” W x 5.65” H x 4.75” D and weighs less than 7.5 lbs. The IDU-450 has the capacity to accommodate integrated peripherals mechanically attached to the CPU but have electrical isolation and redundancy. These modules may include:

1) Integrated ADAHRS sensor module
2) Integrated GPS/SBAS sensor module
3) Serial protocol converters
4) Video format converters
5) Weather radar module

Data storage is sufficiently sized to hold world terrain, navigation, and obstruction databases. Because the receive ports are connected to the digital sensor modules in parallel, each IDU is independent from all others.

### 2.3.1. Data Source Monitors

IDUs continuously monitor the ADC, AHRS, and GPS sensors to detect disagreements:

1) Airspeed
2) Altitude
3) Attitude
4) Barometric setting (pilot vs. co-pilot sides)
5) GPS position, track, and groundspeed
6) Heading
7) Localizer and glideslope deviations
8) Radar altitude

### 2.3.2. IDU Intra-System Communications

Communication between IDUs installed on the same side is referred to as intra-system communications. In this dual system (pilot and co-pilot) configuration, the crosslink side-to-side communications is referred to as inter-system communications. IDUs on a system side (pilot side and co-pilot side individually) monitor each other using intra-system communications and perform the following checks:

1) Intra-system communications freshness
2) Screen counter incrementing (i.e., screen not frozen)
3) Airspeed agreement
4) Altitude agreement
5) Attitude agreement
6) Barometric setting agreement
7) GPS position, track, and groundspeed agreement
8) Heading agreement
9) Localizer and glideslope deviation agreement
10) Radar altitude agreement

### 2.3.3. GPS Aiding Limitation

To prevent gyro drift in the roll attitude solution, continuous corrections to roll attitude are made based upon speed, accelerations, and rates. The preferred correction speed source is airspeed from the air data computer (ADC). However, airspeed data becomes noisy and inaccurate as the aircraft slows, and the system automatically transitions to GPS groundspeed (at approximately 55 KIAS) under these conditions.

When flying in a GPS-denied environment, be aware that flight below 55 KIAS could result in a degraded roll attitude solution. Therefore, avoid IMC conditions and crosscheck other attitude instruments when flying below 55 KIAS and transition to flight above 55 KIAS as soon as practicable.

**NOTE:**

Not applicable for rotorcraft with other AHRS than Genesys ADAHRS installed.

## 2.4. Color Conventions

The EFIS uses a consistent set of colors to display information. Any color representation may not be identical as it appears on the IDU.

**WHITE** for items set by pilot and held by the EFIS or items where device feedback is not expected; marker beacon receiver high/low sensitivity modes; scales, associated labels and figures; pilot action; or data entry. Examples:

- Scales markings (airspeed, altitude, heading, VSI, pitch, map ranges, etc.)
- Pilot-selected values (airspeed, heading, altitude)
- Secondary flight data (TAS, wind, OAT, timers, etc.)

When used for an analog bar indication, light gray (low-intensity white) is used instead as a large white area on the screen may become overwhelming.

**CYAN** for IFR navigation dataset items (airports with instrument approach procedures, VORs, and intersections) and VOR #1.

**MAGENTA** (light magenta for visibility) indicates calculated or derived data and certain navigation database items. Examples:

- Active waypoint related symbols
- Course data (desired track, CDI)
- VFR airports, NDBs
- VNAV altitudes

**GRAY** as background for airspeed and altitude readout and for conformal runway depiction (light gray for usable portion of active runway, dark gray for other runway surfaces).

**GREEN** (light green for visibility) for VOR #2 and to indicate normal or valid operation (airspeed, altitude tape coloring, status indication, engine, etc.). Examples:

- Aircraft ground track
- Skyway symbology
- Airspeeds in green arc

**DARK GREEN** for terrain indication on moving map. The slope between adjacent terrain determines the shade used.

**AMBER (YELLOW)** identifies conditions requiring immediate pilot awareness and possible subsequent action.

**OLIVE** in various shades shows terrain within 2000' and below aircraft altitude.

**BROWN** in a variety of shades indicates earth/terrain portion of PFD or when above 100 feet less than aircraft altitude on MFD.

**BLUE** in a variety of shades indicates sky portion of PFD, bodies of water on moving map, and advisory text on black background.

**RED** indicates aircraft limitations or conditions, which require immediate pilot action, or a device failure (red "X").

**BLACK** for field of view angle lines on moving map, figures on a gray background, and outlining borders and certain figures/elements on backgrounds with minimal contrast, e.g., airspeed, altitude, and menu tiles on the PFD/MFD.

## 2.5. Warning/Caution/Advisory System

The IDU has an integrated audio/visual warning system, which monitors a wide variety of parameters and provides alerts for conditions that demand pilot action or awareness.

Each transmit enabled IDU provides the following alerts:

1) Warning Alerts
2) Time-Critical Warning Alerts
3) Master Visual and Aural Alerts
4) Caution Alerts
5) Advisory Alerts

All warnings, including time-critical warnings, also activate the warning (red) light and master caution light discrete outputs. Once acknowledged, the flashing behavior stops, the repeating audio alert is interrupted, and the discrete outputs are deactivated.

All cautions, including time-critical cautions, also activate the caution (yellow) light and master caution light discrete outputs. Once acknowledged, the flashing behavior stops, the audio alert is interrupted, and the discrete outputs are deactivated.

### 2.5.1. Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts

Time-critical warning and caution alerts trigger the following elements (Table 2-3) and display in the pilot's primary field of view with a shaded background (Figure 2-9 and Figure 2-10). EFIS limits have enabled the option for time-critical alerts by pressing the master warning or the master caution lights.

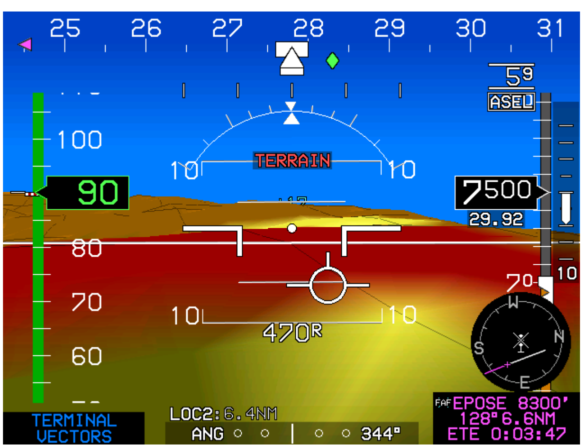



**Figure 2-9: Time-Critical Warning Alert**

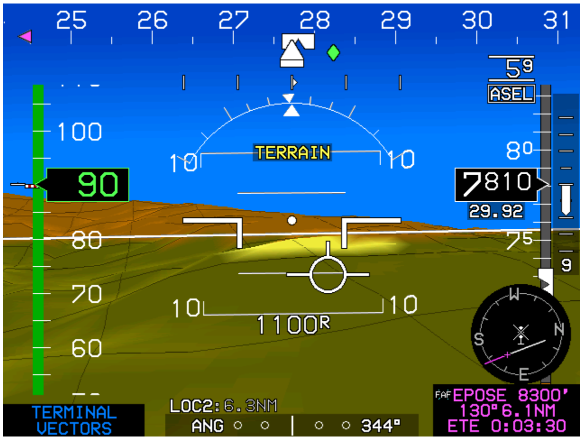



**Figure 2-10: Time-Critical Caution Alert**

**NOTE:**

In the following tables, examples show shaded backgrounds on sky and terrain backgrounds for readability.

**Table 2-3: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts in Primary Field of View**

| Alert Type | Text Color | Flash Rate | Audio Alert at Full Volume |
|---|---|---|---|
| WARNING<br>WARNING | Red | 2 Hz | Repeated until acknowledged by pressing warning/caution acknowledge switch. |
| CAUTION<br>CAUTION | Amber (Yellow) | 1 Hz | Plays only once |

**Table 2-4: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Voice Alert<br>"--" No Voice Alert | Condition<br>** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| OBSTRUCTION<br>OBSTRUCTION | "Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction" | Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay. |

**Table 2-4: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Voice Alert<br>"--" No Voice Alert | Condition<br>** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| TERRAIN<br>TERRAIN | "Warning, Terrain, Warning Terrain" | Terrain cell within HTAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| PULL UP<br>PULL UP | "Terrain, Terrain, Pull Up, Pull Up" | Terrain cell within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| | "Pull Up, Pull Up" | Within GPWS Mode 1 warning envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| CHECK GEAR<br>CHECK GEAR | "Check Gear, Check Gear" | Activates if aircraft is below 150' AGL, is descending, and any landing gear is not down. 2-second time delay. |
| TERRAIN<br>TERRAIN | "Caution Terrain, Caution Terrain" | Terrain cell within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| SINK RATE<br>SINK RATE | "Sink Rate, Sink Rate" | Within GPWS Mode 1 caution envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| TOO LOW<br>TOO LOW | "Too Low Terrain, Too Low Terrain" | Within GPWS Mode 3 envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| | | Within GPWS Mode 4-1 "Too Low Terrain" envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| | | Within GPWS Mode 4-2 "Too Low Gear" envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| GLIDESLOPE<br>GLIDESLOPE | "Glideslope, Glideslope" | Within GPWS Mode 5 caution envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| OBSTRUCTION<br>OBSTRUCTION | "Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction" | Obstruction within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay. |

**Table 2-4: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Voice Alert<br>"--" No Voice Alert | Condition<br>** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| TRAFFIC<br>TRAFFIC | "Traffic, Traffic" | Not given if own aircraft below 400' AGL nor if target is below 200'AGL (ground target). ** |
| HRZ SYNC<br>HRZ SYNC | -- | Annunciates horizon synchronization function is engaged. Annunciation does not flash nor illuminate a master visual alert, because it is not really a caution but instead is a pilot selection annunciation. |

Time-critical warning and caution alerts are prioritized so only one alert at a time is active:

| Table 2-5: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts Priority |
|---|
| 1) GPWS Mode 1 Warning |
| 2) GPWS Mode 2 Warning |
| 3) TAWS FLTA Warning |
| 4) Obstruction Warning |
| 5) TAWS FLTA Caution |
| 6) Obstruction Caution |
| 7) GPWS Mode 4-1 |
| 8) GPWS Mode 4-2 |
| 9) GPWS Mode 4-3 |
| 10) GPWS Mode 1 Caution |
| 11) GPWS Mode 2 Caution |
| 12) GPWS Mode 3 |
| 13) GPWS Mode 5 Warning |
| 14) GPWS Mode 5 Caution |
| 15) Check Gear |
| 16) Traffic Warning (Resolution Advisory) |
| 17) Traffic Caution (Traffic Advisory) |
| 18) Horizon Synchronization Caution |

## 2.5.2. Warning Alerts

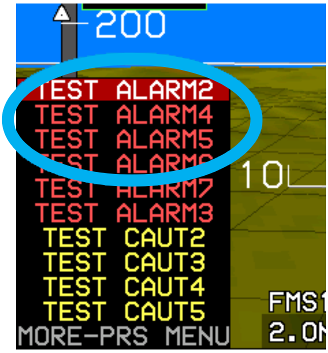



**Figure 2-11: Warning Alerts**

**Table 2-6: Warning Alert Elements**

| Type Alert | Location | Flash Rate | Audio Alert at Full Volume |
|---|---|---|---|
| WARNING<br>WARNING | PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU | 2 Hz | Repeated until acknowledged by pressing warning/caution acknowledge switch. |

**Table 2-7: Warning Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Voice Alert | Condition ** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| LOW FUEL | "Fuel Low, Fuel Low" | One of the following conditions is true:<br>1) A low fuel warning discrete input is active<br>2) A sensed fuel tank quantity is below its low fuel warning threshold<br>3) Total aircraft fuel is below the pilot-set emergency fuel threshold.<br>1-minute time delay. |

| Table 2-7: Warning Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Voice Alert** | **Condition** ** No time delay |
| OBSTRUCTION | "Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction" | Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. (Used on CPU #0 only.) Half-second time delay. |
| TERRAIN | "Warning, Terrain, Warning Terrain" | Terrain cell within HTAWS FLTA warning envelope. (Used on CPU #0 only.) Half-second time delay. |
| PULL UP | "Pull Up, Pull Up" | Within GPWS Mode 1 warning envelope. (Used on CPU #0 only.) Half-second time delay. |
| PULL UP | "Terrain, Terrain, Pull Up, Pull Up" | Within GPWS Mode 2 warning envelope. (Used on CPU #0 only.) Half-second time delay. |
| GLIDESLOPE | "Glideslope, Glideslope" | Within GPWS Mode 5 warning envelope. (Used on CPU #0 only.) Half-second time delay. |
| TRAFFIC | "Traffic, Traffic" | Resolution advisory. Not given if own aircraft at or below 400' AGL. Not given if target is at or below 200' AGL (ground target). Audio not generated with TCAS-II system. (Used on CPU #0 only.) ** |

### 2.5.3. Caution Alerts

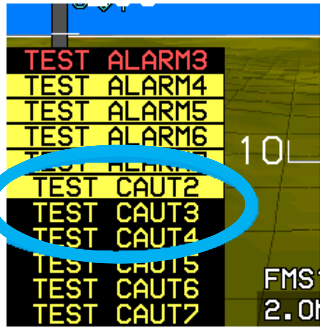



**Figure 2-12: Caution Alerts**

| **Table 2-8: Caution Alert Elements** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Type Alert** | **Location** | **Flash Rate** | **Audio Alert** |
| CAUTION<br>CAUTION | PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU | 1 Hz | Single alert played at full volume. |

| **Table 2-9: Caution Alerts** | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Voice Alert/ Alert Tone** | **Condition**<br>** No time delay |
| ADC1 FAIL<br>ADC2 FAIL<br>ADC1/2 FAIL | Alert Tone | Indicates no valid IAS, pressure altitude, nor VSI received from numbered ADC(s) for more than 1 second. ** |
| ADS-B FAIL | Alert Tone | Enabled by ADS-B out fail warning limits setting. Mode-S transponder indicates bad ADS-B out status. Also, set by audio/radio interface with NGT-9000R transponder. 2-second time delay. |

| Table 2-9: Caution Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Voice Alert/ Alert Tone** | **Condition**<br>** No time delay |
| AHRS1 FAIL<br>AHRS2 FAIL<br>AHRS1/2 FAIL | Alert Tone | Indicates no valid bank, pitch, nor heading received from enumerated AHRS(s) for more than 1 second. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.** |
| AUX SENSOR | "Auxiliary Sensor Failure, Auxiliary Sensor Failure" | No valid message or bad status received from installed optional sensors. Sensor status displayed in faults menu.<br>5-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Applies to the following optional sensors:<br>1) RS-232 TAS<br>2) ADS-B system<br>3) WX-500 Lightning system<br>4) Analog interface system<br>5) Weather Radar<br>6) Weather Radar control panel |
| PLT1 OVRTMP<br>PLT2 OVRTMP<br>PLT3 OVRTMP<br>PLT4 OVRTMP<br>CPLT1 OVRTMP<br>CPLT2 OVRTMP<br>CPLT3 OVRTMP<br>CPLT4 OVRTMP | Alert Tone | IDU core temperature greater than 95°C.<br>2-second time delay. |

| Table 2-9: Caution Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Voice Alert/ Alert Tone** | **Condition**<br>** No time delay |
| PLT MISCOMP<br>CPLT MISCOMP | Alert Tone | Only when fresh intra-system monitor messages are received. Indicates critical parameters used by displays on the indicated side exceed miscompare thresholds. Compares the following critical parameters:<br>1) Attitude (pitch and roll)<br>2) Heading<br>3) Pressure altitude<br>4) Indicated airspeed<br>5) Localizer (both inputs)<br>7) Glideslope (both inputs)<br>8) Radar altitude<br>9) Latitude<br>10) Longitude<br>11) Track<br>12) Groundspeed<br>1-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. |
| ALT MISCOMP | Alert Tone | With neither ADC failed, indicates pressure altitude difference between ADCs is beyond limits.<br>10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. |
| ATT MISCOMP | Alert Tone | With neither AHRS failed, indicates pitch or roll difference between AHRS is beyond limits (6°).<br>10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. |

**Table 2-9: Caution Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Voice Alert/ Alert Tone | Condition<br>** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| PLT RANGE<br>CPLT RANGE | "Check Range, Check Range" | Based upon flight plan in use on the indicated side, less than 30 minutes buffer (at current groundspeed) between calculated range and distance to:<br>1) last waypoint if it is active; or<br>2) airport if on a missed approach; or<br>3) along-route distance to destination.<br>Not activated in climbing flight nor if below 60 kts groundspeed.<br>5-minute time delay. |
| PLT1 SCC<br>PLT2 SCC<br>PLT3 SCC<br>PLT4 SCC<br>CPLT1 SCC<br>CPLT2 SCC<br>CPLT3 SCC<br>CPLT4 SCC | Alert Tone | Indicates personality module for designated IDU (side and CPU #) could not be read upon power-up. Internal limits are in use by the system. Only active on the ground. |
| PLT1 TAWS<br>PLT2 TAWS<br>PLT3 TAWS<br>PLT4 TAWS<br>CPLT1 TAWS<br>CPLT2 TAWS<br>CPLT3 TAWS<br>CPLT4 TAWS | Alert Tone | Indicates on the designated IDU (side and CPU #), aircraft is currently beyond extent of terrain database or a failure condition is preventing TAWS FLTA function from operating. Half-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. |

| Table 2-9: Caution Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Voice Alert/ Alert Tone** | **Condition**<br>** No time delay |
| COOLING FAN | Alert Tone | Triggered when external cooling fan is commanded on by discrete output, but the cooling fan status discrete input indicates the cooling fan is not rotating.<br>1-minute time delay. |
| FUEL SPLIT | Alert Tone | Compares the volume of fuel designated left wing tank fuel vs. volume of fuel designated right wing tank fuel to the fuel split caution threshold. Issues a caution if the difference exceeds the fuel split caution threshold. Only performed if the fuel split caution threshold is non-zero and both left and right wing tank fuel is monitored and valid.<br>1-minute time delay. |
| LOW FUEL | "Fuel Low, Fuel Low" | A low fuel warning is not active and one of the following conditions is true:<br>1) One of the low fuel caution discrete inputs is active<br>2) One of the sensed fuel tank quantities is below its low fuel caution threshold<br>3) Total aircraft fuel is below the pilot-set minimum fuel threshold.<br>1-minute time delay. |

**Table 2-9: Caution Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Voice Alert/ Alert Tone | Condition<br>** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| GPS MISCOMP | Alert Tone | Neither GPS/SBAS failed. Indicates position, track, or groundspeed difference between GPS/SBAS units is beyond the following limits:<br>**Position**:<br>Enroute Mode 4NM<br>Terminal Mode 2NM<br>Departure Mode .6NM<br>IFR Approach Mode .6NM<br>VFR Approach Mode .6NM<br>**Track**: If groundspeed is greater than 30 kts, miscompare if difference is more than 4°.<br>**Groundspeed**: If difference between GPS#1 and GPS#2 miscompare is more than 10 kts.<br>10-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. |
| GS MISCOMP | Alert Tone | Indicates at least one glideslope is receiving a signal within 1 dot of center and difference between glideslope signals is beyond limits (0.25 dots).<br>10-second time delay. |

| Table 2-9: Caution Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Voice Alert/ Alert Tone** | **Condition**<br>** No time delay |
| HDG MISCOMP | Alert Tone | With neither AHRS failed nor in DG mode. Indicates heading difference between AHRS is beyond the heading miscompare threshold limit. 10-second delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. |
| IAS MISCOMP | Alert Tone | Neither ADC failed. Indicates IAS difference between ADCs is beyond limits.<br>10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. |
| LOC MISCOMP | Alert Tone | Only active when two valid localizers are received. Indicates at least one localizer is receiving a signal within 1 dot of center and difference between localizer signals is beyond limits (0.25 dots). 10-second time delay. |
| RALT MISCOMP | Alert Tone | With neither radar altimeter in failure condition. Indicates that radar altitude difference between radar altimeters is beyond limits. 10 second time delay. Limits are as follows:<br>>= 500'AGL Δ14%<br>100 – 500'AGL Δ10%<br>< 100'AGL Δ10' |
| OAT FAIL<br>OAT1 FAIL<br>OAT2 FAIL<br>OAT1/2 FAIL | Alert Tone | Applicable to dual ADC installation. Indicates OAT indication is invalid but other air data parameters are normal (i.e., air data not red-X'd). Half-second time delay. |

**Table 2-9: Caution Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Voice Alert/ Alert Tone | Condition<br>** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| RALT FAIL<br>1 RALT FAIL<br>2 RALT FAIL<br>1-2 RALT FAIL | Alert Tone | For analog radar altimeter, indicates the aircraft is below 2000' AGL in air mode without a valid radar altimeter reading. For ARINC 429 radar altimeter, indicates an SSM of failure warning is transmitting.<br>2-second time delay. |
| SAME ADC | Alert Tone | With good inter-system communications, and neither ADC failed, indicates both sides are operating from same ADC source. ** |
| SAME AHRS | Alert Tone | With good inter-system communications, and neither AHRS failed, indicates both sides are operating from same AHRS source. ** |
| SAME EICAS | Alert Tone | If EICAS configured, with good inter-system communications. Indicates both sides are operating from the same data source. ** |
| SAME GPS | Alert Tone | With good inter-system communications, and neither GPS/SBAS failed, indicates both sides are operating from same GPS/SBAS source. ** |
| SAME NAV | Alert Tone | With good inter-system communications, indicates both sides are operating from same navigation source. ** |

| Table 2-9: Caution Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Voice Alert/ Alert Tone** | **Condition**<br>** No time delay |
| SAME RADALT | Alert Tone | With good inter-system communications and neither radar altimeter in failure condition, indicates both sides are operating from same radar altimeter source. ** |
| TAWS AUTOROT | Alert Tone | TAWS autorotation mode activated through use of discrete input. ** |
| TCAS FAIL | Alert Tone | TAS indicates lack of communications with system or failure indication from system. ** |
| TOTALZR QTY | Alert Tone | Compares the volume of sensed fuel to the fuel totalizer calculation. Issues a caution if the difference exceeds the totalizer mismatch caution threshold. Only performed if:<br>1) Totalizer mismatch caution threshold is non-zero;<br>2) Fuel totalizer is enabled;<br>3) Unmonitored fuel flag is false;<br>4) Fuel totalizer has a valid value; and<br>5) Fuel levels are valid.<br>1-minute time delay. |
| XFILL FAIL | Alert Tone | Indicates lack of inter-system communications.<br>2-second time delay. Inhibit for 30 seconds after startup. |

**Table 2-9: Caution Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Voice Alert/ Alert Tone | Condition<br>** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| GPS1 FAIL<br>GPS2 FAIL<br>GPS1/2 FAIL | Alert Tone | Indicates no valid message received from numbered GPS/SBAS for more than 5 seconds. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. ** |

### 2.5.4. Side-Specific Caution Alerts

Side-specific caution alerts are displayed on all IDUs on a side that detect a failure on an IDU on that side.

**Table 2-10: Side-Specific Caution Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Alert Tone | Condition ** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| CHECK IDU 1<br>CHECK IDU 2<br>CHECK IDU 3<br>CHECK IDU 4 | Alert Tone | IDU status has not been received from another same-side IDU in the last second ± 0.1 seconds.<br># indicates which IDU is failing the check. ** |

### 2.5.5. Advisory Alerts

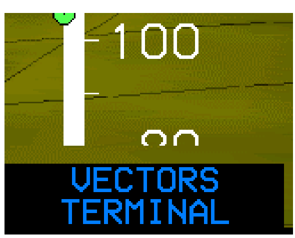



**Figure 2-13: Advisory Alerts**

**Table 2-11: Advisory Alert Elements**

| Type Alert | Location | Appearance | Audio Alert |
|---|---|---|---|
| ADVISORY | PFD lower left corner* | While condition persists | A single advisory chime is played at 80% volume |

* In the lower-left corner of transmit enabled IDU.

**Table 2-12: Advisory Alerts**

| Visual Alert | Alert Tone | Condition ** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| ADC1 INIT<br>ADC2 INIT<br>ADC1/2 INIT | Chime | Indicates ADC# not at full accuracy during warm-up. ** |
| AHRS1 DG<br>AHRS2 DG<br>AHRS1/2 DG | Chime | Indicates numbered AHRS in DG mode. ** |
| CREW CALL | Chime | Only active with EFIS control of an audio controller and call notice is received from the controller. |
| PLT1 PWR<br>PLT2 PWR<br>PLT3 PWR<br>PLT4 PWR<br>CPLT1 PWR<br>CPLT2 PWR<br>CPLT3 PWR<br>CPLT4 PWR | Chime | Indicates a dual redundant power supply within the designated IDU (side and CPU #) is not functioning correctly. Only active on the ground. 1-minute time delay. |
| FPM INHBT | Chime | Flight path marker inhibit function activated through use of momentary discrete input. ** |
| BARO MISCOMP | Chime | Indicates mismatch of altimeter settings or altimeter modes between systems. 10-second time delay. |
| TAS INHBT | Chime | TAS aural inhibited through activation of TCAS/TAS audio inhibit input. ** |

| Table 2-12: Advisory Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Alert Tone** | **Condition** ** No time delay |
| TAWS GS CNX | Chime | TAWS glideslope cancel (GPWS Mode 5) activated through use of discrete input. Enhanced HTAWS only. ** |
| TAWS INHBT | Chime | TAWS inhibited through discrete input. ** |
| TAWS LOW ALT | Chime | TAWS low altitude mode activated through use of discrete input. ** |
| TCAS STBY | Chime | Indicates system is either: (1) in standby; or (2) executing functional test in flight. ** |
| TA ONLY | Chime | Indicates TCAS-II system is unable to display resolution advisories. ** |
| TCAS TEST | Chime | Indicates system is in functional test on ground. ** |
| XFILL ARM | Chime | Only active with good inter-system communications and crossfill not inhibited. Indicates systems are not synchronized and synchronized function is available. ** |
| XFILL INHBT | Chime | Only with good inter-system communications, indicates crossfill is inhibited through discrete input. ** |

### 2.5.6. Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

Side-specific advisory alerts have the same characteristics as advisory alerts except, they always appear in the lower-left corner of the transmit enabled IDU screen.

These type of alerts are used where the pilot and copilot systems can generate different alerts, such as when the pilot and co-pilot systems are not crossfilled and are operating on different FMS flight plans.

**Table 2-13: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts**

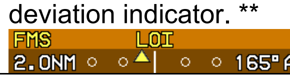
| Visual Alert | Alert Tone | Condition ** No time delay |
|---|---|---|
| CHK BARO | Chime | Ascending through transition level: Altimeter not set to 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar.<br>Descending through transition level: Altimeter set to 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar. Descent warning times out in 10 seconds.<br>Disabled during QFE operation.<br>2-second time delay. |
| ANP: 0.01<br>ANP: 15.0 | Chime | GPS/SBAS actual navigation performance in nautical miles based upon current GPS/SBAS HPL. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM. |
| RNP: 0.10A<br>RNP: 15.0A | Chime | GPS/SBAS automatic required navigation performance in nautical miles as acquired from navigation database. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM. |
| RNP: 0.10M<br>RNP: 15.0M | Chime | GPS/SBAS manual required navigation performance in nautical miles as set by pilot. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM. |
| DR 00:00<br>DR 01:23 | Chime | GPS/SBAS in dead reckoning mode with valid ADC and AHRS data. Timer shows time since loss of position (mm:ss) to indicate quality of DR solution. Valid range is from 00:00 to 59:59. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. ** |
| LNAV APPR | Chime | GPS/SBAS in LNAV approach mode. ** |

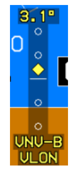
| Table 2-13: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Alert Tone** | **Condition** ** No time delay |
| LNV/VNV APPR | Chime | GPS/SBAS in LNAV/VNAV approach mode. ** |
| LP APPR | Chime | GPS/SBAS in LP approach mode. ** |
| LPV APPR | Chime | GPS/SBAS in LPV approach mode. ** |
| MANUAL LEG | Chime | Advises GPS/SBAS is in a condition where a manual termination leg is active. |
| SUSPEND | Chime | Automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended under any of the following conditions:<br>1) Pilot has selected a manual GPS/SBAS OBS.<br>2) Active waypoint is the missed approach waypoint, and missed approach procedure has not been armed (ARM) nor initiated (MISS).<br>3) Aircraft is in a published or manually created holding pattern, and pilot has not chosen to continue (CONT) out of the holding pattern.<br>4) Leg following active waypoint is a manual termination leg, and the pilot has not chosen to resume (RESUME) to the waypoint following the manual termination. ** |
| TERMINAL | Chime | GPS/SBAS in terminal mode. ** |
| VFR APPR | Chime | GPS/SBAS in VFR approach mode. ** |

| Table 2-13: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Visual Alert** | **Alert Tone** | **Condition** ** No time delay |
| VECTORS | Chime | GPS/SBAS in vectors to final approach mode prior to sequencing FAWP. ** |
| PTK = L 1NM<br>PTK = L 20NM<br>PTK = R 1NM<br>PTK = R 20NM<br>PTK ENDING | Chime | GPS/SBAS parallel offset path advisory. ## is nautical miles left (L) or right (R) of main path. "PTK ENDING" if within the parallel offset distance from a parallel offset exit waypoint. ** |
| FLTA INHBT | Chime | Shown when FLTA function is automatically inhibited during normal operation. TAWS INHBT advisory, PLT PFD and CPLT PFD TAWS caution, and FLTA INHBT advisory have priority. ** |
| TRUE NORTH | Chime | System operating in true north mode. ** |

### 2.5.7. Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts

| Table 2-14: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Caution or Advisory Alert** | **Voice Alert/ Alert Tone** | **Condition**<br>** No time delay |
| Minimum Altitude Caution Alert | "Minimums, Minimums" | Deviation from above to below minimum altitude bug. Minimum altitude readout turns amber (yellow) and flashes. ** |
| Selected Altitude Deviation Caution Alert | "Altitude, Altitude" | Deviation greater than 150' from selected altitude after capture (within 100' of altitude). 2-second time delay. |

| Table 2-14: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Caution or Advisory Alert** | **Voice Alert/ Alert Tone** | **Condition** ** No time delay |
| VNAV Altitude Deviation Caution Alert | | If not on a descending VNAV profile, deviation greater than 150' from altitude of the current or prior VNAV waypoint after capture (within 100' of altitude). 2-second time delay. |
| Decision Height Caution Alert | "Decision Height" | Deviation from above to below decision height bug. Decision height readout turns amber (yellow) and flashes.** |
| GBS/SBAS Failure Caution Alert | Alert Tone | No valid position data available from selected GPS/SBAS for more than 5 seconds and dead reckoning not available. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Loss of position data is obvious from symbology changes associated with reversionary modes. ** |
| GPS/SBAS Loss of Integrity Caution Alert | Alert Tone | GPS/SBAS loss of integrity caution. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. LOI indication is integrated with lateral deviation indicator. **  |
| GPS/SBAS Loss of Navigation Caution Alert | Alert Tone | GPS/SBAS loss of navigation caution. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. LON indication is integrated with lateral deviation indicator. **  |

| Table 2-14: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Caution or Advisory Alert** | **Voice Alert/ Alert Tone** | **Condition** ** No time delay |
| Loss of Vertical Navigation Caution Alert | Alert Tone | Loss of vertical navigation caution. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. VLON indication is integrated with vertical deviation indicator. **   |
| Countdown Timer Chime | Chime | Sounds when countdown timer reaches 00:00:00. ** |
| Level-off Advisory Alert | Altitude Alert Tone | Within the greater of 1000' or 50% of VSI from uncaptured selected or VNAV waypoint altitude. Inhibited in approach procedures. ** |

### 2.5.8. Voice Alerts and Muting

Only the highest priority (in criticality and recency), unacknowledged voice alert is played at any given time. Any playing audio message is immediately muted by activating the warning/caution acknowledge switch.

### 2.5.9. Visual Alert Prioritization and Declutter

Visual alerts are visually prioritized, so warnings are displayed above cautions, which are displayed above advisories. Within categories, visual alerts are stacked in chronological order, so the most recent alert appears on top.

The maximum number of visual alerts that can be simultaneously displayed in the standard location is 11. In the event there are more than 11 visual alerts, MORE-PRS MENU appears for guidance in accessing the EXPAND CAS menu.

Only the highest priority (in criticality and recency), unacknowledged aural annunciation is played at a time. In addition, to further minimize cockpit confusion, annunciations are grouped and prioritized so only one annunciation is active. Annunciations prioritized in this manner are as follows (higher in list = higher priority).

| Table 2-15: Annunciations Priority |
|---|
| 1) GPWS Mode 1 Warning |
| 2) GPWS Mode 2 Warning |
| 3) TAWS FLTA Warning |
| 4) Obstruction Warning |
| 5) TAWS FLTA Caution |
| 6) Obstruction Caution |
| 7) GPWS Mode 4-1 |
| 8) GPWS Mode 4-2 |
| 9) GPWS Mode 4-3 |
| 10) GPWS Mode 1 Caution |
| 11) GPWS Mode 2 Caution |
| 12) GPWS Mode 3 |
| 13) GPWS Mode 5 Warning |
| 14) GPWS Mode 5 Caution |
| 15) Check Gear |
| 16) Traffic Warning (Resolution Advisory) |
| 17) Traffic Caution (Traffic Advisory) |
| 18) Low Fuel Warning |
| 19) Low Fuel Caution |
| 20) Fuel Split Caution |
| 21) Fuel Totalizer Mismatch Caution |
| 22) Check Range |

In addition, flags are decluttered from all IDUs, which are not “transmit enabled.” Flags only appear on these IDUs if they are IDU-specific (i.e., CHECK IDU #).

## 2.6. Database and Software Updates

### 2.6.1. Navigation and Obstruction Databases

The EFIS uses Jeppesen Sanderson NavData® for the navigation database and Jeppesen Sanderson obstacle data for the obstruction database.

**Visit www.jeppesen.com to place the order for the correct database.**

**NOTE:**

When ordering, review the EFIS Equipment-Database Compatibility Matrix (document 01-000062) on the Genesys Aerosystems website. This document specifies the compatibility of Genesys Aerosystems EFIS equipment and software versions to navigation database versions.

Three available coverage areas of navigation databases may be used on this EFIS:

**Americas** - Major airports and navigation for Alaska, Canada, Continental U.S., Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Bahamas, Bermuda, Mexico, Central, and South America.

**International** - All available coverage except North and South America.

**World** - Major airports and navigation with the Americas.

The updateable navigation database contains at least the following location and path information, referenced to WGS-84, with a resolution of 0.01 minute (latitude/longitude) and 0.1° (for course information) or better at all of the following for the area(s) in which IFR operations are intended:

1) Airports.

2) VORs, DMEs (including DMEs collocated with localizers), collocated VOR/DMEs, VORTACs, and NDBs (including NDBs used as locator outer marker).

3) All named waypoints and intersections shown on enroute and terminal area charts.

4) All airways shown on enroute charts, including all waypoints, intersections, and associated RNP values (if applicable). Airways are retrievable as a group of waypoints (select the airway by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs between desired entry and exit points into the flight plan).

5) RNAV DPs and STARs, including all waypoints, intersections, and associated RNP values (if applicable). DPs and STARs are retrievable as a procedure (select the procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the flight plan).

6) LNAV approach procedures in the area(s) in which IFR operation is intended consist of:

   a) Runway number and label (required for approach identification);

   b) Initial approach waypoint (IAWP);

   c) Intermediate approach waypoint(s) (IWP), when applicable;

   d) Final approach waypoint (FAWP);

   e) Missed approach waypoint (MAWP);

   f) Additional missed approach waypoints, when applicable; and

   g) Missed approach holding waypoint (MAHWP).

   The complete sequence of waypoints and associated RNP values (if applicable), in the correct order for each approach, is retrievable as a procedure (select the procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the flight plan). Waypoints utilized as a final approach waypoint (FAWP) or missed approach waypoint (MAWP) in an LNAV approach procedure are uniquely identified as such (when appropriate) to provide proper approach mode operation.

7) LNAV/VNAV procedures in the area(s) where IFR operation is intended. LPV, LP, and/or LNAV/VNAV published procedures are available. Select a procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the active flight plan. Waypoints used as a final approach waypoint (FAWP) and LTP/FTP/MAWP in an LNAV/VNAV procedure are uniquely identified as such to provide proper approach mode operation.

The obstruction database is distributed by a government agency in each country. Not all countries have obstruction databases available.

### 2.6.2. Update Requirements

Scheduled updates for databases are as follows:

1) Navigation Database - Every 28 days

2) Obstruction Database - Every 28 days

3) MAGVAR Database - Every 5 years (updated as described in a Genesys Aerosystems Service Bulletin)

**CAUTION:**

**Failure to update the EFIS with the correct navigation database applicable to the IDU software version causes the IDU to remain in continual reboot mode and does not allow any display page to appear.**

The EFIS is updated through the ground maintenance function (GMF). To gain access to the GMF, prior to applying power, slide the slip indicator or non-slip blank door cover at the bottom-center of the IDU bezel upward to the first detent position to expose the USB port.

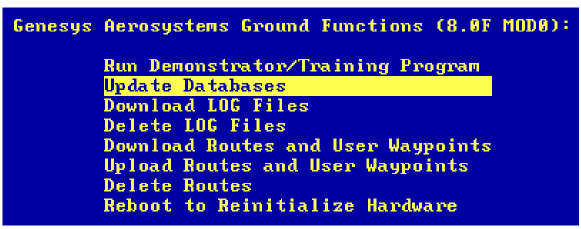



**Figure 2-14: Ground Maintenance Page**

When an update is performed, the following procedures must be performed separately on every IDU installed in the aircraft.

To update the databases:

1) Load the navigation database (navdata.exe) and obstruction database (obst.exe) on USB flash drive.

2) Insert the USB flash drive into USB port with the power off.

**CAUTION:**

**Always install a valid USB flash drive in the IDU prior to activating any ground maintenance function. Operation of the GMF without a valid USB flash drive installed may cause erroneous failure indications or corruption of the IDU.**

3) Turn on power to gain access to the GMF page.

4) Scroll ❶ to **Update Databases** and push to enter.

5) Once each database is loaded, press any button to continue to complete the process.

6) Once both databases have been uploaded, power down the IDU, remove the USB flash drive, and lower the USB door.

7) Once each IDU has been updated, power up the entire EFIS in normal flight mode and verify each IDU successfully updated with the latest database by noting the new navigation database and obstruction database cycle expiration dates before acknowledging the initialization screen (Figure 2-4). Because the obstruction database is advisory in nature, there technically is no expiration date. The listed date is the effective date of the next available obstruction database.

8) A CRC self-test verifies the data at every step of the process, thereby ensuring the data installed into the system has not been corrupted at any point during the process.

### 2.6.3. Software and Terrain Database Update

Updates and terrain database updates are provided on an as-needed basis and performed as per a service bulletin.

## 2.7. Demonstrator

The EFIS has a built-in demonstration application to fly anywhere in the world while performing any procedure (except takeoff and landing) based on the current navigation database. Use this feature on the ground in ground mode as follows:

1) With power off, lift the USB flash drive door and insert a USB flash drive.

2) Power on the system. Scroll ❶ to **RUN DEMONSTRATOR/ TRAINING PROGRAM** and push to enter.

Use the demonstrator to gain familiarity of the EFIS menu structure and location of button tiles for each operation. Load an instrument procedure prior to take off to view the expected sequence of events.

The demonstrator begins flying over Reno, Nevada, USA at an altitude of approximately 8000’ MSL. Altitude may be changed with altitude bug, VNAV profiles or navigation database procedures. Airspeed remains relatively constant but may be controlled with the airspeed IAS bug in the BUGS menu. The simulated aircraft may be positioned anywhere in the world, by activating a flight plan stored in the memory.

All appropriate navigation signals are simulated, allowing for precision and non-precision instrument approaches found within the current navigation database. All obstructions in the latest obstruction database and all time-critical warning, caution, and advisory aural and flag annunciations are presented as appropriate during simulated flights.

**NOTE:**

When operating in Demonstrator mode, the IDU is isolated from all sensors and other IDUs. Flight plans created on an IDU are stored on that IDU alone. To make the flight plan available on all other displays, the following action must be taken.

1) While in flight mode, activate the flight plan created in the demonstrator mode.

2) With crossfill enabled (in two sided systems), view active flight plan on any other IDU and press **SAVE (L1)** to save this flight plan on all displays.

## 2.8. EFIS Training Tool

In addition to the demonstrator program, the EFIS Training Tool (ETT) is available to load on a personal computer. The ETT is compatible with 32- or 64-bit versions of Microsoft Windows®. It serves as a multi-purpose tool for training pilots and provides features to record and capture images. See user guide distributed with the ETT installer for further details.

## 2.9. Application Software Air Mode and Ground Mode

Numerous symbology elements change behavior depending upon whether the aircraft is on the ground (ground mode) or in flight (air mode). Mode is determined separately from the system initialization modes. This parameter is continuously calculated as follows:

1) With a weight on wheels/weight on ground discrete input configured, air or ground mode is determined solely from the discrete input position.

2) Otherwise, mode is determined as follows:

a) If airspeed is valid and AGL altitude is valid, ground mode is set when indicated airspeed is less than 30 knots, and AGL altitude is less than 75 feet.

b) If airspeed is invalid but AGL altitude is valid, ground mode is set when AGL altitude is less than 75 feet.

c) Under any other circumstance, air mode is set by default.

# Section 3 Display Symbology

## 3.1. Introduction

This section details the symbology on the pilot and co-pilot PFD and MFD. This section only describes the PFD configured with the airspeed scale digital configuration set to tapes with both “pure” and “rolling” digital configurations.

### 3.1.1. PFD (PFI) Symbology


Figure 3-1: PFD, Pure Digital Configuration

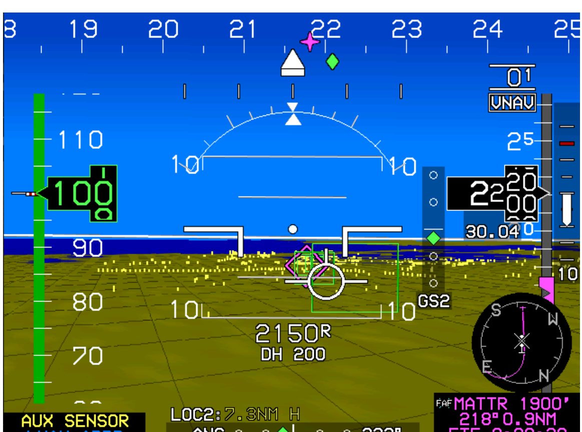



Figure 3-2: PFD, Rolling Digital Configuration

## 3.1.2. Basic Mode

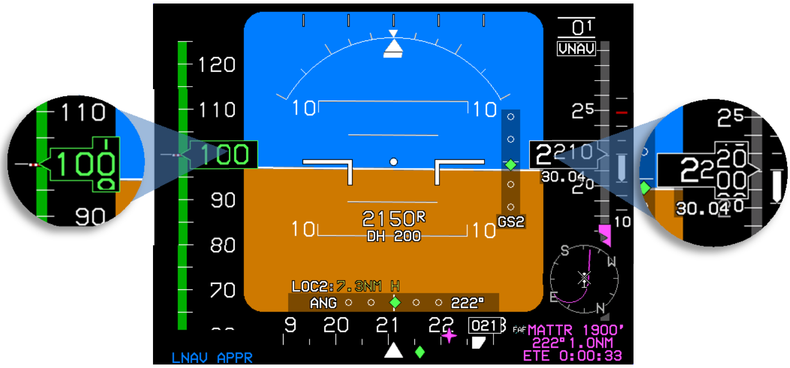



**Figure 3-3: PFD in Basic Mode Rolling Digital**

The following are no longer present when Basic mode is displayed:

1) Atmospheric perspective
2) Terrain rendering
3) Obstructions rendering
4) Flight path marker
5) Roll pointer option
6) Bank scale option
7) Airport runways


**With Bank Scale** **Without Bank Scale**

**Figure 3-4: PFD Bank Scale**

## 3.2. Menu Functions

The top-level menu level corresponds to the permanent IDU pushbutton labels and is active when no soft menu tiles appear next to the appropriate IDU button or encoder (❶).

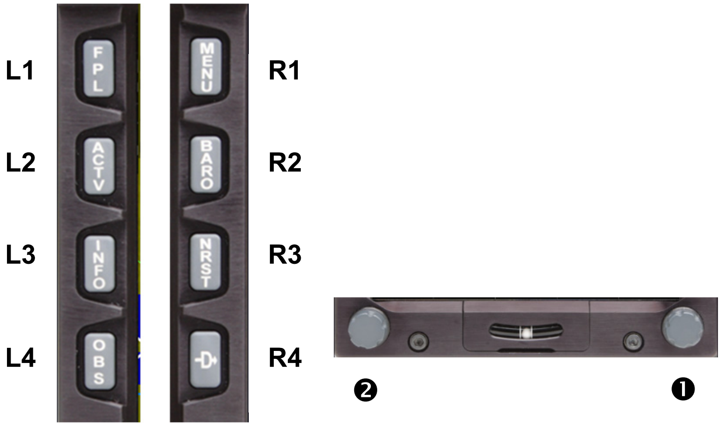



**Figure 3-5: Menu Functions**

On the PFD, scroll ❶ to activate the heading menu. On MFD pages with an adjustable display (e.g., ND, Strikes, Traffic, Datalink, or Weather Radar) scroll ❶ CW to increase scale or CCW to decrease scale.

Selection lists too long to be presented in the available space indicate the location within the list. When the menu system is beyond the top-level, **EXIT (R1)** escapes to the top-level. When a menu level is deeper than the first level, **BACK (L1)** regresses one level through the menu system.

### 3.2.1. Altitude Display and Altimeter Setting


**Synthetic Vision** **Basic Mode**

**Figure 3-6: Altimeter Setting**

Press **BARO (R2)** to enter altimeter setting mode and view the altimeter setting in inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) value in the lower right corner. Scroll ❶ CW to increase or CCW to decrease the QNH. Push ❶ to enter the new value. The altimeter setting is immediately below the altitude readout box and digitally displays the altimeter setting in either inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) according to the pilot-selected units.

When QFE altimeter setting is selected, QFE is annunciated immediately below the altimeter setting. When QNH altimeter setting is selected, no mode is annunciated below the altimeter setting

**QFE**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold).

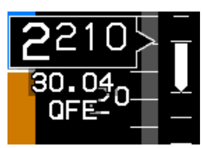
**QNE**: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

**QNH**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.


**Synthetic Vision - QNH**


**Basic Mode - QNH**


**Synthetic Vision - QFE**

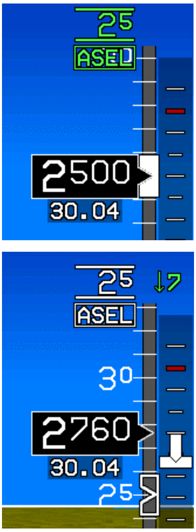



**Basic Mode - QFE**

**Figure 3-7: Altimeter Setting**

### 3.2.2. Selected Altitude Sub-Mode (Target Altitude)

When in selected altitude sub-mode, the altitude scale has a pilot-settable target altitude bug geometrically interacting with the altitude box pointer. The target altitude bug value has a resolution of 100 ft., and a range from -1000 ft. to 20,000 ft.

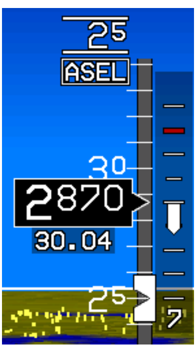



When in altitude hold mode, the target altitude bug setting annunciation is green, while the target altitude bug is filled-white.

When in a climb or descent mode, the target altitude bug setting annunciation is white, and the target altitude bug is hollow-white.

During altitude hold capture, the target altitude bug setting annunciation is green and flashes, while the target altitude bug is filled-white.

**Figure 3-8: Target Altitude Bug (Vertically Integrated)**

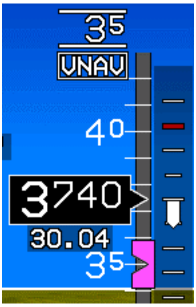



When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the target altitude bug setting annunciation is white, and the target altitude bug is filled-white at all times.

**Figure 3-9: Target Altitude Bug (Not Vertically Integrated)**

### 3.2.3. VNAV Sub-Mode

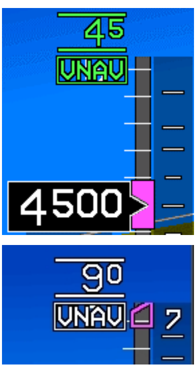
When in VNAV sub-mode, the altitude scale shows the active waypoint VNAV altitude (if it exists) with a bug symbol geometrically interacting with the altitude box pointer. The VNAV altitude bug setting is annunciated above the altitude scale with a resolution of 100 feet.




When not vertically integrated with a fully-integrated digital autopilot, the VNAV altitude bug setting annunciation includes “VNAV” indicating VNAV altitude sub-mode. When vertically integrated with a fully-integrated digital autopilot, this legend is not needed, because an equivalent indication appears in the autopilot mode annunciation area.

**Figure 3-10: VNAV Sub-Mode (Not Vertically Integrated)**

The VNAV altitude bug is a visual reference or, when vertically integrated with an autopilot either fully or partially integrated through the vertical mode discrete input, as a control parameter for climbs or descents.




When vertically integrated with an autopilot:

When in altitude hold mode, the VNAV altitude bug setting annunciation is green, and the VNAV altitude bug is filled-magenta. During altitude hold capture, VNAV altitude bug setting annunciation is green and flashes, while the VNAV altitude bug is filled-magenta.

When in a climb or descent mode, the VNAV altitude bug setting annunciation is white, and the VNAV altitude bug is hollow-magenta.

**Figure 3-11: VNAV Sub-Mode (Vertically Integrated)**

When the VNAV altitude or target altitude differs from aircraft altitude to the extent the associated bug is off-scale, the associated bug is “parked” in the direction of the difference with half of the associated bug visible as seen in Figure 3-11.

### 3.2.4. Altitude Display (VNAV Tile)

When enabled for performing VNAV with a manually selected altitude entered, **VNAV (L2)** appears.

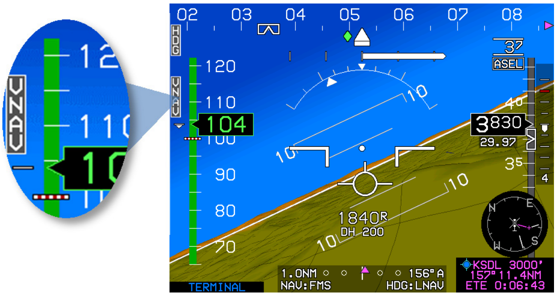
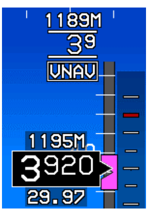



Figure 3-12: Altitude Display (VNAV Tile)

### 3.2.5. Altitude Display (Metric Units)




Pilot-selectable altitude values are in metric units with a resolution of 10 meters as depicted.

Figure 3-13: Altitude Display (Metric Units)

## 3.3. PFD Symbology


Figure 3-14: PFD Symbology

The PFD combines pitot-static information, heading, attitude, 3-D navigation data, and more overlaid on a virtual background of the outside world. Other objects in the background, including terrain, obstructions, traffic, and runways are presented conformally as if seen directly in front of the aircraft while looking outside.

### 3.3.1. Minimum Altitude

A user-settable minimum altitude bug consists of a bold yellow line on the altitude scale and a yellow region on the altitude scale from the minimum altitude down to ground level. The minimum altitude bug value is displayed above the altitude scale with a resolution of 10 ft. The minimum altitude bug can be used in conjunction with a selected altitude or VNAV bug. When a minimum altitude is set, descending from above to below causes the “Minimums, Minimums” audible alert and the minimum altitude to turn amber (yellow) and flash.

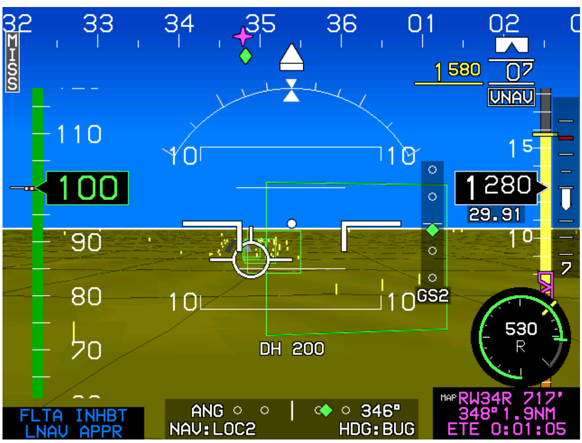



**Figure 3-15: Minimum Altitude**

### 3.3.2. Vertical Speed Indicator

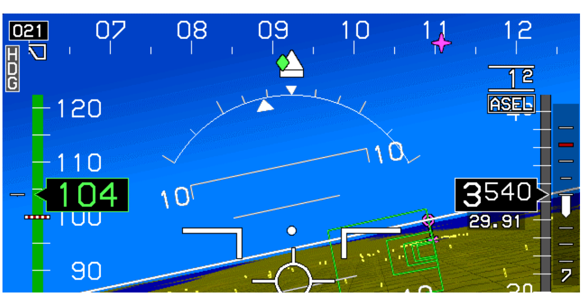
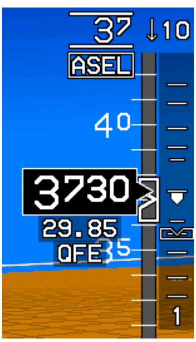



**Figure 3-16: VSI**

The vertical speed indicator (VSI) is depicted in a "worm" format providing analog and digital representation of VSI in feet per minute (fpm). For example, rate of descent in Figure 3-16 is 700 fpm.

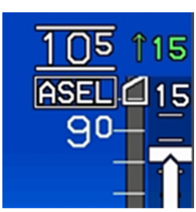
**Table 3-1: Scale Graduations and Display**

| Type Traffic Installed | Scale Limit | Scale Graduations and Display |
|---|---|---|
| With TCAS-II | ±2,000 FPM | ±500, ±1,000, and ±2,000 Background of the VSI functions as an RA display with green and red colored regions to provide RA maneuver guidance. |
| Without TCAS-II | ±2,000 FPM | ±500, ±1,000, and ±2,000 fpm |




The pilot-selectable VSI bug setting (100 fpm resolution) in this example is set to 1000 fpm descent rate. The vertical speed bug is used either as a visual reference or, when vertically integrated with an autopilot (either fully integrated or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input), as a control parameter for climbs or descents. It is mutually exclusive with the airspeed bug.

**Figure 3-17: VSI Bug**




When vertically integrated with an autopilot, the VSI bug-setting annunciation is green with the speed bug filled-white when in VSI climb or descent mode. Otherwise, the VSI bug setting is white, and VSI bug is hollow-white.

**Figure 3-18: VSI Bug (Vertically Integrated)**

When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the vertical speed bug setting annunciation is white, and the vertical speed bug is filled-white at all times.

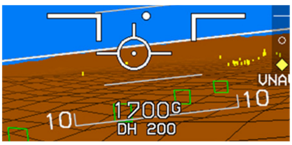
### 3.3.3. Normal AGL Indication

AGL altitude is displayed in two formats above the course deviation indicator (normal) and as the (analog) AGL indicator. These are mutually exclusive of each other and driven by the AGL altitude source used for TAWS but not displayed when the source is invalid. Source indication designates the source for either format as follows:

**R** = Radar altitude

**G** = GPS/SBAS geodetic height less database ground elevation

**B** = Barometric altitude less database ground elevation




**(SVS Basic) AGL Based on GPS Altitude**


**(SVS TAWS) AGL Based on Radar Altimeter**

**Figure 3-19: Normal AGL Indication**

AGL altitude is not displayed in either format when it is greater than the radar altimeter maximum valid altitude nor when it is invalid. Additionally, the AGL indication includes the set decision height (see § 3.3.5).

**Table 3-2: AGL Indication**

| **Altitude** | **≥300 Feet** | **≥100 Feet < 300 Feet** | **<100 Feet** |
|---|---|---|---|
| AGL Indication resolution | 10 Feet | 5 Feet | 1 Foot |

### 3.3.4. Analog AGL Indication


Pilot-selected analog AGL indication is displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD above the active waypoint identifier with a green circular tape and digital readout in the center. The circular tape has a radial line at its end and disappears above 1000' AGL.

**Figure 3-20: Analog AGL Indication**

The analog AGL indicator disappears in unusual attitude mode and is mutually exclusive with the mini-map and traffic thumbnail. Likewise, when the analog AGL altitude display is shown, the normal AGL display is removed.

| Table 3-3: Analog AGL Indicator | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Analog AGL Indicator Markings 0-1000 Feet** | | **AGL** | **Scaling (at clock position)** |
| 0-100 Feet | 100 Feet-1000 Feet | 0’ | 6:00 |
| Linear | Logarithmic | 50’ | 9:00 |
| | | 100’ | 12:00 |
| | | 200’ | 1:30 |
| | | 500’ | 3:00 |

| Table 3-4: Analog AGL Indicator Markings | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Major Tick Marks** | **Minor Tick Marks** |
| **0’** | ✓ | |
| **10’** | | ✓ |
| **20’** | | ✓ |
| **30’** | | ✓ |
| **40’** | | ✓ |
| **50’** | ✓ | |
| **60’** | | ✓ |
| **70’** | | ✓ |
| **80’** | | ✓ |
| **90’** | | ✓ |
| **100’** | ✓ | |
| **200’** | | ✓ |
| **300’** | | ✓ |
| **400’** | | ✓ |
| **500’** | ✓ | |
| **1000’** | ✓ | |

### 3.3.5. Decision Height

Pilot-settable decision height is displayed above the CDI with the abbreviation DH and by a yellow radial on the analog indicator. When the aircraft descends below decision height, **DH ###** turns amber (yellow) and flashes and the circular tape turns amber (yellow). This is accompanied by “Decision Height” audible alert.

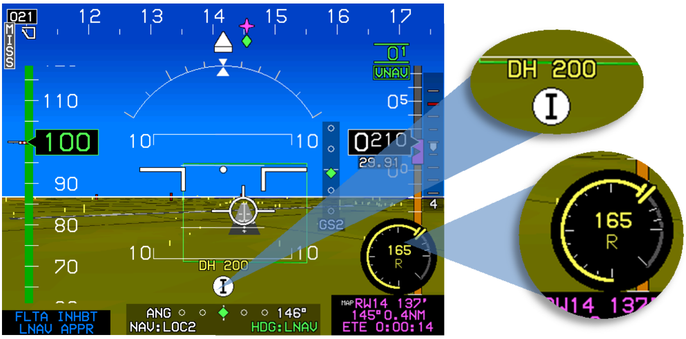
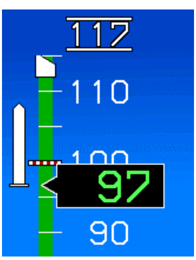



Figure 3-21: Decision Height

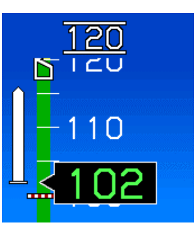
## 3.3.6. Airspeed Display

Airspeed is digitally displayed in same color as airspeed scale in knots, miles, or kilometers per hour with interactive pointer. The airspeed scale is commensurate with the certification category of the aircraft.



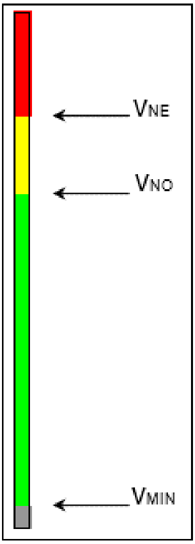

The airspeed box pointer interacts with the airspeed scale and has graduations every five measurement units with labels every 10 measurement units with high numbers at the top. The airspeed scale range has at least 40-75 measurement units. During an ADC failure, a red “X” is displayed in place of the airspeed scale.

Figure 3-22: Airspeed Display



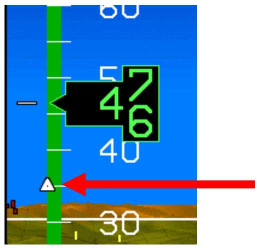

The airspeed trend vector is calculated along the rotorcraft longitudinal axis is in a worm format to provide analog representation of IAS achieved in five seconds assuming the instantaneous longitudinal acceleration is maintained.

Figure 3-23: Airspeed Trend




The airspeed scale for Part 27 and Part 29 rotorcraft has additional specific airspeed markings as follows:

A red cross-hatched line at **$V_{NE}$** (power-off).




If enabled, a white triangle translational lift reference speed marker.

**Figure 3-24: Airspeed Scale FAR Part 27/29**

Airspeed bug is parked in the direction of the difference if airspeed off scale.

**Figure 3-25: Airspeed Scale Bug**

The pilot-settable airspeed bug geometrically interacts with the airspeed box pointer and is colored as per Table 3-6. When the bug setting differs from aircraft speed to the extent the bug is off scale, the bug appears to be parked.

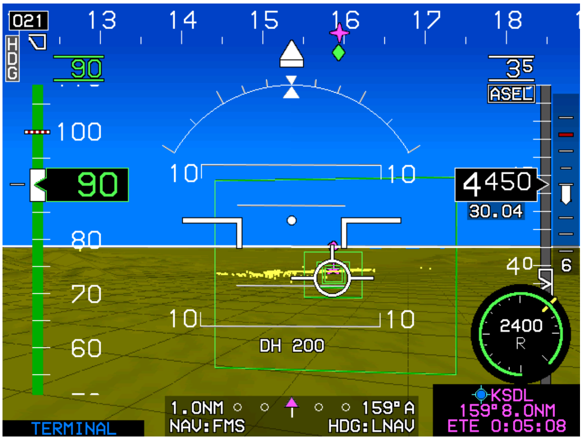
**Table 3-5: Airspeed Bug Limits**

| Low end | High end |
|---|---|
| **VMIN** | Red-line (**VNE**) |

**Table 3-6: Airspeed Bug Setting Annunciation and Bug Colors**

| | Vertically Integrated Autopilot | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Without** | **Without** |
| **Airspeed Bug Setting** | White at all times | Green when in airspeed climb or descent mode otherwise white |
| **Airspeed Bug** | Filled-white at all times | Filled-white when in airspeed climb or descent mode otherwise hollow-white |

### 3.3.7. Airspeed Display (With EFIS-Coupled)



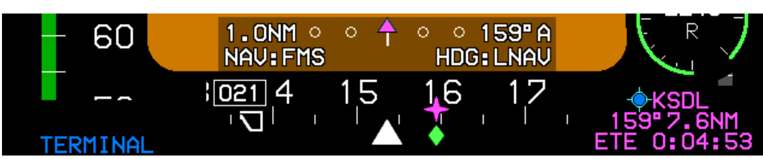

Airspeed descent to 3,500' with green color and filled airspeed

**Figure 3-26: Airspeed Display (with EFIS-Coupled)**

When the ADC sensor fails, a black circle with red "X" is shown instead of the airspeed readout, dial and pointer.

### 3.3.8. Heading Display


**Synthetic Vision**




**Basic Mode**

**Figure 3-27: Heading Display**

The PFD heading scale across the top of the display is aligned with magnetic north with graduations every 5° with major graduations and heading labels every 10°. These graduations and digits of the heading scale are equally spaced so, at an aircraft roll angle of zero, they approximately conform to the 3-D PFD background. The heading scale includes a triangular white heading pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the aircraft with a slip indicator.

An integral slip indicator is provided and may replace the mechanical slip indicator mounted in the bezel. The slip indicator is a rectangle just below the heading pointer that moves left and right to indicate the lateral acceleration sensed by the AHRS in the same manner as the ball in a mechanical slip indicator. The integral slip indicator is responsive to lateral (Y-axis) G-force (the slip indicator is the white rectangular part of the heading pointer) and is damped, so it approximately matches a conventional glass vial indicator.


When the AHRS is in DG mode, the DG symbol appears as shown here.

**Figure 3-28: DG Indicated when AHRS in DG Mode**

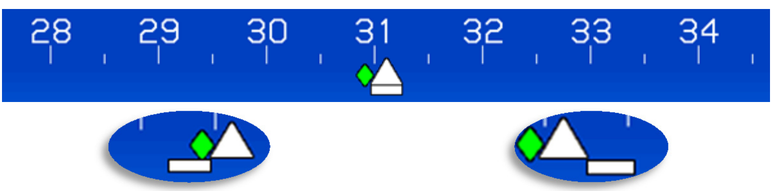



**Figure 3-29: Slip/Skid Indicator**

The heading scale has a green, diamond-shaped track pointer aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth. When the aircraft's track is displaced from aircraft heading beyond the boundaries of the PFD screen, the track pointer is drawn at the limit of the heading scale in the direction of the displacement, and the aircraft track value is displayed in a solid green box above the track pointer as seen in Figure 3-30. The track pointer is not displayed when ground speed is less than 30 knots.

The heading scale has a pilot-settable heading bug symbol geometrically interacting with the heading pointer. When the heading bug is set, the value is displayed in a white bordered black box above the heading bug symbol for a period of five seconds. When the heading bug value is displaced from aircraft heading beyond the boundaries of the PFD screen, the heading bug symbol is drawn halved at the limit of the heading scale in the direction of the displacement, and the heading bug value is displayed in a white bordered black box above the heading bug symbol (Figure 3-30).


**Figure 3-30: Displaced Heading Bug**

When an active waypoint exists, the heading scale includes a magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer at a point corresponding with the active waypoint. When the waypoint pointer is displaced from aircraft heading beyond the boundaries of the PFD screen, the waypoint pointer is replaced by a magenta, triangular arrow at either the far-right or far-left limit of the heading scale to indicate the shortest (not necessarily the safest) direction of turn to the active waypoint (Figure 3-30). The waypoint pointer and shortest direction of turn indications turn amber (yellow) in the event of GPS loss of navigation (LON) caution.

### 3.3.9. Pitch Scale

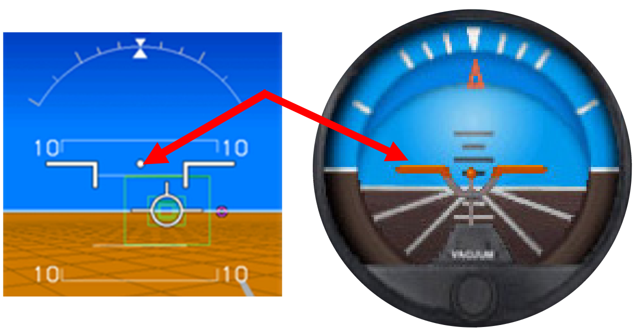



**Figure 3-31: Pitch Scale**

The PFD has large aircraft symbol reference marks fixed in the center of the display. Rotation of the background, pitch scale, and background oriented display elements occur relative to the location of the waterline symbol or large aircraft reference marks.

Pitch scale has increments every 5° with major increments and pitch scale labels every 10°. Increments are equally spaced to approximately conform to the 3-D PFD background. Pointer bars at the ends of each major increment indicate direction to the horizon and automatically declutter to present the fewest possible increments needed to unambiguously display pitch attitude. The pitch scale terminates with a zenith symbol (small white circle) at +90° and a nadir symbol (small white circle with "+") at -90°.

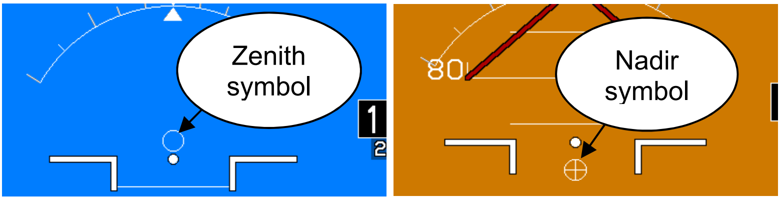



**Figure 3-32: Pitch Scale Zenith and Nadir Symbols**

### 3.3.10. Turn Rate Indicator

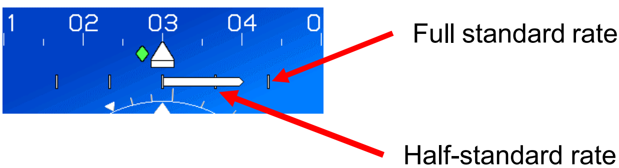
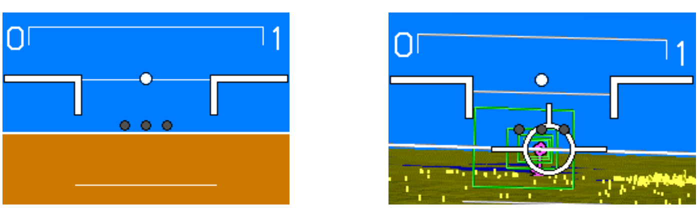



**Figure 3-33: Turn Rate Indicator**

### 3.3.11. Landing Gear Indication

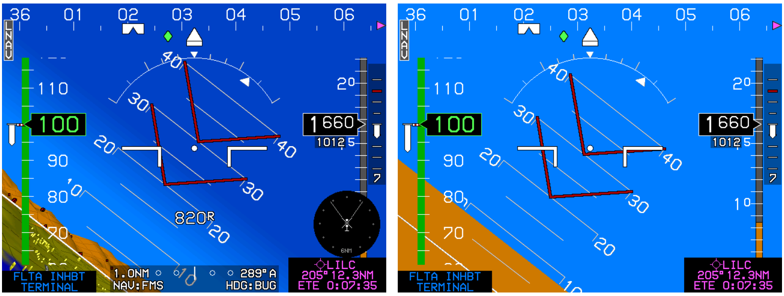
If configured, the PFD displays landing gear position as small "tires" below the flight path marker (FPM) or large aircraft symbol reference marks.



**Basic Mode** **Normal Mode**

**Figure 3-34: Landing Gear Indication**

### 3.3.12. Unusual Attitude Mode




**Less than 30° pitch up** **More than 30° pitch up**

**Figure 3-35: Unusual Attitude Mode**

Unusual attitude mode is enabled when pitch attitude exceeds +30° or -30° or bank angle exceeds 50 and remains engaged until pitch attitude returns to within 5° of the horizon and bank attitude returns to within 10° of the horizon. Recovery chevrons tied to the 30° and higher pitch scale indications (both positive and negative) aid in unusual attitude recovery and are a normal part of the pitch scale and are not necessarily tied to unusual attitude mode.

The following features are disabled in unusual attitude mode:

1) Terrain and obstruction rendering
2) CDI
3) VDI
4) FPM
5) Highway in the Sky boxes
6) Atmospheric perspective
7) Analog and digital AGL indication
8) Active Waypoint symbology
9) Mini Map
10) Traffic thumbnail
11) If in basic mode, PFD reverts to normal mode
12) If in zoom mode FOV, PFD reverts to normal FOV
13) Runways

### 3.3.13. PFD Background


**Figure 3-36: PFD Terrain and Obstructions**

The PFD has a 3-D background generated from terrain elevation and obstruction elevation data stored in electronic memory. The “actual horizon” displayed on the PFD is based upon the higher of terrain within 90NM or a horizon calculated using a visible horizon equation. Thus, the relative elevation of terrain and obstructions with respect to aircraft altitude and performance is observed by reference to the primary flight information pitch ladder and FPM.

The background has two pilot-selectable field of view (FOV) modes, wide FOV mode (approximately 70°) and narrow FOV mode (approximately 35°). In unusual attitude mode, wide FOV mode is automatically selected.

A blended-tone sky is displayed in conjunction with terrain. The sky fades from light blue at the horizon to dark blue at the top of the display to simulate atmospheric perspective and enhance the 3-D presentation. Additionally, the blended sky increases contrast of the directional scale, emphasizes the horizon, and provides a compelling visual cue to a nose-high attitude.

Terrain and obstruction rendering uses hidden surface removal techniques, while terrain/sky rendering uses atmospheric perspective techniques. Terrain with obstruction rendering is collectively pilot-selectable to declutter the display (***independent declutter of obstructions is not possible***). Terrain and obstruction rendering is disabled in basic mode, unusual attitude mode, and during any reversionary mode. In unusual attitude mode, the blue-brown boundary line of the background decouples from the pitch scale at high pitch angles so a sliver of the blue-brown boundary line always remains visible to give guidance to the horizon.

Terrain ahead of the aircraft is shown conformally with the artificial horizon in the correct scale and perspective for the aircraft's current position and altitude. Worldwide terrain coverage is provided in each IDU and is shown with a resolution as shown in Table 3-7. Terrain is displayed ahead of the aircraft using a grid and simulates "atmospheric perspective" (terrain lines fade into the background "ground" color as they recede into the distance).

**NOTE:**

There is a one-degree dead band to prevent grid flicker while flying along one of the boundary latitudes. The grid space switching changes at one degree less latitude when flying towards the Equator than it does when flying toward the Poles.

At latitudes greater than 75°, no grid lines are shown. To keep the grid spacing relatively consistent, at latitudes between 45° and 75°, the longitude spacing is increased according as follows.

**Table 3-7: LAT-LON Resolution Boundaries**

| Latitude Range | Longitude Grid Spacing | Heading Boundary | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Pole | Equator |
| 0° to 46° | 24 arc-seconds | | |
| 46° to 62° | 48 arc-seconds | 46° | 45° |
| 62° to 70° | 72 arc-seconds | 62° | 61° |
| 70° to 74° | 96 arc-seconds | 70° | 69° |
| 74° to 75° | 120 arc-seconds | 74° | 73° |

**Table 3-8: Terrain and Obstruction Rendering Levels**

| Feature | Coloring | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| **SVS BASIC** | Shades of brown for non-water terrain. | Amber and red colors not used for normal display of terrain. Deep blue denotes areas of water and takes precedence over the shades of brown. |

**Table 3-8: Terrain and Obstruction Rendering Levels**

| Feature | Coloring | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| **SVS TAWS** | Shades of olive when at or below 100 feet less than aircraft altitude.<br>Shades of brown when above 100 feet than aircraft altitude.<br>TAWS coloring of FLTA alert or warning cells. | Amber and red colors used for normal display of terrain and to show terrain areas causing FLTA alerts.<br>Deep blue denotes areas of water and takes precedence over other colors. |
| **None** | No terrain or obstructions are shown. Neither, **SVS BASIC** or **SVS TAWS** is selected. | |

***WARNING:***

***DO NOT USE THIS EFIS FOR TERRAIN-FOLLOWING FLIGHT. DO NOT ATTEMPT TO NAVIGATE USING THE TERRAIN DEPICTION. ALWAYS ADHERE TO PUBLISHED NAVIGATIONAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES AND NAVIGATIONAL CHARTS IN ALL FLIGHT CONDITIONS.***

When terrain and obstruction rendering is deselected or disabled, the PFD background is a conventional blue over brown attitude display presentation without atmospheric perspective. Additionally, terrain may be deselected on the PFD and retained on the ND MAP page as seen in Figure 3-37.

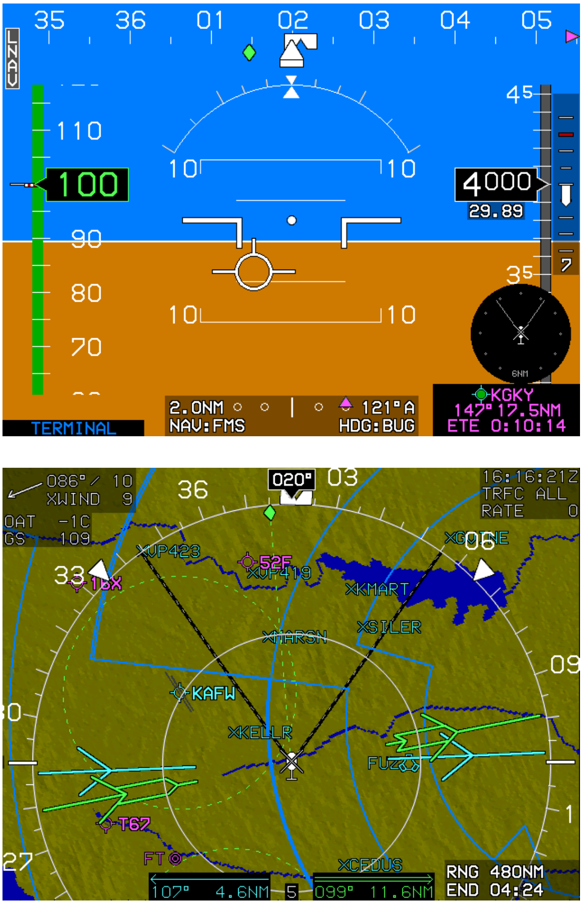



**Figure 3-37: Terrain Deselected on PFD but Selected on MFD**

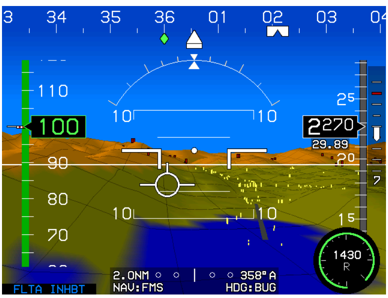
Obstructions such as towers, antennas, buildings, and other manmade structures are shown on the PFD display as vertical amber (yellow) lines (see Figure 3-38). They are conformal in location and size and only shown in conjunction with terrain regardless of altitude. Obstructions representing a collision hazard are annunciated aurally and with a caution or warning flag. See Section 2 System Overview for description of alerts when obstructions represent a collision hazard.

***WARNING:***

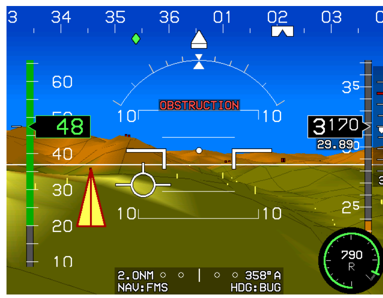
***MANY TOWERS, ANTENNAS, STRUCTURES, AND OBSTRUCTIONS ARE NOT IN THE DATABASE.***

**NOTE:**

The obstruction data is provided by Jeppesen and must be updated each 28 days to maintain current database information.




**Obstructions without Hazardous Condition**




**Obstructions Creating an OBSTRUCTION Warning**

**Figure 3-38: PFD with Obstructions**

## 3.3.14. Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector)


**Figure 3-39: Flight Path Marker**

The FPM appears on the background to coincide with the aircraft's actual flight path as projected on the outside world. The FPM is laterally displaced parallel to the horizon with respect to the center of the display to account for the difference between aircraft track and heading, and is vertically displaced perpendicular to the horizon to account for aircraft climb or descent angle.

Because the FPM is used in conjunction with a 3-D background, the FPM utility normally associated with a HUD is achieved. When the FPM is displaced to the extent it interferes with heading, altitude, or airspeed indications, it is removed from the display as in Figure 3-40.


FPM nearing airspeed tape due to strong crosswind from the right

FPM removed due to excessive crosswinds from the right

**Figure 3-40: Flight Path Marker Views**

FPM movement is dampened by reference to aircraft pitch and heading so not to deviate from pitch or heading at a rate greater than 1°/sec.


**Figure 3-41: FPM Absent (Unusual Attitude Mode)**

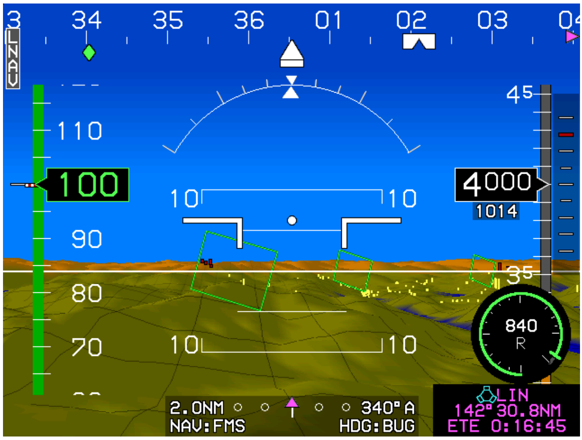



Figure 3-42: PFD with FPM Removed

In unusual attitude mode, the FPM disappears to allow the pilot to concentrate on the large aircraft symbol reference marks for unusual attitude recovery. In reversionary mode 1 (GPS failure), the FPM changes to a light gray color after one minute to indicate degraded performance (Figure 3-43).

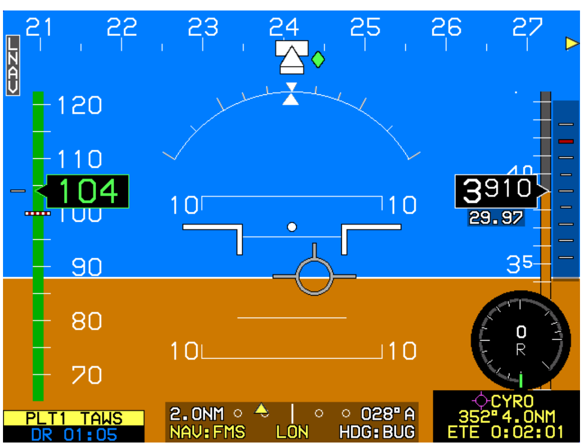
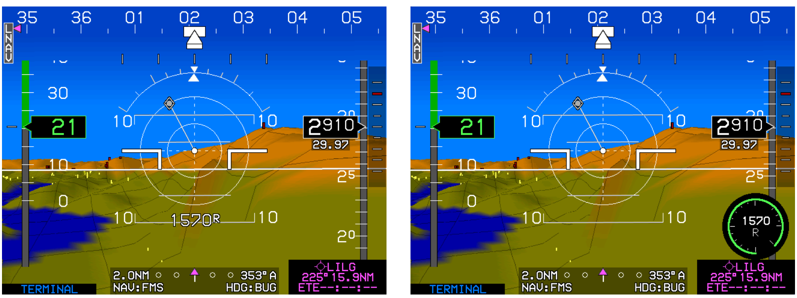



Figure 3-43: PFD with GPS Failure after 1 Minute

### 3.3.15. Hover Vector

The FPM is removed at low speed, <30 knots groundspeed, and is replaced with hover vector symbology. The hover vector indicates direction and groundspeed of drift at low groundspeeds (when lower than 30 kts) consisting of large aircraft symbol reference marks, an inner concentric ring indicating 10 knots groundspeed, an outer concentric ring indicating 20 knots groundspeed, and a vertical and horizontal dashed line passing through the center extending to the outer ring. The white dot of the large aircraft symbol reference marks indicates 0 knots groundspeed and is the center for the concentric rings. A gray dot equal in size to the white dot and connected to the white dot by a white line floats over the concentric ring area to indicate direction and magnitude of drift in a gods-eye view.




**AGL Indicator (Normal)** **AGL Indicator (Analog)**

**Figure 3-44: PFD Hover Vector Symbology**

A diamond-shaped acceleration cue is centered on the gray dot to indicate direction and magnitude of horizontal acceleration. Deviation of the dot in a straight up direction (12 o'clock position) indicates forward flight while straight down (6 o'clock position) indicates rearward flight. Deviation of the dot laterally indicates lateral drift in that direction. The movement of the dot is constrained to less than five knots per second to prevent jumpiness. The example above shows drift, forward and slightly to the right (1 o'clock position) at 20 knots groundspeed. (See § 3.7.2 for full hover vector symbology with Hover page selected on MFD.)

**NOTE:**

In the event the bank scale was decluttered, it becomes uncluttered while at low speed <30 knots groundspeed.

### 3.3.16. Bank Angle Scale

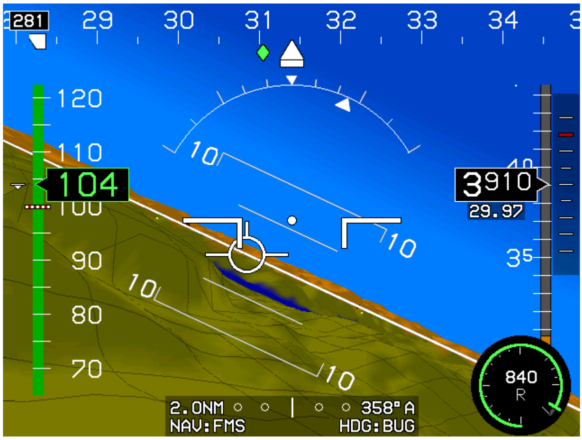



**Figure 3-45: Bank Angle**

The bank scale and roll pointer are centered upon the large aircraft symbol reference marks in basic or unusual attitude modes. When bank angle scale decluttering is selected, the bank angle scale and sky pointer are displayed when the bank angle exceeds 2.8°. With decluttering selected, appearance of the bank angle scale and roll pointer are dampened based upon magnitude and time to prevent nuisance appearances.

When decluttering is not selected, the bank angle scale and sky pointer appear full time with level, 10°, 20°, 30°, 45°, and 60° marks on left and right sides. The bank angle scale and roll pointer are centered upon the large aircraft symbol reference marks (basic mode or unusual attitude mode).

### 3.3.17. Turn Indication


Rate of turn is available as an option in the PFD declutter menu to show a worm in the direction of turn with full scale deflection indicating a standard rate of turn and half standard rate indicated at the mid-scale marking.

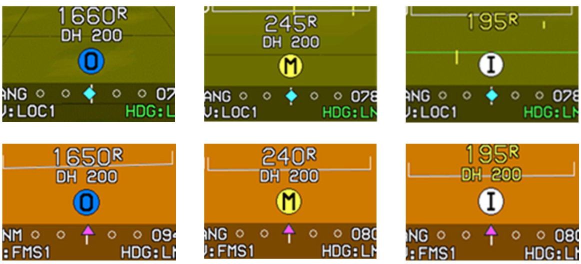
**Figure 3-46: Turn Indicator**

### 3.3.18. Timer Indication


When selected, a countdown or count-up timer is displayed above the FPM or large aircraft symbol reference marks.

**Figure 3-47: Timer**

### 3.3.19. Marker Beacon Symbology



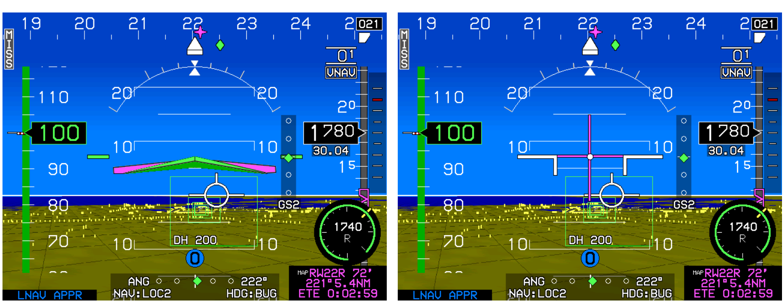

**Synthetic Vision**

**Basic Mode**

**Figure 3-48: Marker Beacons**

Marker beacons data acquired from the navigation receiver are displayed on the PFD and disabled when the selected NAV source is FMS. Valid marker beacon signals cause circular indicators with appropriate coloring and markings to display in the lower central portion of the PFD.

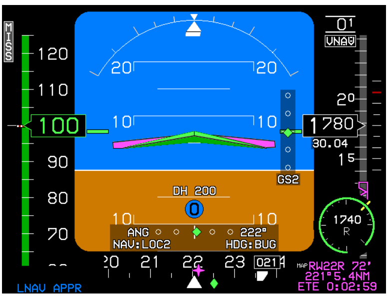
### 3.3.20. Flight Director Symbology

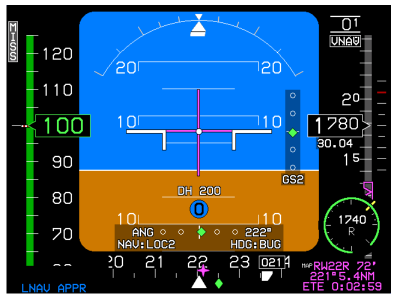



**FD1 Single Cue** **FD2 Dual Cue**

**Figure 3-49: Flight Director**

Flight director (FD) symbology is controlled on the IDU or integrated autopilot/flight director equipment. When selected, FD symbology and valid steering commands are received from the FD with one of the following symbols shown in the normal mode. The PFD has a waterline symbol fixed in the center of the display. Rotation of the background, pitch scale, and background oriented display elements occur relative to the location of the waterline symbol or large aircraft reference marks.



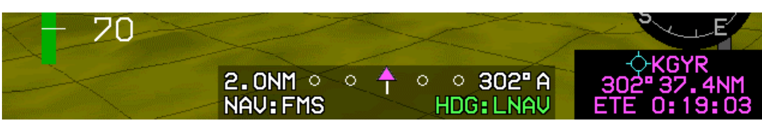




**FD1 Single Cue** **FD2 Dual Cue**

**Figure 3-50: Flight Director (Basic Mode)**

### 3.3.21. Course Deviation Indicator (CDI)


**Without Autopilot**




**With Autopilot**

**Figure 3-51: Course Deviation Indicator**

The order of precedence of type accuracy used by the system from highest to lowest is as follows:

1) Manual RNP: The pilot may override the automatic accuracy types by setting a manual RNP value.

2) Automatic RNP: These are based upon RNP values, which are coded in the navigation database. The EFIS looks at the leg coding on all legs other than those on the final approach

segment. On the final approach segment, the EFIS looks at the "Level of Service" record for those approaches, which have RNP transition legs, and then goes to LP or LPV minima for the final approach.

3) Default TSO-C146C operation: As specified as per Table 3-9 for enroute, terminal, and various approach modes according to the "Level of Service" record.

**Table 3-9: CDI Behavior and Color**

| CDI Pointer and Condition | Color or Behavior |
|---|---|
| Full Scale Deflection | Flash |
| Slaved to GPS/SBAS | Scale is appropriate FSD value for mode of flight:<br>**Enroute**: ±2NM<br>**From Enroute to Terminal**: Change from ±2 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode.<br>**From Terminal to Enroute**: Change from ±1 NM FSD to ±2 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering enroute mode.<br>**From Terminal to Approach**: If VTF, switch immediately.<br>Otherwise, change from ±1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of 2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP.<br>**From Approach to Terminal**: Change to ±1 NM.<br>**From Departure to Terminal**: If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ±0.3 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD at the turn initiation |

**Table 3-9: CDI Behavior and Color**

| CDI Pointer and Condition | Color or Behavior |
|---|---|
| | point of the first fix in the departure procedure. |
| Slaved to GPS/SBAS (with GPS Loss of Navigation) | Amber (Yellow) |
| Normal conditions | Magenta |
| In sources other than FMS | Angular scale annunciation |
| Navigation source is localizer (Course error exceeds 105°) | Reverse sensing |
| Lateral deviations in failed state | Red “X” displayed over CDI |
| **EFIS not coupled with autopilot** | |
|  | Selected NAV source FMS2 |
|  | Selected NAV source VOR1 |
|  | Selected NAV source VOR2 |
| **EFIS coupled system with autopilot** | |
|  | Holding the wings level* |
|  | Tracking HDG BUG** |
|  | LNAV in ARM mode** |
|  | LNAV captured** |
| *No positive autopilot feedback/**Positive autopilot feedback | |

### 3.3.22. OBS Setting of CDI

In automatic mode, the system controls the scale and OBS setting. The selected navigation source is annunciated below the CDI as follows:

1) NAV: **FMS1/FMS2**

2) NAV: **VOR1/LOC1**

3) NAV: **BC1/BC2** (annunciated instead of LOC1/2 when course error exceeds 105°)

4) NAV: **VOR2/LOC2**

### 3.3.23. Heading/Roll-Steering Sub-Mode

Heading/roll-steering sub-mode annunciation appears immediately right of the selected navigation source annunciation and displays:

1) HDG: **LVL** (Wing-Leveling Sub-Mode Guidance)

2) HDG: **LNAV** (LNAV Sub-Mode Guidance)

3) HDG: **BUG** (Heading Bug Sub-Mode Guidance)

4) HDG: **---** (Failure Sub-Mode)

### 3.3.24. Heading Bug Sub-Mode

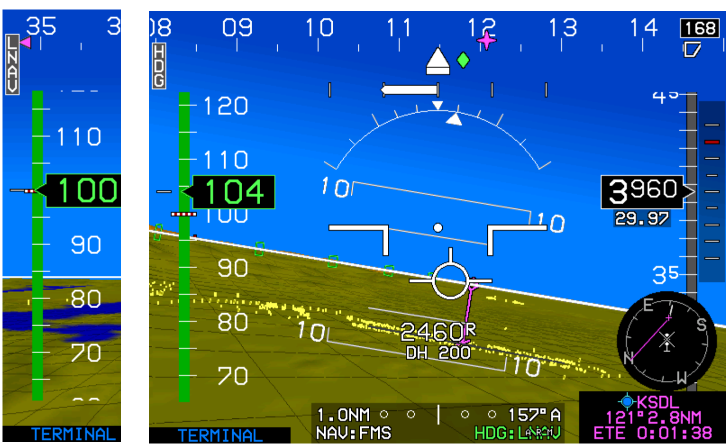



**Figure 3-52: Heading Bug**

The heading bug sub-mode is active when selected through the menu system and commands roll angles to track the heading bug with aircraft heading (if heading is valid) or aircraft track (if heading is invalid). Figure 3-52 shows this mode with positive feedback from the autopilot (green annunciation and filled heading bug). **LNAV (L1)** is a one-touch method for turning off the HDG bug and engaging in LNAV mode.


**Figure 3-53: LNAV Armed Mode**

### 3.3.25. No Autopilot or Fully-Integrated Autopilot Course Deviation Indicator

In an installation without an autopilot or with a fully-integrated autopilot (e.g., HeliSAS-E), the heading/roll-steering sub-mode annunciation is not meaningful and should be decluttered from the CDI display. Therefore, the shaded background of the CDI only falls behind the CDI scale. An abbreviated navigation source annunciation (without "NAV:") appears above the top left corner of the CDI scale. The heading/roll-steering sub-mode annunciation does not appear, as it is not required with autopilot mode annunciations or when an installation does not include an autopilot.


**Without Autopilot**


**With HeliSAS-E**

**Figure 3-54: CDI No Autopilot or Fully-Integrated Autopilot**

### 3.3.26. Vertical Deviation Indicator

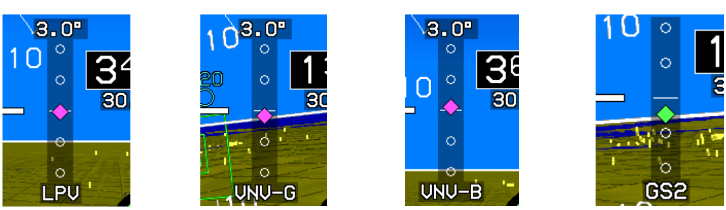



**Figure 3-55: Vertical Deviation Indicator**

The vertical deviation indicator (VDI) on the right side of the PFD displays vertical deviation for the selected vertical navigation source to display descent profile but disappears in unusual attitude mode.

1) **LPV Mode and LPV1 or LPV2**: When descending on the final approach segment in LPV mode. GPS Altitude utilized to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LPV minima regardless of temperature.

2) **LNAV Mode and VNAV1-G or VNAV2-G**: When descending on the final approach segment in LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LNAV or RNP modes when using GPS VNAV. GPS Altitude utilized to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima regardless of temperature.

3) **LNAV Mode and VNV1-B or VNV2-B**: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode. Using barometric altitude to generate the VDI, pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima as long as the specified temperature is within limits.

4) **GS1 or GS2**: Glideslope receiver #1 or #2 as indicated. Pilot follows guidance to published barometric DH.

**Table 3-10: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior**

| **Source (Below VDI)** | **Behavior/Condition** | **Pointer Color** |
|---|---|---|
| FMS | Conforms to the VDI display | Magenta |
| Glideslope | Source must be valid when a valid glideslope is received. | Cyan |
| LPV or VNAV mode | Source is valid if:<br>On VNAV descent segments when approaching the Top of Descent point so as to provide descent anticipation as long as the following are true:<br>1) On VNAV descent segments; OR<br>2) If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is enabled, on VNAV level segments; OR<br>3) If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is disabled, when approaching the Top of Descent point to provide descent anticipation; | Magenta |

**Table 3-10: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior**

| Source (Below VDI) | Behavior/Condition | Pointer Color |
|---|---|---|
| | Providing:<br>1) The aircraft is within 2NM or twice the full scale deflection for the mode of flight (whichever is greater) of the lateral navigation route; AND<br>2) The aircraft is in TO operation relative to the active VNAV waypoint (i.e., taking into account VNAV offsets); AND<br>3) If on the final approach segment, the aircraft is within a 35° lateral wedge of the azimuth reference point (either the GARP or MAWPT + 10,000 ft.). | |
| LPV,VNV-G | During GPS LON or GPS VLON | Pointer and Text Color Amber (Yellow) |

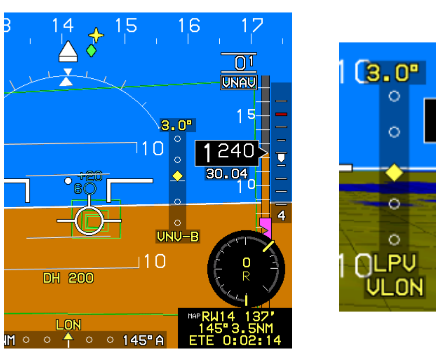



**Figure 3-56: Vertical Deviation Indicator Color during GPS/SBAS LON or VLON**

### 3.3.27. Vertical Deviation Indicator (EFIS Coupled)

When vertically integrated with an autopilot (either fully integrated or partially integrated) through glideslope mode discrete input with glideslope mode engaged, the selected vertical navigation source is green indicating the autopilot is vertically coupled to the selected vertical navigation source. Otherwise, the selected vertical navigation source is white.

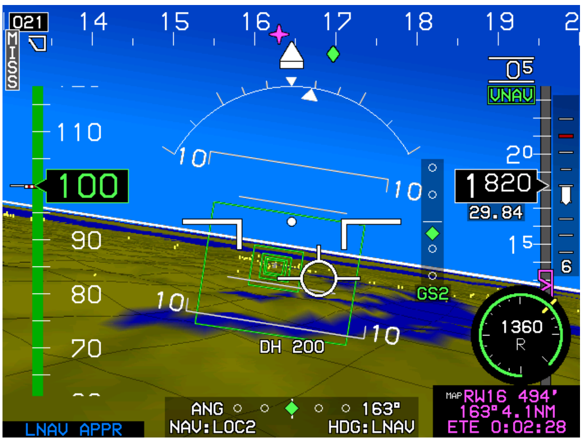



**Figure 3-57: EFIS Coupled Vertically with Glideslope Mode Engaged**

### 3.3.28. Highway in the Sky/Skyway


**Coupled** **Uncoupled**

**Figure 3-58: Highway in the Sky**

### 3.3.29. Active Waypoint and Waypoint Identifier

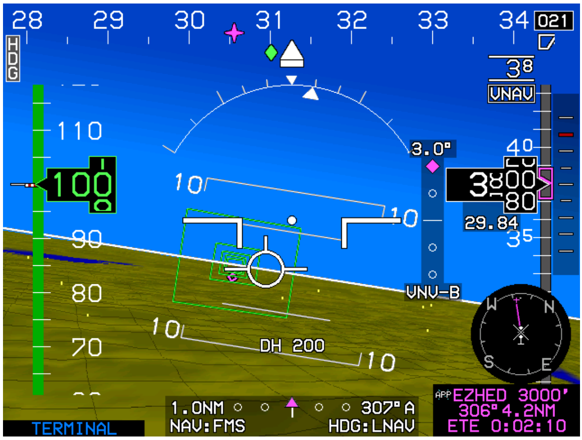



**Figure 3-59: Active Waypoint**

The PFD displays the active waypoint symbol as a magenta "tethered balloon" consisting of:

1) an "X" depicted at the ground location of the active waypoint;

2) a hoop or "tethered balloon" (for fly-over waypoints) or "tethered diamond" (for fly-by waypoints) depicted at the VNAV altitude or at aircraft altitude (if there is no VNAV altitude), and

3) a line connecting the "X" and the hoop.

The "X" and connecting line are not shown if ground elevation information is not encoded with the NavData waypoint information (e.g., terminal and enroute fixes). The active waypoint symbol is drawn using the hidden surface removal techniques of terrain and obstruction rendering, so an active waypoint behind terrain appears to be so. The active waypoint symbol disappears in unusual attitude mode but turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

The identifier of the waypoint along with the bearing and distance to the waypoint are displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD in magenta. If a target altitude is not set and the active waypoint has a VNAV altitude associated as in Figure 3-55, the identifier includes a display of the VNAV altitude.

**NOTE:**

Only the active waypoint is shown on the PFD. Subsequent waypoints in a route are displayed sequentially as the current active waypoint is passed. With terrain turned off, the active waypoint is always visible regardless of distance.

If the active waypoint is beyond the lateral limits of the screen, the magenta waypoint direction pointer (i.e., magenta triangle) on the directional scale indicates shortest direction of turn to the waypoint.

If the waypoint is only a hoop hanging in space, it is a fix and not directly associated with a NAVAID on the ground (e.g. VOR, NDB, user waypoint, or airport).

If the waypoint X disappears behind terrain on the PFD, there is terrain between the aircraft present position and the waypoint.

### 3.3.30. Mini Map

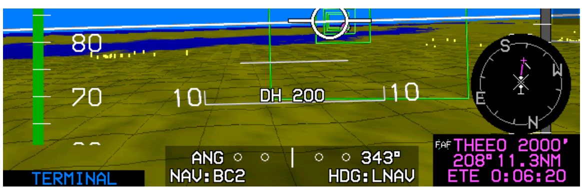



**Figure 3-60: Mini Map**


**Cyan VOR #1** **Green VOR #2**

**Figure 3-61: Mini Map VOR Symbology**

### 3.3.31. Runways

The PFD displays airport runways in a 3-D manner. Upon activation of a DP, VFR approach, IFR approach, or STAR procedure, runways for the airport associated with the procedure, as well as, runways associated with the three nearest airports (computed by the TAWS algorithms) are displayed.


**Figure 3-62: Runways**

Runways are displayed with hidden surface removal techniques of the terrain and obstruction rendering, so runways behind terrain appear to be so. Runways are based on characteristics in the navigation database, including elevation, position, orientation, length, and width, and displayed as defined in Table 3-11.

**Table 3-11: Runway Drawing Criteria**

| Feature | Color | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| Runway markings, aiming point markings, centerline, designation, and displaced threshold arrows | Dark gray  | According to characteristics from navigation database, e.g., including position, orientation, length, and width. |
| Runway markings | Medium gray  | |

**Table 3-11: Runway Drawing Criteria**

| Feature | Color | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| Landing portion of the selected runway. | Light gray  | Taking into account displaced threshold data. |
| Runway markings for the selected runway | Lighter gray than the light gray. | |

### 3.3.32. Heliports

Heliports appear as distinguishable 150' X 150' helipads with applicable markings as shown below.

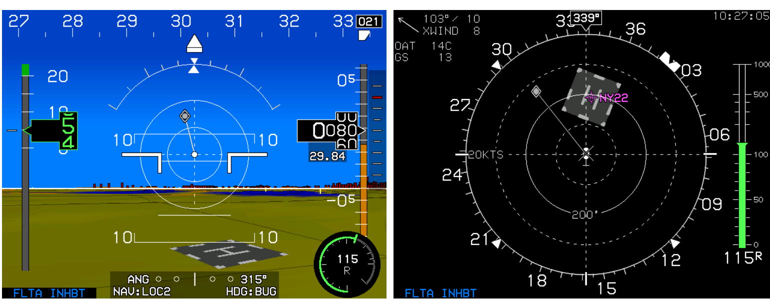



**Figure 3-63: Helipads**

## 3.4. MFD Symbology

Navigation display (ND) may be configured the following formats:

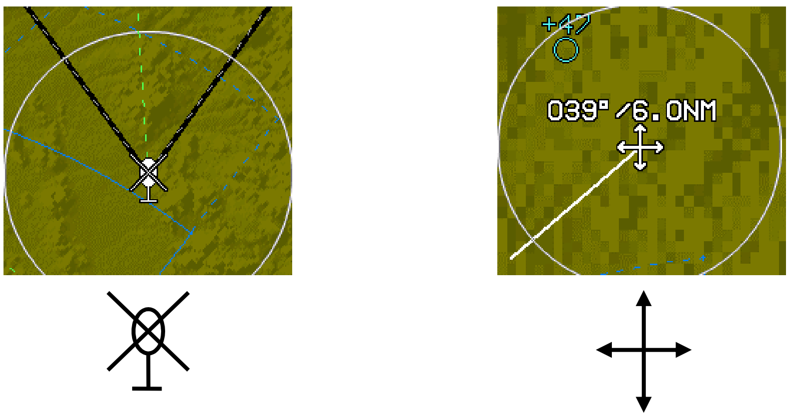
1) Moving Map
2) Conventional HSI
3) Navigation Log
4) OASIS
5) Strikes (see WX-500 Lightning Strikes Appendix)

6) Traffic (see Traffic Appendix)

7) Datalink (see Datalink Appendix)

8) Weather Radar (see Weather Radar Appendix)

### 3.4.1. Ownship Symbology




**Rotorcraft** **Pan Mode**

**Figure 3-64: Ownship Symbology**

### 3.4.2. Moving Map


**Figure 3-65: Basic Moving Map**

**NOTE:**

When selected, latitude/longitude is displayed below the ownship symbol as aircraft current position.

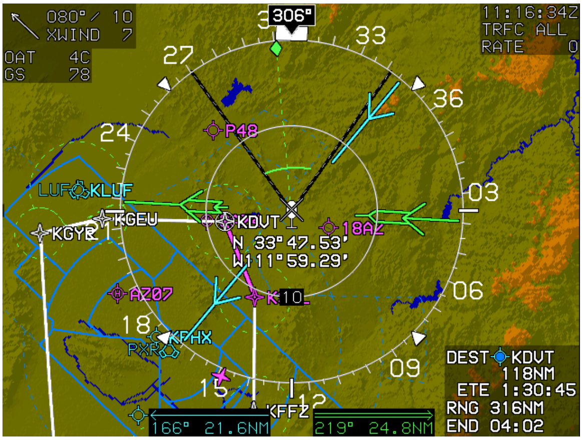



**Figure 3-66: Latitude/Longitude Display Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol**


**Figure 3-67: Moving Map with Instrument Approach**


**Figure 3-68: North-Up Arc Mode**

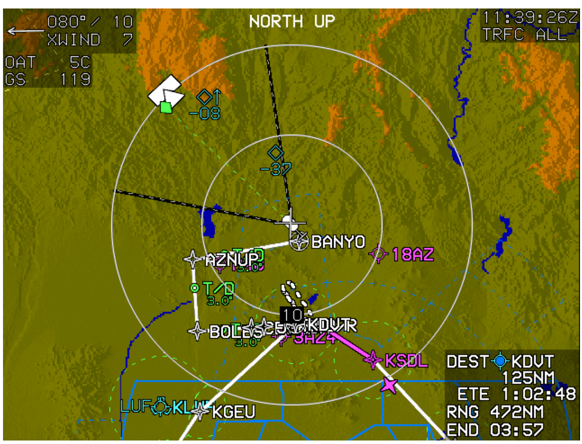



**Figure 3-69: North-Up Centered Mode**

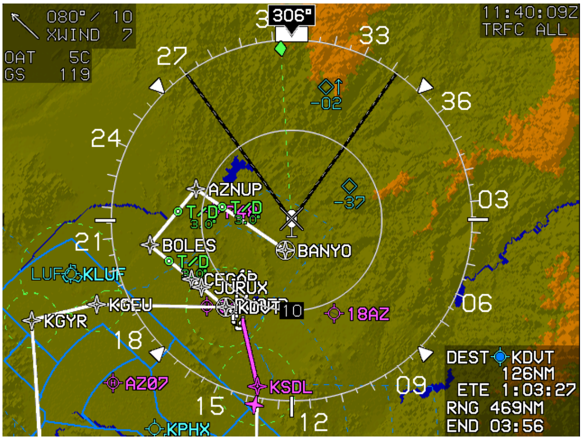



Figure 3-70: Heading-Up Centered Mode

### 3.4.3. Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol

In heading up mode, the magnetic digital heading readout and pointer are aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol.

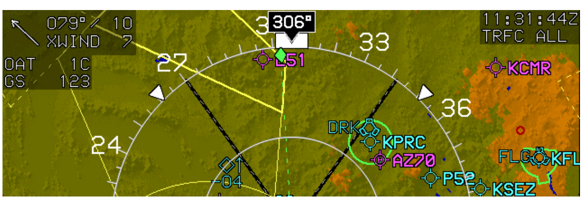



Figure 3-71: Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol

### 3.4.4. Clock/Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the ND.

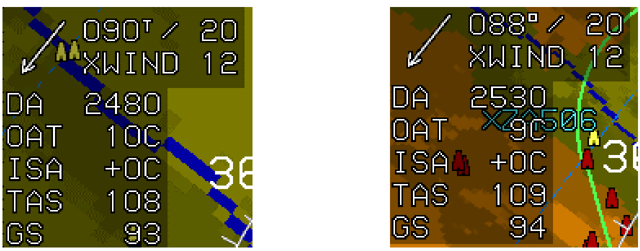

Zulu Time


Local Offset Time

Figure 3-72: Clock/Options

| Table 3-12: Clock Options | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Feature** | **Options** | **Notes** |
| **Zulu Time or Local Offset** | **hh:mm:ssZ hh:mm:ssL** | Synchronized with the GPS/SBAS constellation. |
| **Declutter Mode** | **DCLTR A DCLTR M** | = Automatic declutter mode<br>= Manual declutter mode |
| **Terrain Status** | Enabled or Disabled | Terrain status is indicated by the absence or presence of terrain. |

### 3.4.5. Air Data and Groundspeed




**True North Mode** **Normal Mode**

**Figure 3-73: Air Data and Groundspeed**

The following are displayed in the upper left corner of the ND:

1) **Wind**: Information consists of the following readouts:

   a) Direction in degrees;

   b) Speed in knots;

   c) Crosswind component in knots; and

   d) Graphical wind vector arrow oriented to correspond to the ND orientation.

**NOTE:**

Wind information is not shown when indicated airspeed is in the noise range of less than 20 KIAS, when the aircraft is in the ground mode, or when the AHRS is in DG mode.

If referenced to magnetic north, direction readout uses the degree (°) symbol. Otherwise, a stylized true north ($^{T}$) symbol is used.

2) **Outside Air Temperature**: Digitally in degrees C or F (as configured).

3) **International Standard Atmosphere (ISA)**: Difference between ISA temperature and current outside air temperature is displayed digitally in degrees C or F (Negative values = less than Standard OAT). Decluttered if the “Show ISA Temperature Flag” is disabled in EFIS limits.

4) **Density Altitude**: Digitally in feet. Decluttered if “Show Density altitude Flag” is disabled in EFIS limits.

5) **True Airspeed**: Digitally in knots. Decluttered if “True Airspeed Flag” is disabled in EFIS limits.

6) **Groundspeed**: Digitally in knots.

### 3.4.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions


**GPS in normal state and current active waypoint**


**GPS in LON condition**


**GPS in normal state and not the current active waypoint**

**Figure 3-74: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions**

**Table 3-13: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions**

| Function | Conditions | Type Symbols Options |
|---|---|---|
| DEST Waypoint | If there is an active flight plan, waypoint type, identifier, range, and ETE/ETA for the last waypoint (“DEST” waypoint) are shown. | ETA or ETE<br>Degree (°) or True North ($^T$) symbol |

**Table 3-13: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions**

| Function | Conditions | Type Symbols Options |
|---|---|---|
| | If the active waypoint is not the last waypoint, range and time to destination waypoint are based on the flight plan route. Otherwise, range and time are based on a direct geodetic path.<br>Waypoint information is white but turns amber (yellow) with GPS LON caution. | |
| Range | Based on instantaneous fuel flow, fuel remaining and groundspeed are shown immediately below “DEST” waypoint information for easy comparison. | |
| Endurance | Based on instantaneous fuel flow and fuel remaining is shown. | |

### 3.4.7. Navigation Data

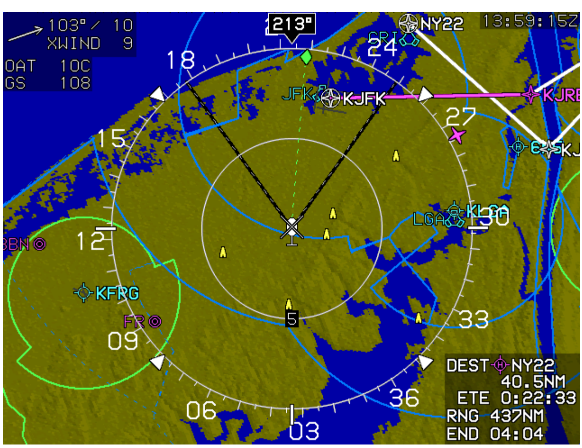
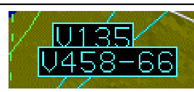
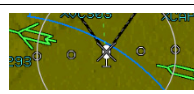



**Figure 3-75: Navigation Data and Airspace Depiction**

The ND displays navigation data in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with navigation data symbols, which include airport symbols, NDBs, and user waypoints. High altitude and low altitude airways may be shown.

**Table 3-14: Navigation Symbology**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|   | IFR Airport |   | NDB |
|   | VFR Airport |   | FIX |
|   | VORTAC |   | High Altitude Airway |
|   | DME only or TACAN |   | Low Altitude Airway |
|   | VOR |   | User Waypoint |
|   | User Waypoint in Pan Mode |  | HSI CDI scale |

The ND has manual and automatic decluttering of navigation data. There are six levels of automatic declutter based upon the number of navigation data symbols drawn in the current ND format and range. Decluttering is as follows:

1) **Airports**: Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, large airports (IFR procedure and longest runway and automatically adjusted threshold needed to achieve desired symbol count) are always shown; IFR airports that are not large airports are shown in levels 1, 2, 3, and 4; and VFR airports are shown in levels 1, 2, and 3.

2) **VORs**: Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, VORs are shown in levels 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.

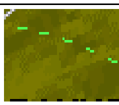
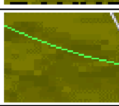
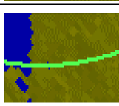
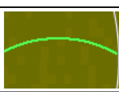
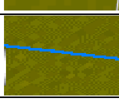
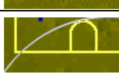
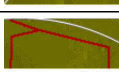
3) **NDBs**: Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, NDBs are shown in levels 1 and 2. Both enroute and terminal NDBs are shown.

4) **FIXES** (including user waypoints): Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, enroute fixes are shown in level 1. Terminal fixes are manually selected and not shown in automatic declutter mode. Enroute fixes, terminal fixes, and user waypoints may be manually decluttered separately from each other.

5) **High Altitude Airways**: Manually selected.

6) **Low Altitude Airways**: Manually selected.

**Table 3-15: Airspace Depiction**

| | **Type of ARINC 424 Airspace** | **Vertical Limits** |
|---|---|---|
|  | Single pixel, dashed lines | More than ±500’ |
|  | Single pixel solid lines | Within ±500’ |
|  | Double pixel solid lines | Within airspace vertical limits |
| | | **Color of Airspace** |
|  | Class C, CONTROL AREA, TRSAs, Class D | Green |
|  | Class B, TCAs (where applicable) | Blue |
|  | Caution, danger, MOAs, training, warning, or unknown areas | Amber (Yellow) |
|  | Prohibited, restricted, or TFR areas (when equipped with Datalink) | Red |

### 3.4.8. Analog Navigation Symbology

When selected, the ND displays analog (VOR1 and VOR2) navigation symbology, when valid. When the VOR1 and/or VOR2 pointers are selected for display, bearing and distance for the selected VOR pointers appear at the bottom of the ND view (cyan for VOR1; green for VOR2). If the DME channel is in hold mode, the associated distance readout is amber (yellow), and the letter “H” is shown above the distance readout (see Figure 3-95). The size of the HSI depends on arc or center modes to ensure a full HSI is always displayed.


**Figure 3-76: Analog Navigation Symbology HSI in ARC Mode**

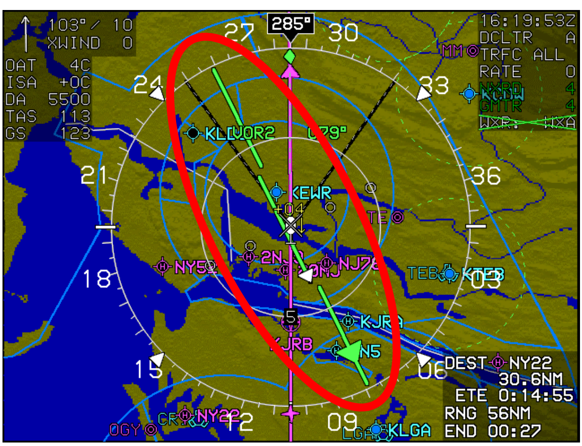
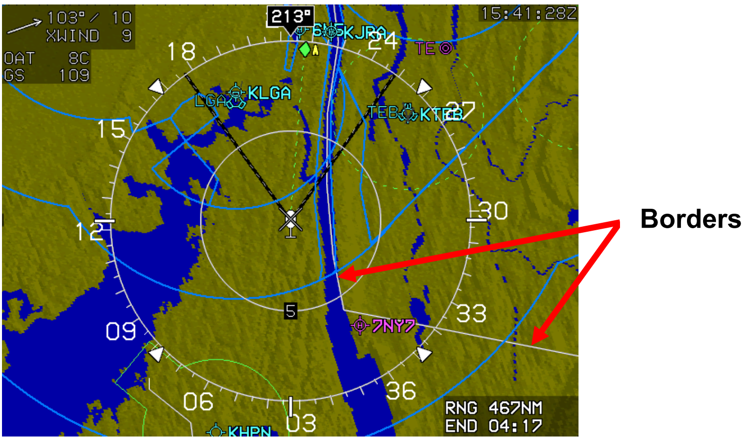


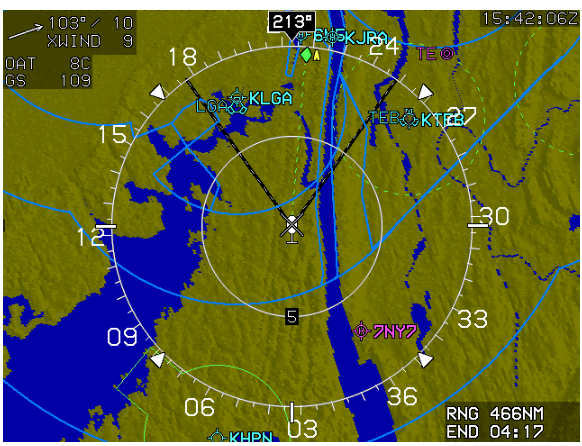

**Figure 3-77: Analog Navigation Symbology HSI in Centered Mode**

## 3.4.9. Borders

If national and United States state borders are selected, they are drawn at all map scales. The borders are white if the ND background includes terrain.




**State Borders Drawn**




**Without State Borders Drawn**

**Figure 3-78: Borders**

## 3.4.10. Terrain/Obstructions

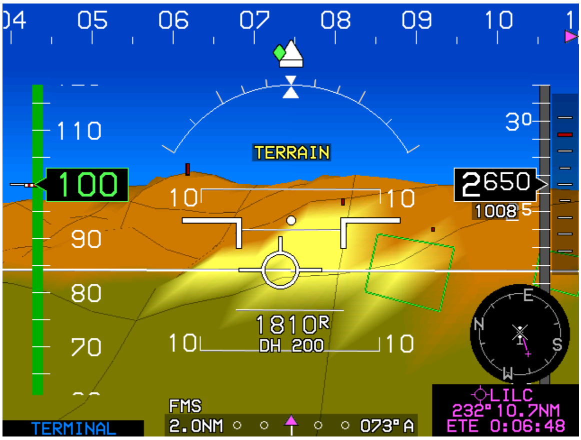



**Figure 3-79: Terrain/Obstructions PFD**

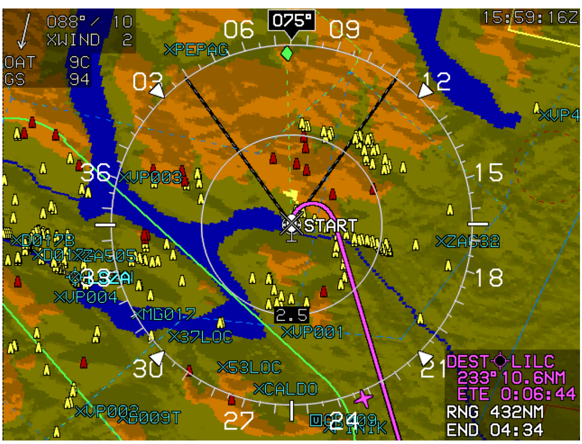



**Figure 3-80: Terrain/Obstructions MFD**

Terrain is displayed on the ND in its correct relationship to the ownship symbol using color to show relationship to aircraft altitude.

**Table 3-16: Terrain Color**

| Based on Aircraft Altitude | Color | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| Terrain at or below 100 feet less than aircraft altitude | Olive shades | Terrain slope determines shade. |

| Table 3-16: Terrain Color | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Based on Aircraft Altitude** | **Color** | **Notes** |
| Terrain above 100 feet less than aircraft altitude | Brown shades | |
| FLTA alerts | Amber and Red | See Section 8 TAWS |
| Water at all altitudes | Deep Blue | Takes precedence over other colors. |

Obstructions are displayed on the ND in correct relationship to the ownship symbol using color to show relationship to aircraft altitude.

| Table 3-17: Obstructions | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Lateral Distance Away** | 21 NM or less | PFD in Narrow FOV |
| | 15 NM or less | PFD in Wide FOV |
| | 8.5 NM or greater | Not depicted on the ND |
| | 8.5 NM or less | As described below |
| **Vertical Criteria** | More than 2000’ below aircraft | Not depicted on the ND |
| | Within 2000’ but more than 500’ below aircraft | Depicted in amber |
| | Within 500’ but below aircraft | Depicted in light red |
| | At or above aircraft altitude | Depicted in deep red |

Terrain and obstruction rendering is pilot-selectable to declutter the display by deselecting terrain (*independent declutter of obstructions is not possible*). Furthermore, terrain and obstruction rendering is disabled when:

1) The GPS/SBAS sensor is failed; OR

2) When the ADC is failed; OR

3) When the horizontal figure of merit exceeds the greater of 0.3NM or the horizontal alarm limit for the mode of flight.

**NOTE:**

See Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System for obstructions causing TAWS alarms and depiction of separate symbology.

### 3.4.11. Pan Mode

The ND screen has a pan mode for changing the location of the center of the screen away from current location and viewing map details along the route of flight and at the intended or alternate destination while either in flight or on the ground. When pan mode is active, use labeled buttons to pan location north, south, east, and west in a north-up, centered orientation. Upon entering pan mode, the heading pointer, track pointer, lubber line, waypoint pointer, analog navigation symbology, and field of view lines are removed from the display.

Figure 3-81 shows the line with bearing and distance from the map center to the aircraft's current position in white when the aircraft is more than 0.5 NM away. When panning, the nearest displayed airport, VOR, NDB, or fix within the inner range ring is highlighted with a flashing circle. Buttons are labeled to allow for viewing or hiding waypoint information (including datalink weather information associated with that point). When exiting pan mode, all previous settings are restored as before pan mode was enabled.


**Figure 3-81: Pan Mode**

### 3.4.12. Start Point

Activation of **NRST** or Direct-To function creates and activates a flight plan from the present position to the selected waypoint. A waypoint named "START" is placed at the current aircraft location when the flight plan is created.

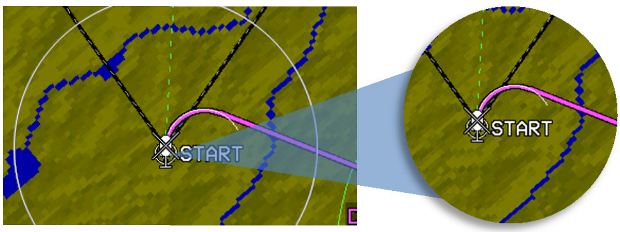
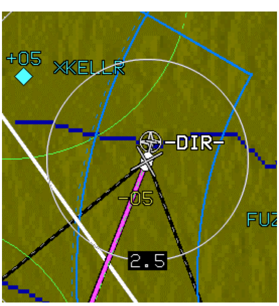



**Figure 3-82: Start Point**

### 3.4.13. Direct Point

Unnamed waypoints appear depending upon the procedure loaded when a direct-to command is entered. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for more information.




**-ALT-** altitude terminations

**-DIR-** waypoints that begin a Direct-To leg

**-DME-** distance or DME terminations

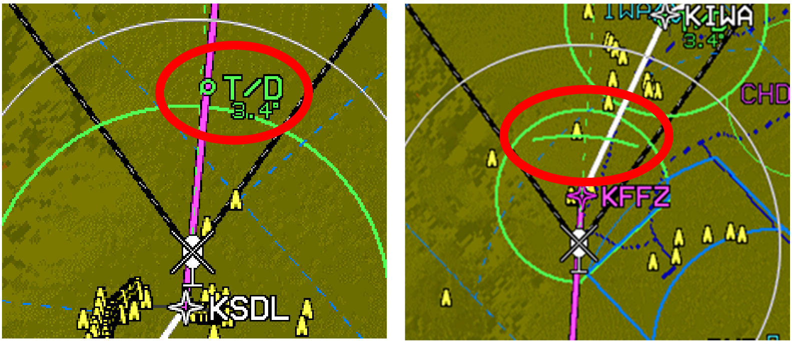
**-INT-** intercept terminations

**-RAD-** radial terminations

**Figure 3-83: Direct Point**

### 3.4.14. Altitude Capture Predictor/Top of Descent

When a selected altitude or VNAV is specified on the PFD, "T/D" marks correct point on the flight plan path at which descent must be commenced and contains location on the flight plan path with indication of the glidepath angle used to calculate position. After passing top of descent along the lubber line, altitude is captured and shown as a green arc located ahead of the aircraft. The arc marks the bottom-of-descent or top-of-climb point.




**Top of Descent** **Top of Climb**

**Figure 3-84: Top of Descent or Top-of-Climb**

### 3.4.15. Projected Path

When the aircraft is in a bank angle, a projected path emanates from the ownship symbol. This curving path is based upon aircraft bank angle and groundspeed as it projects one minute into the future up to a maximum of 180° of turn. The projected path or "noodle" assists in course interception and making small adjustments to bank angle for proper roll out.

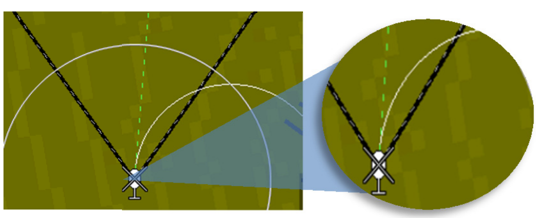


**Figure 3-85: Projected Path**

### 3.4.16. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown on the ND in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all the requirements of GPS/SBAS path definition and matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map). The fly-over waypoint symbol is distinct from fly-by waypoints and consists of the waypoint symbol within a circle. When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray dashed lines. Top of descent symbols with an indication of glidepath angle are shown where VNAV descents are predicted to commence.

When there is an active waypoint and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is manual, the manual course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint. The pointer matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

The ND displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol. Upon activation of a DP, VFR approach, IFR approach, or STAR procedure, the runways for the airport associated with the procedure are displayed. In addition, the runways associated with the three nearest airports (as computed by the TAWS algorithms) are displayed.

### 3.4.16.1. Parallel Track


**Figure 3-86: Parallel Track**

When there is an active flight plan and GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown on the ND in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. See Section 5 Menu Functions and Procedures for details on creating a parallel track.

### 3.4.16.2. Active Flight Plan Path

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

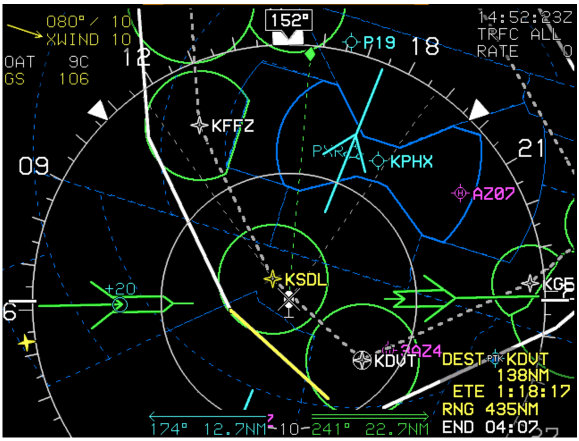
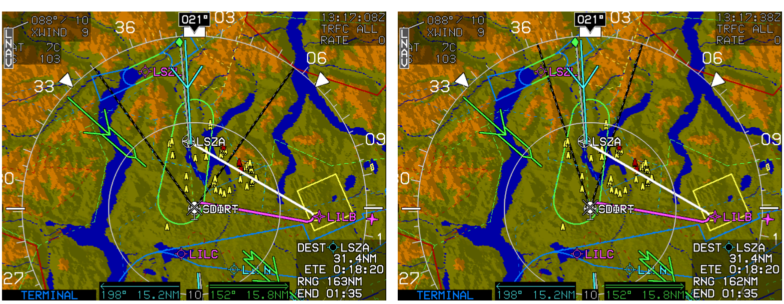



Figure 3-87: Loss of Navigation

### 3.4.17. Field of View Indication




Normal FOV (Zoom Off) Narrow FOV (Zoom On)

Figure 3-88: Field of View

The ND background indicates the ND FOV with a set of segmented gray lines leading out from the ownship symbol in either 35° or 70° angles depending on the zoom mode setting on the PFD.

### 3.4.18. Range

The white range ring is centered on the aircraft's position to quickly estimate distances. Distance (in NM) from the aircraft to the ring is a white number overlaying the 6 o'clock position of the ring. The range ring is half the distance to the directional scale. Consequently, when the range ring shows a distance of 5NM, the directional scale is 10NM. Scroll ❶ to set the overall map scale ranges in NM to of the following values as appropriate:

0.5, 1, 2.5, 5, 10, 25, 100, and, 200.

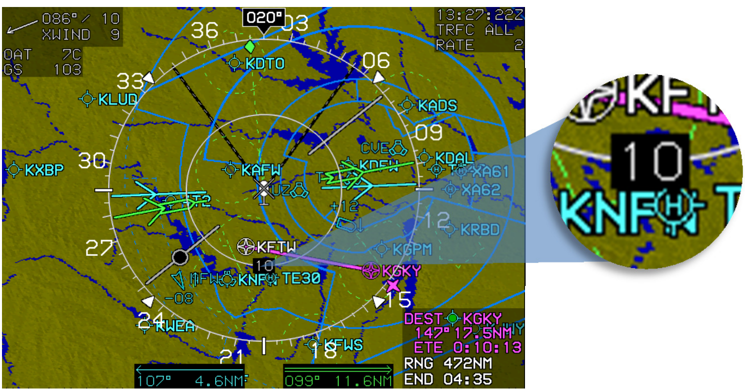



**Figure 3-89: Range**

## 3.5. HSI Screen

When the HSI screen is selected, the same ownship symbology is used as described for the ND, and the compass rose is always aligned with magnetic north. When the HSI NAV source fails, a red "X" is displayed in place of the HSI deviations.

The ownship symbol (Figure 3-64) is centered and points straight up on the HSI. The HSI has a compass rose aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input (if enabled upon installation). When the HSI NAV source fails (FMS, VOR1, or VOR2), a red "X" is displayed in place of the HSI deviations.

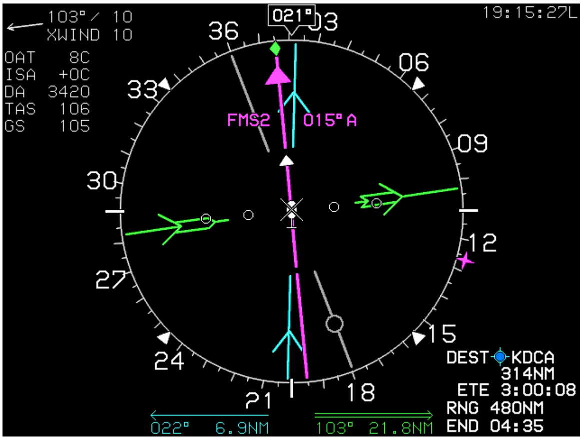



**Figure 3-90: HSI Screen**

A VDI appears, as in Figure 3-90, when the VDI source is valid to display vertical deviation information for the currently selected navigation source. When the selected vertical source is FMS, the VDI displayed on the HSI has the same behavior as the VDI displayed on the PFD with the exception of the VDI source displayed on the top of the VDI to avoid clutter with waypoint information below:

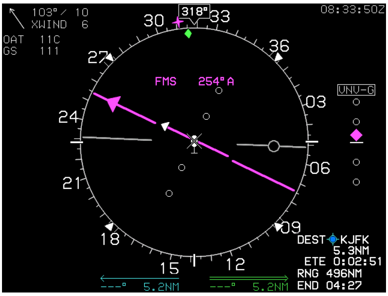
1) VNV1-B: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode.
2) VNV2-B: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode.
3) GS1: Glideslope #1
4) GS2: Glideslope #2

### 3.5.1. Conventional HSI/PTR Format

When selected, the ND displays conventional HSI symbology, including a selected course needle, a lateral deviation indicator, and a TO-FROM indicator. Navigation source indication and OBS setting are displayed in the top center of the HSI in the same color as the course needle. HSI pointer color is:

1) Magenta (if FMS is the selected navigation source);
2) Cyan (if VLOC1 is the selected navigation source);
3) Green (if VLOC2 is the selected navigation source); or

4) Yellow when HSI is slaved to GPS/SBAS and there is a GPS LON condition.




**Normal Magenta Pointer Color**


**GPS LON Condition Amber (Yellow) Pointer Color**

**Figure 3-91: HSI Pointer Color**

As seen in Figure 3-92, a green diamond-shaped track pointer appears on the compass rose and is aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth at groundspeeds greater than 30 kts. When selected, the VLOC1, with GS1 is displayed. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown.

When VOR1 and VOR2 pointers are selected for display, a bearing and distance display at the bottom of the ND appear. If bearing or distance is not valid, the respective field is filled with dashes.


**Figure 3-92: Conventional HSI/PTR Format: HSI with VDI and Glideslope**

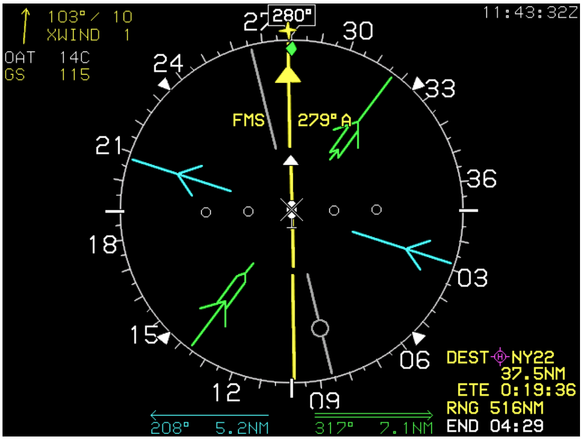



**Figure 3-93: Conventional HSI/PTR Format with Loss of Navigation Condition**

### 3.5.2. Analog Navigation Symbology

When selected, the HSI displays analog (VOR1 [cyan] and VOR2 [green]) navigation symbology with an RMI pointer format overlaid upon the HSI. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown. When the signal is valid for VOR1 and VOR2, a bearing and distance display for the selected VOR pointers appears at the bottom of the display in the same color of the respective pointer.

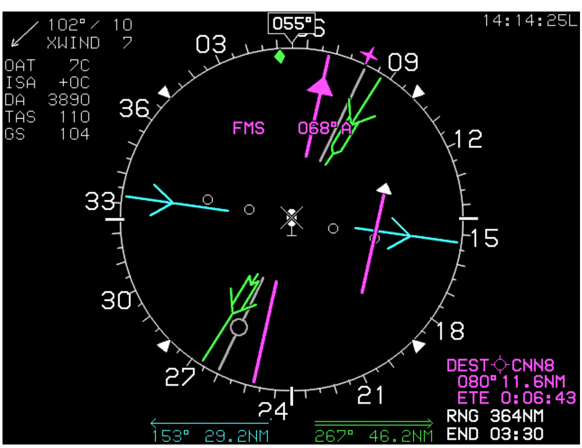



**Figure 3-94: Analog Navigation Display VOR1 and VOR2**

If a DME channel is in hold mode, the associated distance readout is displayed in amber (yellow) rather than blue or green, and "H" is shown above the distance readout.

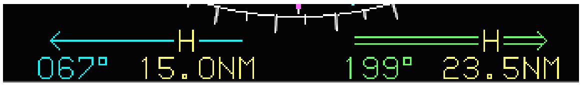



**Figure 3-95: HSI Bearing Distance Readout with DME in HOLD**

Valid marker beacon discretes are displayed on the PFD and ND HSI with appropriate coloring markings. Only during a built-in-test, more than one marker beacon may be active. Marker beacons are disabled when the NAV source is FMS.

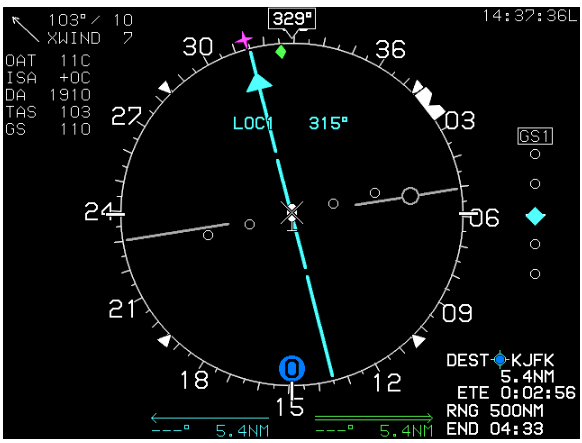



**Figure 3-96: HSI with Marker Beacon Displayed**

## 3.5.3. Compass Rose Symbols

When selected, a digital heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ship symbol appear on the compass rose boundary circle.


**Normal Mode**


**True North Mode**

**Figure 3-97: Compass Rose**

If referenced to magnetic north, the heading readout uses the degree (°) symbol. Otherwise, a stylized true north ($^{T}$) symbol is used. A green diamond-shaped track pointer is aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth appears on the compass rose when groundspeed is greater than 30 kts. The pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacts with the heading pointer on the compass rose. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer is displayed on the heading scale at a point corresponding with the active waypoint but turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

**NOTE:**

See Section 7 IFR Procedures for description of the following heading modes with the AHRS and EFIS:

1) ADAHRS Slaved—EFIS Magnetic North
2) ADAHRS Slaved—EFIS True North
3) ADAHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS Magnetic North
4) ADAHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS True North

### 3.5.4. Air Data and Groundspeed

Air data and groundspeed are displayed as specified in § 3.4.5.

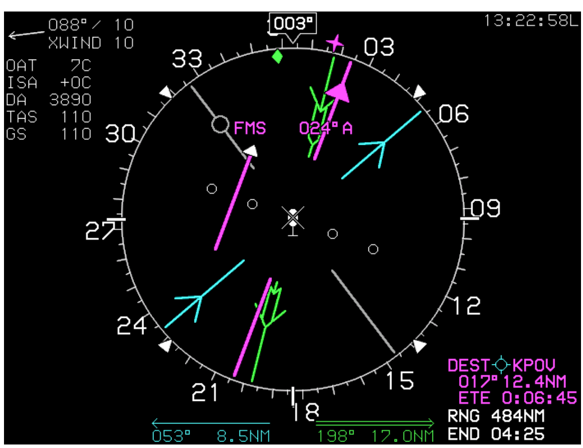



**Figure 3-98: HSI Display Air Data and Groundspeed**

### 3.5.5. Clock/Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the HSI:

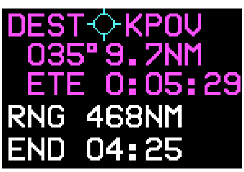

**Zulu Time**


**Local Offset Time**

**Figure 3-99: HSI Clock**

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time**: As specified in § 3.4.4
2) **Traffic**: If configured as specified in Traffic Appendix.
3) **Datalink**: If configured as specified in Datalink Appendix.
4) **Weather Radar**: If configured Weather Radar Appendix.

### 3.5.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions

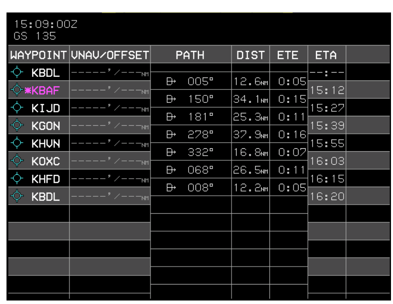



Fuel totalizer, waypoint bearing, and waypoint distance are displayed in the lower right corner of the HSI as specified in § 3.4.6.

**Figure 3-100: HSI Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing**

## 3.6. Navigation Log


**With Fuel Enabled**




**Without Fuel Enabled**

**Figure 3-101: Navigation Log**

### 3.6.1. Clock and Groundspeed

The following are displayed in the upper left corner of the NAV Log:

1) **Zulu or LCL Time**: As specified in § 3.4.4.
2) **Groundspeed**: Displayed digitally in knots

### 3.6.2. Fuel Remaining and Fuel Flow Data

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the NAV Log:

**Fuel Remaining**: If either fuel level or fuel flow is available, current fuel remaining is displayed digitally in fuel units.

**Fuel Flow**: If fuel flow is available, current total fuel flow is displayed digitally in fuel units.

### 3.6.3. Waypoint Identifier Column

The identifier for each waypoint of the active flight plan is displayed in the left-most column of the NAV Log. The active waypoint, indicated with an asterisk, is magenta but turns amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. Brackets indicate suppressed waypoints. Navigation data symbols are shown with the waypoint identifier for the pilot to easily distinguish the waypoint type

When a waypoint is part of a procedure or parallel offset, the following legends are drawn on top of the navigation data symbol:

1) **FAF** = Waypoint is a final approach fix
2) **MAP** = Waypoint is a missed approach point
3) **MA** = Waypoint is part of the missed approach segment of an instrument approach procedure.
4) **APP** = Waypoint is part of an instrument approach procedure, but is not a final approach fix, missed approach point, or part of the missed approach segment.
5) **VFR** = Waypoint is part of a VFR approach.
6) **STAR** = Waypoint is part of a standard terminal arrival procedure.
7) **DP** = Waypoint is part of a departure procedure.

8) **PTK** = Parallel offset. In case of a STAR or DP waypoint subject to a parallel offset, both STAR/DP and PTK are shown.

### 3.6.4. VNAV and VNAV Offset Column

VNAV altitude and associated VNAV offset (in NM) are displayed immediately to the right of the Waypoint Identifier column. In the case of an approach with a final approach segment data block, the VNAV offset readout associated with the missed approach point is "GPI" to designate distance to the glidepath intercept point. VNAV altitudes and offsets from the navigation database or manually entered are shown in white. VNAV altitudes and offsets computed automatically are shown in gray. VNAV and VNAV Offset column elements align with Waypoint Identifier column elements to indicate the VNAV information applies to the associated waypoint.

### 3.6.5. Path Column

LNAV path between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the VNAV and VNAV Offset column. The following are displayed:

1) Geodetic path between waypoints is displayed with  **(R4)**, followed by the initial geodetic course for the leg.
2) Discontinuities (i.e., a leg where FMS is unable to compute a valid path) are shown with the legend -**DISCONT**-.
3) Procedure turns are shown with a pictorial representation of a procedure turn (either left or right turns) as well as the entry and exit course for the procedure turn.
4) Holding patterns are shown with a pictorial representation of a holding pattern (either left or right turns) as well as the inbound course for the holding pattern.
5) Arcs are shown with a pictorial representation of an arc (either left or right turns) as well as the entry and exit radials for the arc.
6) An altitude termination leg is shown by the initial geodetic course for the leg followed by the altitude at which the leg terminates.

Path column elements are offset from Waypoint Identifier column elements to indicate that the path information applies to the leg between waypoints.

### 3.6.6. Distance Column

Distance between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the Path column and is calculated taking into account the associated path as well as parallel offsets. In the case of a discontinuity, the distance between waypoints is the direct geodetic distance between the two waypoints. Distance column elements are offset from Waypoint Identifier column elements to indicate the distance information applied to the leg between waypoints.

### 3.6.7. Estimated Time Enroute Column

ETE between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the Distance column and is calculated taking into account the associated distance between waypoints and current groundspeed. ETE column elements are offset from Waypoint Identifier column elements to indicate ETE information applied to the leg between waypoints.

### 3.6.8. Estimated Time of Arrival Column

ETA at the active waypoint and all subsequent waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the ETE column. ETA at the active waypoint is calculated taking into account the associated time remaining on the active leg and current time. ETA at subsequent waypoints is calculated taking into account the cumulative ETEs and current time. ETA column elements align with Waypoint Identifier column elements to indicate ETA information applies to the associated waypoint.

### 3.6.9. Fuel Remaining Column

Fuel remaining at the active waypoint and all subsequent waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the ETA column. Fuel remaining at the active waypoint is calculated taking into account the associated time remaining on the active leg, current fuel flow, and current fuel quantity. Fuel remaining at subsequent waypoints is calculated taking into account the cumulative ETEs, current fuel flow, and current fuel quantity. Fuel Remaining column elements align with Waypoint Identifier column elements to indicate the fuel remaining information applies to the associated waypoint.

**NOTE:**

Since a suppressed waypoint is not part of the active flight plan, dashes appear in the absence of the following VNAV data associated with a suppressed waypoint:

1) Path data (dashes)
2) Distance data (dashes)
3) ETE data (dashes)
4) ETA data (dashes)
5) Fuel remaining data (dashes)

## 3.7. Hover Screen

The hover screen has the following elements. Hover screen ownship symbology is as in Figure 3-64.

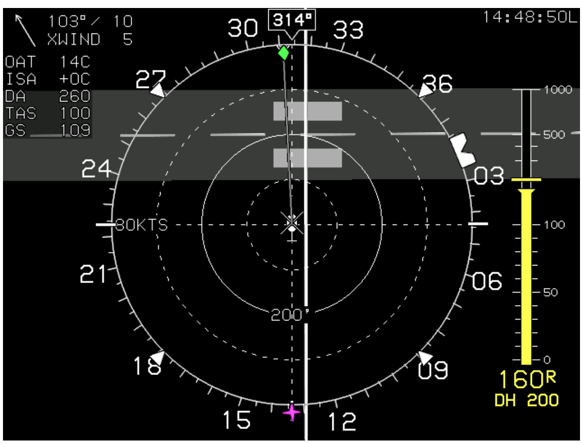



**Figure 3-102: Hover Screen Orientation**

### 3.7.1. Hover Screen Range

The following selectable hover screen ranges are available (all distances are from the ownship symbol to the compass rose): 400', 800', 1,600', 0.5NM, 1NM, 2NM, and 5NM. Two range rings (one at half the radius of the compass rose) centered upon the ownship symbol aids in judging range to displayed symbols. Range indication corresponding to the radius of the range ring is presented on the range ring (200', 400', 800', 0.25NM, 0.5NM, 1NM, and 2.5NM).

### 3.7.2. Hover Vector

The hover vector is used to indicate flight direction and groundspeed and re-uses the compass rose and range ring as speed scales. In addition, two intermediate speed scales (the first between the ownship symbol and the range ring, the second between the range ring and the compass rose) are drawn using dashed lines. The speed range for the hover vector indication changes based upon current groundspeed. Available speed ranges are (all speeds represent the speed indicated at the compass rose): 20 kts, 40 kts, and 80 kts with the currently selected speed range textually displayed adjacent to the compass rose. Changes in speed range employ a deadband to prevent flicker at speed range boundaries.

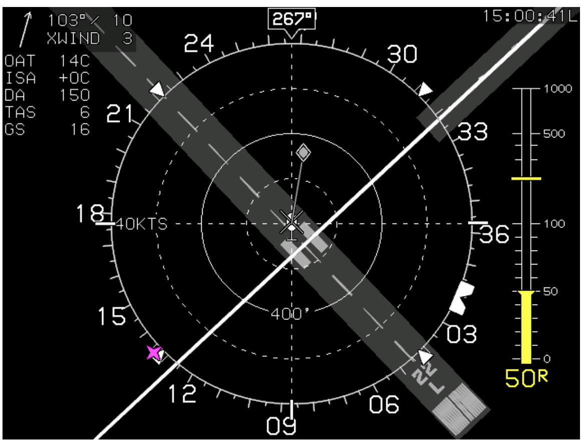



**Figure 3-103: Hover Vector Symbology**

The ownship symbol indicates 0 knots groundspeed and a dot connected to the ownship symbol by a gray line floating over the hover screen to indicate flight direction and groundspeed. Deviation of the dot in a straight up direction (12 o'clock position) indicates forward flight while straight down (6 o'clock position) indicates rearward flight. Deviation of the dot laterally indicates lateral drift. Movement of the dot is constrained to less than five knots per second to prevent jumpiness. The hover vector line and dot are limited and cropped at the outer circle of the hover screen.

### 3.7.3. Compass Rose Symbols

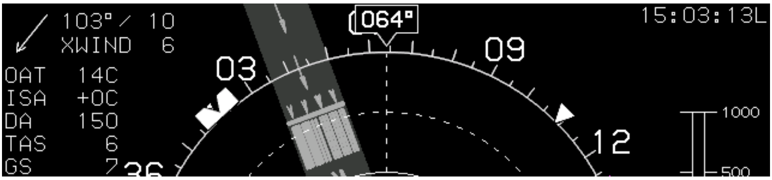



**Figure 3-104: Hover Vector Compass Rose**

A digital magnetic heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the compass rose boundary circle. A green diamond-shaped track pointer aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth appears on the compass rose when groundspeed is greater than or equal to 30 knots. A pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the compass rose. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer is displayed on the heading scale at a point corresponding with the active waypoint, which turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

### 3.7.4. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course

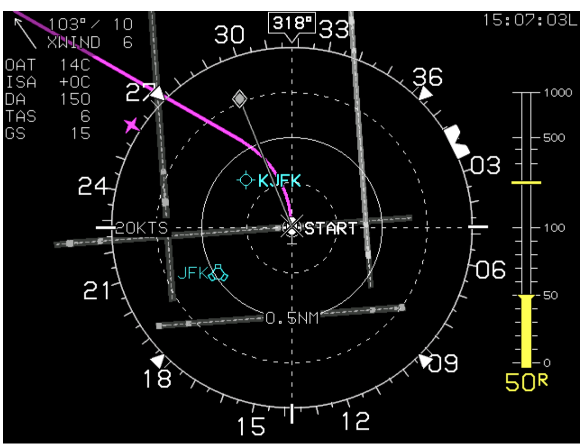



**Figure 3-105: Hover Vector Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course**

When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown on the hover screen in its correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path meets all the requirements of GPS/SBAS path definition and matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map). Active flight plan path waypoints are shown as fly-over or fly-by waypoints with the fly-over waypoint consisting of a waypoint symbol within a circle. The fly-by waypoint consists of a waypoint symbol without the circle.

When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray lines.

When there is an active waypoint and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is manual, the manual course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint. The pointer matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

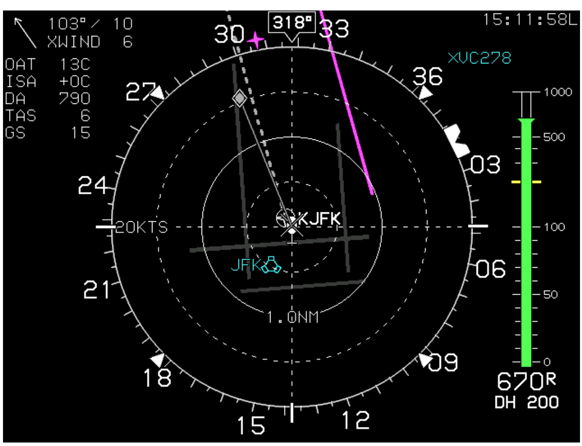



**Figure 3-106: Hover Vector Active Flight Plan Path/Parallel Course**

### 3.7.5. Navigation Data

The hover screen displays navigation data in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. Navigation data symbols include airport symbols, VORs, NDBs, fixes, and user waypoints. The user waypoint symbol on the hover screen includes an outlining box sized so it cannot be obscured by the ownship symbol. The intent of this requirement is to allow the pilot to hover by reference to a user waypoint. These symbols cannot be decluttered from the Hover Vector screen since there is no **FORMAT..** menu option.

The hover screen displays airport runways and some heliports in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol. Immediately upon a system startup on the ground, the runways for the nearest airport are displayed. Upon activation of a DP, VFR approach, IFR approach, or STAR procedure, the runways for the airport associated with the procedure are displayed. In addition, the runways associated with the three nearest airports are also displayed. Runways are shown in dark gray according to characteristics contained in the navigation database, including position, orientation, length, and width. The landing portion of the selected runway, taking into account displaced threshold data, are shown in light gray.

### 3.7.6. Projected Path

When the aircraft is in a bank angle, a projected path emanates from the ownship symbol. The projected path is based upon aircraft bank angle and groundspeed and projects one minute into the future up to a maximum of 180° of turn.

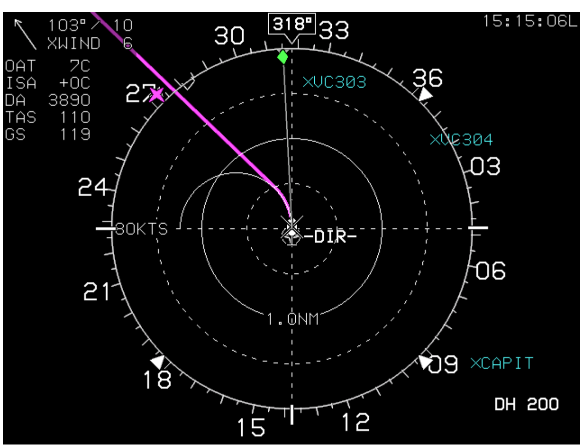



**Figure 3-107: Hover Vector Projected Path**

### 3.7.7. Air Data and Groundspeed

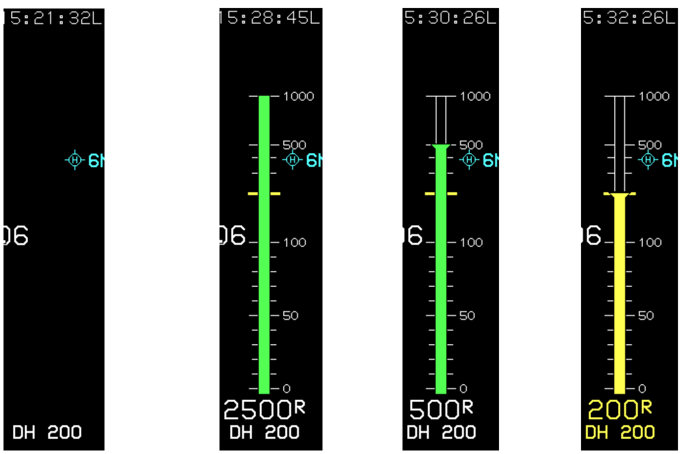
Displayed as specified in § 3.4.5.

### 3.7.8. Clock

Displayed as specified in § 3.4.4.

### 3.7.9. AGL Indication

AGL altitude is displayed as an analog indication and digital readout on the right side of the hover screen, which is driven by whatever AGL altitude source being used as defined in § 3.3.3.




**Above 2,500' AGL** **2,500' AGL** **500' AGL** **200' AGL**

**Figure 3-108: Hover Vector AGL Indication**

Digital readout of AGL altitude is not displayed when it is greater than the radar altimeter maximum valid altitude nor when it is invalid. The digital readout of AGL altitude is not displayed when its source is barometric and indicated airspeed is in the noise range (less than 20 KIAS) due to rotor wash effects. When AGL altitude source is radar altitude, the digital readout of AGL indication is smoothed to avoid jumpiness (as specified in Table 3-2).

| Table 3-18: Analog AGL Indication Designed Parameters | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Range of Altitude** | **Markings** | **Notes** |
| 0-1000’ | Green-filled column | Thermometer fashioned style. Top of the column has a widened area for better registration against the scale accordingly, so the widened area disappears at AGL altitudes greater than 1,000 feet (i.e., maximum analog indication). |
| **Scaling** | | |
| 0 to 100’ | Linear | 0’ AGL is at the bottom, 50’ AGL is at 25% of height, 100’ AGL is at 50% of height, 200’ AGL is at 67% of height, 500’ AGL is at 83% of height, and 1,000’ AGL is at full height |
| 100’-1,000’ | Logarithmic | |
| **Major Tick Marks** | | |
| 0’, 50’, 100’, 500’, and 1,000’ | | |
| **Minor Tick Marks** | | |
| 10’, 20’, 30’, 40’, 60’, 70’, 80’, 90’, 200’, 300’, and 400’ | | |
| Color-filled column is not displayed when AGL altitude is invalid. Analog indication of AGL altitude (including the scale) is not displayed, when its source is barometric and indicated airspeed is in the noise range (less than 20 KIAS) due to rotor wash effects. | | |

### 3.7.10. Decision Height Indication

AGL indication includes a display of the set decision height altitude as described in § 3.3.5.

# Section 4 Reversionary Modes

## 4.1. Reversionary Modes

The equipment has eight reversionary modes as follows:

Mode 0: GPS/SBAS, ADC, and AHRS normal.

Mode 1: GPS/SBAS failed; ADC and AHRS normal.

Mode 2: ADC failed; GPS/SBAS, and AHRS normal.

Mode 3: AHRS failed; GPS/SBAS, and ADC normal.

Mode 4: GPS/SBAS and ADC failed; and AHRS normal.

Mode 5: GPS/SBAS and AHRS failed; and ADC normal.

Mode 6: ADC and AHRS failed; and GPS/SBAS normal.

Mode 7: GPS, ADC, and AHRS failed.

To use this section, review the following table and notes to determine what feature or function is affected by one or more of the three sensors failed conditions. Examples follow with the IDU-450 displays in various configurations with a table breaking down the affected functions.

Not all possible IDU-450 display configurations and format combinations are represented here. All eight modes of system operation are represented for description purposes.

**Table 4-1: Reversionary Mode Status (PFD)**

| PFD Functions | Mode | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** | **4** | **5** | **6** | **7** |
| Airspeed | OK | OK | 19 | OK | 19 | OK | 19 | 19 |
| Altimeter | OK | OK | 19 | OK | 19 | OK | 19 | 19 |
| Altimeter Set Display | OK | OK | - | OK | - | OK | - | - |
| Bank Scale | OK | OK | OK | - | OK | - | - | - |
| CDI | OK | 1 + 20 | OK | OK | 20 | 20 | OK | 20 |
| Runway | OK | 1 | 25 | - | - | - | - | - |
| Waypoint Pointer | 7 | 1 | 7 | 7 | - | - | 7 | - |
| Heading Scale | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | - | 7 | - |
| AGL Ind. | OK | 2 | 4 | OK | 11 | 11 | 4 | - |
| Flight Path Marker | OK | 1 + 14 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Hover Vector | OK | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Ground Track | 7 | 1 | 7 | 7 | - | - | 7 | - |
| Heading Indicator | 7 | 7 | 7 | - | 7 | - | - | - |
| Horizon | OK | OK | OK | - | OK | - | - | - |
| Mini-Map | 7 | 1 | 7 | 7 | - | - | 7 | - |
| Pitch Scale | OK | OK | OK | - | OK | - | - | - |
| Highway in the Sky | OK | 1 + 15 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Terrain/Obstructions | OK | - | 25 | - | - | - | - | - |
| Clock Functions | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK |
| VSI | OK | OK | - | OK | - | OK | - | - |
| Waterline Symbol | 22 | 22 | 5 | 13 | 5 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| Waypoint Symbol | OK | 1 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Waypoint Brg/Dist | OK | 1 | OK | OK | - | - | OK | - |
| Traffic | OK | OK | OK | - | - | - | - | - |
| Traffic Thumbnail | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK |
| Speed Trend | OK | OK | - | - | - | - | - | - |

| Table 4-2: Reversionary Mode Status (ND) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **ND Functions** | **Mode** | | | | | | | |
| | **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** | **4** | **5** | **6** | **7** |
| Aircraft Position | OK | 1 | OK | OK | - | - | OK | - |
| Special Use Airspace | 9 | 1 | 6 | 9 | - | - | 6 + 9 | - |
| Waypoint Pointer | 9 | 1 | 9 | 9 | - | - | 9 | - |
| Active Flight Plan Path | 9 | 1 | 9 | 9 | - | - | 9 | - |
| Groundspeed | OK | 1 | OK | OK | - | - | OK | - |
| Ground Track | 9 | 1 | 9 | 9 | - | - | 9 | - |
| Heading Indicator | 9 | 9 | 9 | - | 9 | - | - | - |
| Navigation Symbols | 9 | 1 | 9 | 9 | - | - | 9 | - |
| Outside Air Temp. | OK | OK | - | OK | - | OK | - | - |
| Projected Path | OK | 1 | OK | - | - | - | - | - |
| Traffic | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK |
| Terrain/Obstructions | OK | - | 25 | OK | - | - | 25 +9 | - |
| Clock Functions | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK |
| Waypoint Brg./Dist. | OK | 1 | OK | OK | - | - | OK | - |
| Wind | 21 | 3 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| WX-500 Data | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK | OK |
| Compass Rose | 9 | 9 | 9 | 9 | 9 | - | 9 | - |
| Fuel Totalizer Functions | 23 | 24 | 23 | 23 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| True Airspeed | OK | OK | - | OK | - | OK | - | - |
| Density Altitude | OK | OK | - | OK | - | OK | - | - |
| OAT/ISA Display | OK | OK | - | OK | - | OK | - | - |

| Table 4-3: Reversionary Mode Status (Output Functions) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Output Functions** | **Mode** | | | | | | | |
| | **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** | **4** | **5** | **6** | **7** |
| Air/Ground Output | 16 | 16 | 17 | 16 | 17 | 16 | 17 | 17 |
| Autopilot EFIS Valid | 16 | 16 | 16 | - | - | - | - | - |
| TAWS Alarm Output | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 |
| TCAS-II RA Display Valid | 16 | 16 | - | 16 | - | 16 | - | - |
| TCAS-II TA Display Valid | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 |
| Transmit Enabled | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 |
| Warning Light Output | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 |
| Caution Light Output | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 |
| Mstr. Caut. Light Output | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 |
| MDA/DH Output | 16 | 16 | 18 | 16 | 18 | 16 | 18 | 18 |
| Altitude Capture Output | 16 | 16 | - | 16 | - | 16 | - | - |
| IAS Switch Output | 16 | 16 | - | 16 | - | 16 | - | - |

Note 1: Presented using inertial dead-reckoning based on last known wind information. If unable to dead-reckon (e.g., heading is failed or true airspeed cannot be calculated), function is disabled.

Note 2: Only radar altitude presented when available.

Note 3: Last known wind is saved during GPS/SBAS failure.

Note 4: Either radar altitude or geodetic altitude less database elevation.

Note 5: Waterline symbol expanded to large attitude bars. Rotorcraft versions (Part 27 or Part 29 airspeed scale), use full-time large attitude bars and do not show the waterline symbol.

Note 6: Special use airspace boundaries are drawn with bold lines due to lack of aircraft altitude data.

Note 7: In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode, heading scale aligned with aircraft track and heading indication is removed. In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode combined with GPS failure, heading scale is replaced with a red-X.

Note 9: In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode, compass rose aligned with aircraft track and heading indication is removed when in heading up mode. In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode combined with GPS failure, compass rose is removed.

Note 10: Presents using last-known wind information and aligned with aircraft track in heading up mode.

Note 11: Only radar altitude presented when available.

Note 12: Assuming valid fuel flow information, endurance is presented.

Note 13: Large attitude bars presented and X'd out.

Note 14: Flight path marker grayed after 1 minute to indicate degraded operation.

Note 15: Highway in the Sky removed after 1 minute.

Note 16: See IDU SCC Card and Limits Requirements for activation requirements.

Note 17: Defaults to AIR unless Weight on Wheel/Weight on Ground discrete input is active.

Note 18: Only DH function (with valid AGL altitude) in this mode.

Note 19: Red-X in place of scale.

Note 20: VLOC CDI always available if optional VOR symbology enabled.

Note 21: Function removed during heading-only failure mode.

Note 22: Rotorcraft versions (Part 27 or Part 29 airspeed scale), use full-time large attitude bars and do not show the waterline symbol.

Note 23: Assuming valid fuel flow information, both range and endurance are presented.

Note 24: Assuming valid fuel flow information, both range and endurance are presented using inertial dead-reckoning based on last known wind information. If the pilot is unable to dead-reckon due to loss of heading or true airspeed cannot be calculated, endurance only information is presented.

Note 25: Inhibited in accordance with the conditions specified in TAWS automatic inhibit function (abnormal operation).

### 4.1.1. Oat Sensor Failure Mode

In addition, the equipment has an OAT sensor failure mode. With the OAT sensor failed, the display of wind, OAT, density altitude, and true airspeed on the ND are disabled.

### 4.1.2. Heading Failure Mode

In addition, the equipment has a heading failure mode. With heading failed, the PFD heading scale and MFD compass rose align with track (if available) or are removed and replaced with a red-X.


In this failure mode, the PFD heading scale includes "GPS TRK" around the track marker to clearly delineate the failure mode.

**Figure 4-1: GPS TRK**

### 4.1.3. PFD Screen Auto Reversion

For IFR approval in aircraft, flight instrument information essential to safety of flight remains available to the pilot without additional crewmember action after a failure. To accommodate this, MFDs must have the ability to sense when the PFD has failed and take over the PFD function automatically. The manner in which this occurs on the IDU-450 is as follows:

When an MFD (IDU #2, 3, or 4) becomes the transmit-enabled IDU, the MFD automatically switches to the PFD screen. Push ❶ to change the MFD to other screens after the automatic switch.

### 4.1.4. GPS Failure

GPS degrades or fails as a result of loss of satellite information, or GPS equipment failure. When SBAS provides the integrity, the EFIS provides a loss of integrity (LOI) caution within two seconds, if the current horizontal protection level (HPL) exceeds the horizontal alert level (HAL). The LOI caution appears when there is no integrity monitoring and disappears when it is restored.


**Figure 4-2: LOI Caution**

Further GPS degradation causes the EFIS to lose GPS updating of aircraft position, ground speed, and ground track, and the ability to calculate the wind information.

1) 

(Loss of Integrity) displayed with no time delay.

2) HPL > HAL for the phase of flight currently in. Position is still presented based upon a GPS navigation solution.

3) 

(Loss of Navigation) displayed with no time delay of the onset of the following:

a) The absence of power;

b) Equipment malfunction or failure;

c) The presence of a condition lasting five seconds or more where there are an inadequate number of satellites to compute position solution;

d) Fault detects a position failure that cannot be excluded within time-to-alert when integrity is provided by FDE;

e) HPL > HAL on the final approach segment: Genesys Aerosystems EFIS does not transition to DR navigation at this stage. A GPS navigation solution is still presented; and

f) Where HPL > HAL on the final approach segment, this position may still be satisfactory for GPS navigation. For example, an HPL of 0.31NM exists, which means as soon as a transition to terminal mode occurs, all alerts would disappear. This is significantly important during a wind change if the system had been in a DR mode.

**NOTE:**

At any time, view HFOM on the FAULTS page to see the system-reported accuracy.

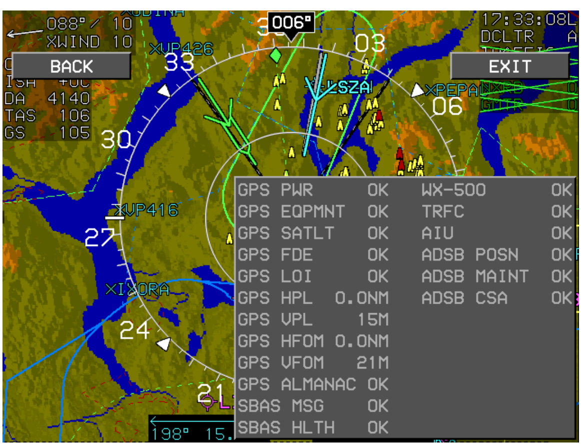



**Figure 4-3: FAULTS Page on MFD**

1) **DR** (Dead Reckoning)

a) If a GPS position cannot be calculated, a dead reckoning solution is provided with a timer 

. This solution is calculated from heading and TAS derived from the AHRS and ADC.

2) **Loss of Vertical Navigation**


**Figure 4-4: Loss of Vertical Navigation (VLON)**

If the navigation equipment is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the LNAV/VNAV approach, “VLON” appears within one second of the onset of any of the following conditions:

a) The absence of power;

b) Equipment malfunction or failure;

c) The presence of a condition where fault detection detects a position failure that cannot be excluded;

d) There are an insufficient number of SBAS HEALTY satellites;

e) The horizontal protection level exceeds the alert limit as follows for LNAV/VNAV approaches:

i) Prior to sequencing the FAWP- HAL should be 0.3 NM with no limit on VAL

ii) After sequencing the FAWP- HAL 556m (0.3NM) and VAL 50m

When in LNAV mode, the fault detection function detects positioning failures within 10 seconds after the onset of the positioning failure.

## 4.2. PFD and MFD Failure Mode Examples

GPS failure results in the EFIS operating in “dead reckoning” mode. The EFIS continues to provide navigational position, groundspeed, and ground track information, based upon the last known wind, current air data, and heading. The PFD and MFD are affected as follows.

## 4.3. PFD Failure Mode 0

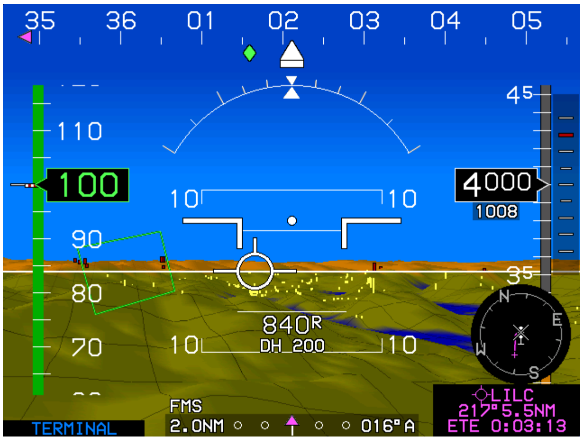



**Figure 4-5: PFD Failure Mode 0**
**GPS, ADC, and AHRS Normal**

### 4.3.1. MFD Failure Mode 0 (Normal Mode)


**Figure 4-6: MFD Failure Mode 0 (Normal Mode)**
**GPS, ADC, and AHRS Normal**

## 4.4. PFD Failure Mode 1

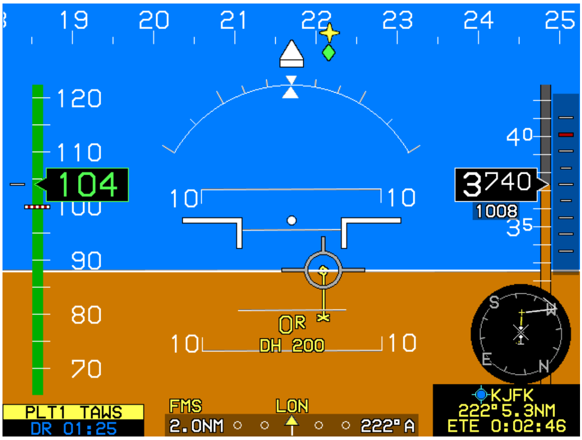



**Figure 4-7: PFD Failure Mode 1**
**GPS/SBAS Failed; ADC and AHRS Normal**

### 4.4.1. MFD Failure Mode 1

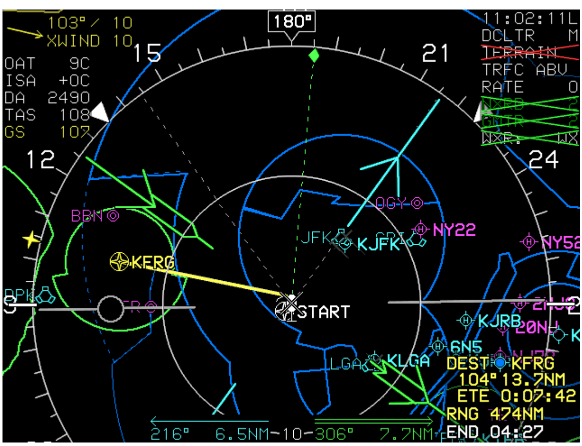



**Figure 4-8: MFD Failure Mode 1**
**GPS/SBAS Failed; ADC and AHRS Normal**

## 4.5. PFD Failure Mode 2 (Normal Mode)

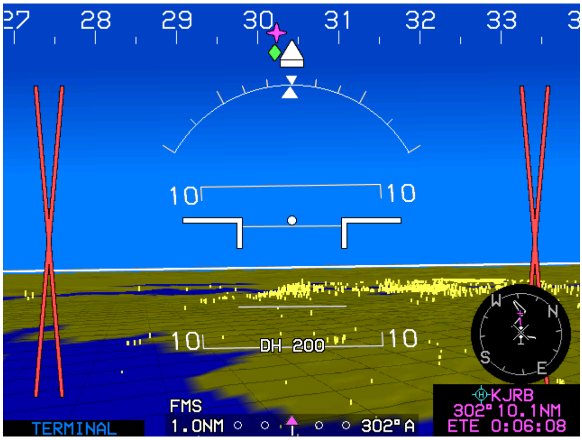



**Figure 4-9: PFD Failure Mode 2 (Normal Mode)**
**ADC Failed; GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal**

### 4.5.1. MFD Failure Mode 2


**Figure 4-10: MFD Failure Mode 2**
**ADC Failed; GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal**

## 4.6. PFD Failure Mode 3

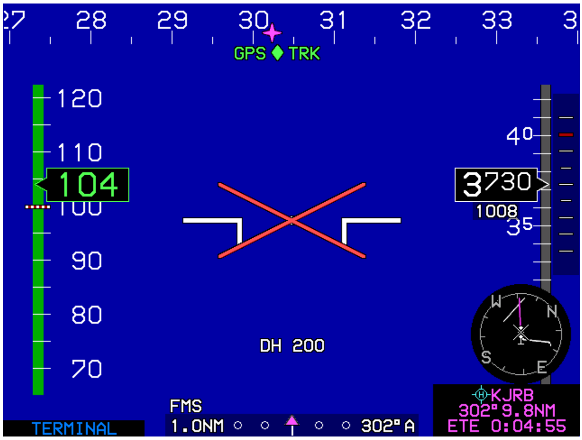



Figure 4-11: PFD Failure Mode 3
AHRS Failed; GPS/SBAS and ADC Normal

### 4.6.1. MFD Failure Mode 3

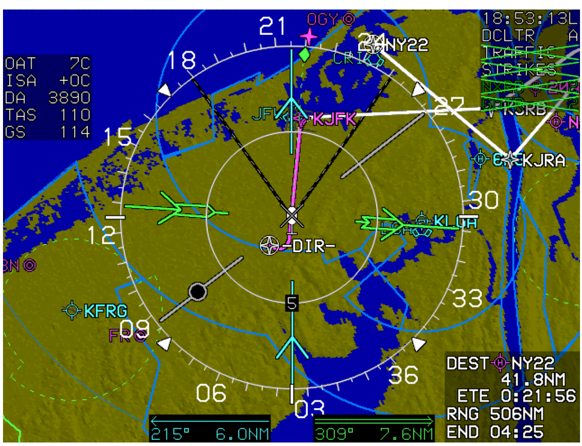



Figure 4-12: MFD Failure Mode 3
AHRS Failed; GPS/SBAS and ADC Normal

## 4.7. PFD Failure Mode 4

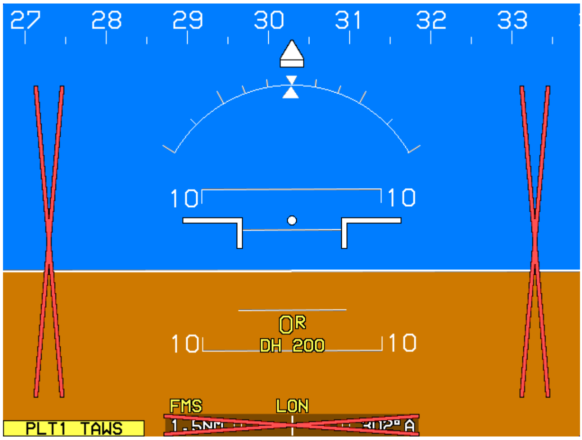



**Figure 4-13: PFD Failure Mode 4**
**GPS/SBAS and ADC Failed; AHRS Normal**

### 4.7.1. MFD Failure Mode 4

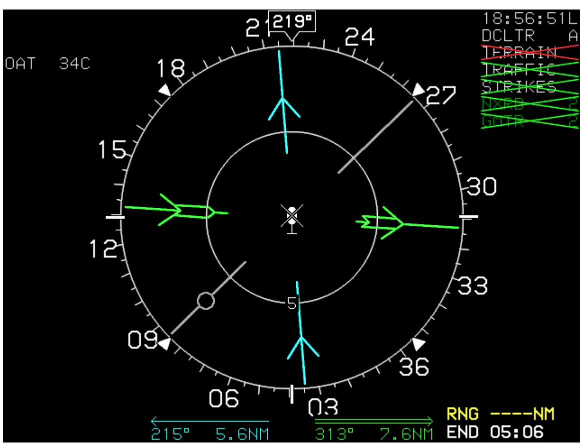



**Figure 4-14: MFD Failure Mode 4**
**GPS/SBAS and ADC Failed; AHRS Normal**

## 4.8. PFD Failure Mode 5

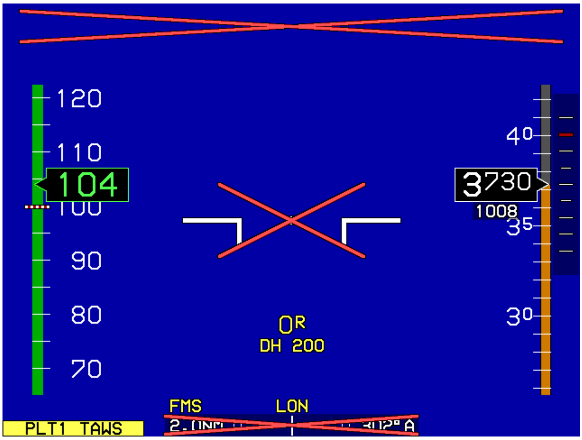



**Figure 4-15: PFD Failure Mode 5**
**GPS/SBAS and AHRS Failed; ADC Normal**

### 4.8.1. MFD Failure Mode 5


**Figure 4-16: MFD Failure Mode 5**
**GPS/SBAS and AHRS Failed; ADC Normal**

## 4.9. PFD Failure Mode 6


**Figure 4-17: PFD Failure Mode 6**
**ADC and AHRS Failed; GPS/SBAS Normal**

### 4.9.1. MFD Failure Mode 6

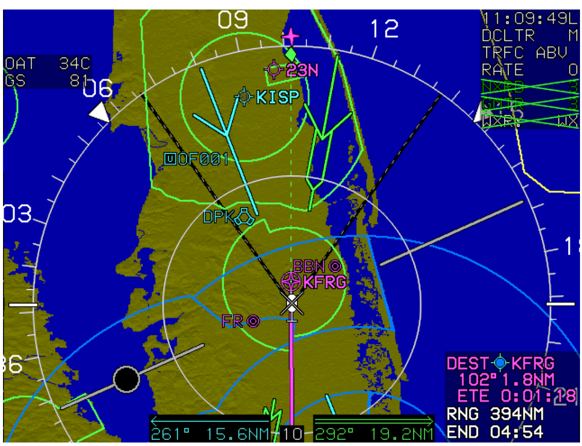



**Figure 4-18: MFD Failure Mode 6**
**ADC and AHRS Failed; GPS/SBAS Normal**

## 4.10. PFD Failure Mode 7

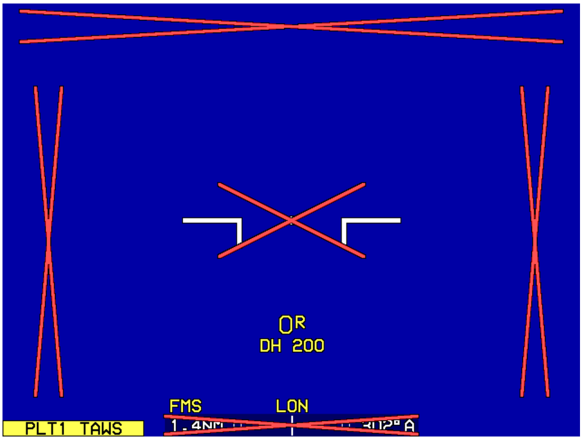



**Figure 4-19: PFD Failure Mode 7**
**GPS/SBAS, ADC, and AHRS Failed**

### 4.10.1. MFD Failure Mode 7

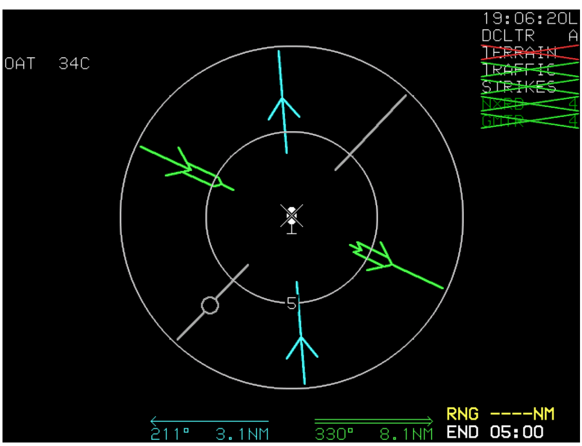



**Figure 4-20: MFD Failure Mode 7**
**GPS/SBAS, ADC, and AHRS Failed**

# Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures

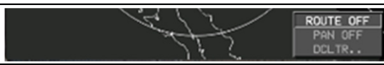
## 5.1. Menu Functions

The top-level menu level corresponds to the permanent labeling of the IDU pushbuttons and is active any time no soft menu options appear on the screen. Soft menu function tiles appear next to the appropriate IDU button and the right encoder (❶) when appropriate.

On the PFD, scroll ❶ to activate the heading menu. On MFD pages with an adjustable display (e.g., ND, Strike, Traffic, Datalink, Hover, Weather Radar, Video, or OASIS) scroll ❶ to change the display scale (CW = increase scale, CCW = decrease scale). On the video page, scroll ❶ to change the zoom level (CW = increase zoom, CCW = decrease zoom).

With the exception of IDU #1, push ❶ to swap between the PFD and MFD, unless the IDU is in MFD-only mode. IDU #1 is always configured to the PFD page.


**Figure 5-1: IDU-450 Input Controls**

| Table 5-1:Encoder Functions for All Pages | |
|---|---|
|  | **PFD page** |
|  | **MFD MAP page** |
|  | **MFD Video page** |
|  | **MFD Datalink page** |

### 5.1.1. Menu Philosophy

The menu system and buttons with an action are clearly labeled. The following rules are in the design of the menu system:


**EXIT (R1)**: Whenever menu system is beyond the top-level, provides a one-touch escape to the top-level.


**BACK (L1)**: Whenever soft menu level is deeper than the first-level, regresses through the menu system by one level.

**Soft menu tiles**: Used (even at the top-level) and are annunciated on the screen adjacent to the appropriate IDU button or encoder when appropriate.

**Selection list**: Menus adjacent to ❶ are frequently a selection list. Lists too long to be presented in the space available provide an indication of location within the list.



Within lists or on a soft menu tile, a two-dot trailer indicates further menu levels.

Menu messages are displayed for five seconds but are cleared if no IDU button is pressed or encoder pushed or scrolled.

**Figure 5-2: IDU-450 Input Controls**

### 5.1.2. Avoidance of Autonomous Behavior

**TAWS/HTAWS popups**: When an FLTA alert is generated, a popup function enables PFD SVS TAWS feature and activates terrain at an appropriate scale and format on the MFD moving map page. This is a required function of TSO-C194 for Enhanced HTAWS and is enabled in the other TAWS/HTAWS options integrated in the EFIS software. (See Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System for details.)

**Traffic popups**: When a traffic alert is generated, a popup function displays traffic on the PFD, traffic thumbnail and MFD moving map page.

## 5.2. Menu Synchronization

System settings changed by the menu system are synchronized between multiple IDUs in MFD-MFD mode. All parameters for rotorcraft are included. Each appendix for Datalink, Strikes, RBP, Traffic, Video, and Weather Radar contains specific limitations for menu synchronization for that feature.

**Table 5-2: Menu Synchronization**

| Menu Parameter | Notes |
|---|---|
| *The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence.* | |
| AHRS 1 and 2 mode and slewing values | |
| Fuel Totalizer Quantity | |
| VNAV Climb Angle | |
| Countdown Timer Start Time | |
| Countdown Timer Default Value | |
| Remote Tune Frequencies | |
| VNAV Descent Angle | |
| Decision Height Setting | Used when “Dual Decision Height Flag” as set in EFIS limits. |
| Emergency and Minimum Fuel Settings | |
| Heading Bug and Heading Sub-Mode | |
| Minimum Altitude Bug Value | |

| Table 5-2: Menu Synchronization | |
|---|---|
| **Menu Parameter** | **Notes** |
| VLOC OBS Settings | |
| Airspeed Bug Setting | |
| Target Altitude Bug Setting | |
| Timer Starting Signal | |
| Traffic Filter Setting | |
| True North Mode | |
| UTC Offset | |
| VSI Bug Setting | |
| Crosslink Synchronization Status | |
| *The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays when crosslink is enabled. Otherwise, they are only synchronized onside. These parameters are FMS parameters and allow the pilot and co-pilot FMSs to be operated independently when crosslink is inhibited.* | |
| Active Flight Plan Parameters | |
| Runway Display Parameters | |
| *The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference.* | |
| Sensor Selections | |
| Transition Altitude | |
| Barometric Setting Units | |
| Barometric Setting Value | |
| Barometric Setting Mode | |
| Decision Height Setting | Used when “Dual Decision Height Flag” as set in EFIS limits. |
| Navigation Source | |
| Horizon Synchronization Parameters | |
| PFD Basic Mode | |
| PFD Zoom Mode | |
| PFD Analog AGL | |
| PFD Full-time Bank Scale Flag | |
| PFD Flight Director Show Flag | |
| PFD Mini-map Show Flag | |

**Table 5-2: Menu Synchronization**

| **Menu Parameter** | **Notes** |
|---|---|
| PFD Altitude (meters) Show Flag | |
| PFD Traffic Thumbnail Show Flag | |
| PFD Traffic Show Flag | |
| PFD OASIS Overlay Show Flags | |
| PFD Skyway Show Flag | |
| PFD Terrain Show Flag | |
| Rate of Turn Indication flag | |
| *The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility. Note that some of these parameters are also independent between top and bottom MFD areas as specified in the notes.* | |
| CPU Type | To support mixed CPU Type installations |
| DVI Mode Status | Support for with DVI option |
| MFD Hover Page Scale | |
| MFD Selected Page | Parameter is transmitted to all other IDUs to support weather radar vertical profile mode selection. |
| MFD Map Page Settings | Map scale is transmitted onside to support weather radar range selection. |
| OASIS CAS Box Render Status | Supports integrated OASIS CAS area. |
| 450 Screen Display Status | Support for 450 reversion |
| MFD Map Function Declutter Settings | |
| MFD OASIS Overlay Show Flags | |
| MFD Show ETA Flag | |
| MFD Map NavData® Symbol Declutter Settings | |
| MFD Map and HSI Page Pointer Settings | |
| MFD OASIS Overlay Show Flags | |

## 5.3. Menu Function Types

There are two types of menu functions on the IDU-450, top-level menu functions corresponding to the labeled pushbutton, and soft menu functions indicated by menu tiles, which appear on screen. Soft menu function tiles appear next to the appropriate IDU button or in the lower right corner when use of the encoder is appropriate. Soft menu functions take precedence over IDU pushbutton functions.

## 5.4. Top-Level Menu

On the IDU-450, the top-level menu corresponds to the permanent label of the IDU pushbuttons and is active anytime no soft menu options appear on the screen.

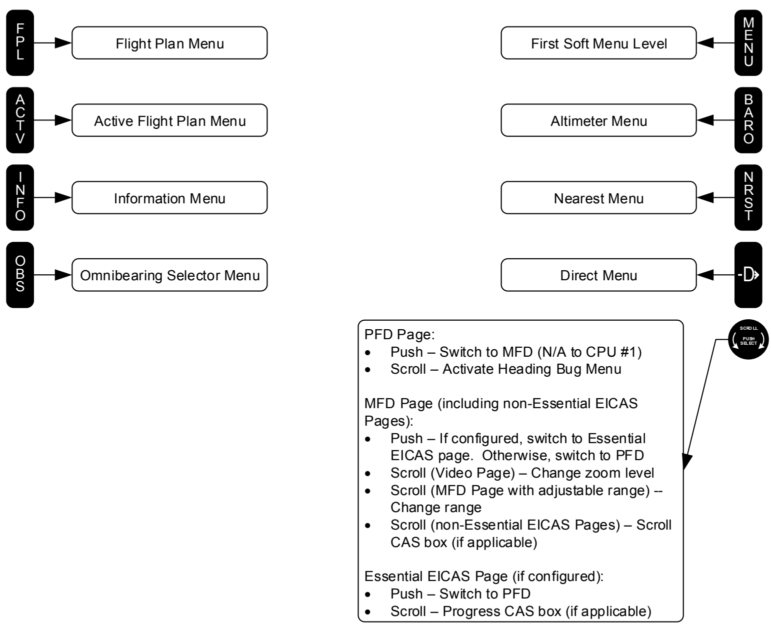



**Figure 5-3: PFD Top-Level Menu**

### 5.4.1. Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions

1) **FPL (L1)**: Flight plan menu

2) **ACTV (L2)**: Active flight plan menu

3) **INFO (L3)**: Information menu

4) **OBS (L4)**: Omnibearing selector menu

5) **MENU (R1)**: First-level associated with the current display page and times out after 10 seconds if there are no subsequent pilot actions.

6) **BARO (R2)**: Altimeter menu option

7) **NRST (R3)**: Nearest menu option

8)  **(R4)**: Direct menu option

9) **#1 Encoder (❶)**

   a) On a PFD, scroll to activate the heading menu.

   b) On MFD pages with an adjustable display scale (e.g., ND, Strike, Traffic, Datalink, Hover, or Weather Radar), scroll to change display scale (CW = increase, CCW = decrease).

   c) On the Video page, scroll to change zoom level (CW = increase, CCW = decrease).

   d) With the exception of IDU #1, push to swap between the PFD and MFD. IDU #1 is always fixed to the PFD page.

### 5.4.2. Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-up Function Descriptions

Soft menu tiles appear adjacent to pushbuttons under the specified conditions.

| Table 5-3: Top-Level Menu Automatic Function Descriptions Precedence, Tile Legend, and Action | |
|---|---|
| **FPL (L1)** | 1) When a terrain popup occurs during a TAWS FLTA alert, **RESET** appears. (MFD only)<br>2) When ND page with pan mode enabled, **PN OFF** appears. Press to disable pan mode. **RESET** has precedence over **PN OFF**. (MFD only)<br>3) When display is transmit enabled, **LNAV** appears when there is an active flight plan, heading bug sub-mode is active, and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot. Press to deactivate |

| Table 5-3: Top-Level Menu Automatic Function Descriptions Precedence, Tile Legend, and Action | |
|---|---|
| | heading bug sub-mode and resume guidance to active flight plan path. (PFD only)<br>4) When display is transmit enabled, **MISS** appears upon transitioning the FAF. Press to activate the missed approach procedure. **LNAV** has precedence over **MISS**.<br>5) When the display is transmit enabled, **HDG** appears when LNAV sub-mode is active and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot with HDG mode engaged. Press to deactivate LNAV sub-mode and resume guidance to the heading bug. **MISS** has precedence over **HDG**. (PFD only) |
| **ACTV (L2)** | 1) When showing ND Page with: (a) pan mode enabled; (b) information for the nearest highlighted waypoint is shown; and (c) airport weather information present in the information block.<br>2) When the display is transmit enabled and HRZ SYNC is armed, **HS ON** appears. Press to engage HRZ SYNC mode and apply the appropriate offset to displayed pitch attitude. **UP** has precedence over **HS ON**. (PFD only)<br>3) When the display is transmit enabled and HRZ SYNC is engaged, **HS OFF** appears. Press to cancel HRZ SYNC mode. **UP** has precedence over **HS OFF**. HRZ SYNC is also automatically cancelled by flying beyond the arming range. In most cases, it is anticipated that HRZ SYNC will be cancelled automatically by accelerating through the arming speed rather than by pressing **HS OFF**. (PFD only)<br>4) When the display is transmit enabled, **CONT** appears when in a holding pattern with further active flight plan legs after the holding pattern. Press to re-enabled automatic waypoint sequencing to allow normal sequencing to the leg after the holding pattern. **UP**, **HS ON**, and **HS OFF** have precedence over **CONT**. (PFD only) |

**Table 5-3: Top-Level Menu Automatic Function Descriptions Precedence, Tile Legend, and Action**

| | |
|---|---|
| | 5) When the display is transmit enabled, **RESUME** appears when the following leg is a manual leg and the FMS is in FROM operation. Press to activate a Direct-To the waypoint after the manual leg. **UP**, **HS ON**, and **HS OFF** have precedence over **RESUME**. (PFD only)<br>6) When the display is transmit enabled, **VNAV** appears when VNAV guidance is valid, the selected altitude sub-mode is active, and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot. Press to deactivate selected altitude sub-mode and resume guidance to VNAV path. **UP**, **HS ON**, **HS OFF, CONT,** and **RESUME** have precedence over **VNAV**. (PFD only)<br>7) When the display is transmit enabled, **ARM** appears when on the final approach segment (between FAF and MAP). Press to arm missed approach procedure to automatically activate upon sequencing MAP. **UP**, **HS ON**, **HS OFF**, and **VNAV** have precedence over **ARM**. (PFD only) |
| **INFO (L3)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **NORTH** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |
| **OBS (L4)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **SOUTH** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |
| **BARO (R2)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **INFO** or **HIDE** appears. Press to toggle the display of information for the nearest highlighted waypoint. |
| **NRST (R3)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **EAST** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |
|  **(R4)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **WEST** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |

## 5.5. First Page (PFD )

On the IDU-450, IDU #1 is fixed to the PFD page, and other IDUs may show the PFD page as a backup function. IDU-450 PFD page first-level options are as follows.

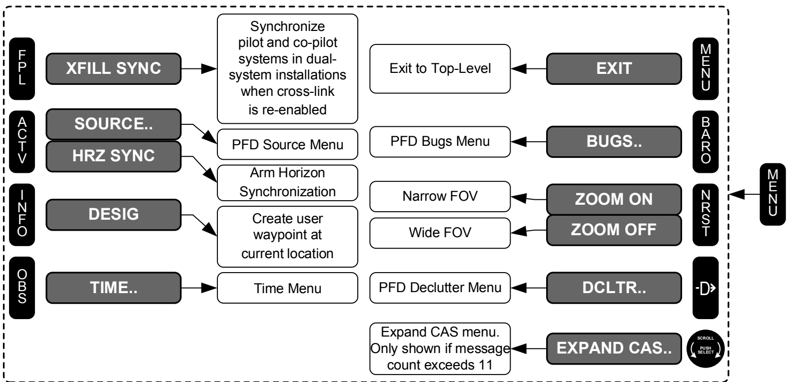



**Figure 5-4: First Page PFD**

### 5.5.1. PFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

1) **XFILL SYNC (FPL ) (L1)**: Appears in dual-system installations where the pilot and co-pilot systems are not synchronized, but crosslink is enabled. Press to synchronize the pilot and co-pilot active flight plan parameters to the system where the button press occurred.

**Table 5-4: Crossfill Inhibit/Arm/Sync Function**

| Crossfill (1) | Flight Plan | Indication (Pilot and Co-pilot) | Action to Synchronize Flight Plans: Pilot | Action to Synchronize Flight Plans: Co-pilot | Result |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Enabled (Cond.1) | Synchro-nized | None | None | None | No action required. Pilot and co-pilot sides already synchronized. |
| Enabled (Cond.2) | Not Synchro-nized (2) | XFILL ARM | **MENU (R1) XFILL SYNC (L1)** | None | Pilot's flight plan is sent to co-pilot side and both sides are synchronized |

**Table 5-4: Crossfill Inhibit/Arm/Sync Function**

| Crossfill [1] | Flight Plan | Indication (Pilot and Co-pilot) | Action to Synchronize Flight Plans: Pilot | Action to Synchronize Flight Plans: Co-pilot | Result |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | going forward. XFILL ARM is removed from both sides. |
| | | | None | **MENU (R1)** **XFILL SYNC( L1)** | Co-pilot's flight plan is sent to pilot side and both sides are synchronized going forward. XFILL ARM is removed from both sides. |
| Inhibited (Cond.3) | Not Synchro-nized | XFILL INHBT | Enable crossfill [1] (proceed to Cond. 2) | | XFILL INHBT removed. XFILL ARM displayed on both sides. |

(1) Crossfill is inhibited with the use of a latching (ON) crossfill inhibit switch. Crossfill is enabled by releasing (OFF ) this switch. The location and number of crossfill inhibit switches in a cockpit varies by installation. Usually a single crossfill switch can be centrally located in a side-by-side cockpit within reach of both pilots. If a single switch cannot be installed within reach of both pilots (tandem cockpits or very wide cockpits), two switches can be installed to function in parallel (either switch inhibits or enables crossfill on both the pilot and co-pilot sides).

(2) Pilot and co-pilot flight plans can become unsynchronized under the following conditions:

1) Crossfill is inhibited, and pilot and co-pilot flight plans are separately changed before crossfill is re-enabled.
2) Either the pilot or co-pilot side is restarted with an active flight plan on the other side and crossfill enabled.

2) **HRZ SYNC (L2)**: When the display is transmit enabled and horizon synchronization function is available, arms horizon synchronization function.

3) **SOURCE (L2)**: Activates PFD source selection menu option. **HRZ SYNC** has precedence.

4) **DESIG (INFO ) (L3)**: Creates a user waypoint at the current aircraft location. In addition, if pressed with an ND page operating in pan mode, creates a user waypoint at the panning location. User waypoint at current aircraft location is automatically named "OF###," where ### is the next available over-fly user waypoint number. User waypoint at panning location is automatically named "PN###," where ### is the next available panning user waypoint number. When pressed and the number of user waypoint count is more than 998, the **USER WPT S FULL** message appears.

5) **TIME (OBS ) (L4)**: Activates timer menu option.

6) **BUGS (BARO ) (R2)**: Activates PFD bug set menu option.

7) **ZOOM ON/ZOOM OFF (NRST ) (R3)**: Toggles between wide FOV mode and narrow FOV mode. **ZOOM ON** appears when current mode is wide FOV. **ZOOM OFF** appears when current mode is narrow FOV.

8) **DCLTR** **(R4):** Activates PFD declutter menu option.

9) **EXPAND CAS** Encoder): Activates expand CAS menu option when there are more than 11 active CAS messages displayed on the IDU.

### 5.5.2. PFD Screen First Soft Menu Level

When horizon synchronization is available and the IDU is transmit enabled, **HRZ SYNC (L2)** appears in the PFD screen first soft menu level. **HRZ SYNC** takes precedence over the PFD source menu. Press **HRZ SYNC (L2)** to arm horizon synchronization mode. It is anticipated the pilot takes this action on a Cat. A departure prior to lifting the helicopter into hover flight.

**XFILL SYNC (L1)** appears in the PFD screen first soft menu level when all of the following conditions are met:

1) Crosslink status is enabled; and

2) Crosslink synchronization status is not enabled; and

3) Discrete input for Crossfill Inhibit is not enabled; and

4) Side in command is valid; and

5) AFCS Status is set to invalid.

### 5.5.3. First-Level (MFD )

IDUs other than #1 may show various MFD pages as described in § 5.22. MFD first-level options are as follows.

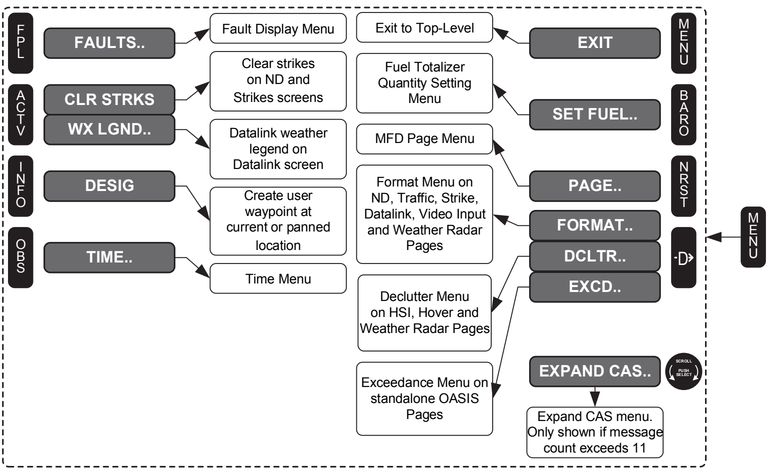



**Figure 5-5: First-Level MFD**

1) **FAULTS (FPL ) (L1)**: Activates fault display menu option.

2) **CLR STRKS (ACTV ) (L2)**: On ND or Strike page with WX-500 option enabled, **CLR STRKS** activates strike clear option for the Goodrich/L-3 WX-500. On Datalink page, “WX LGND” activates the datalink weather legend.

3) **DESIG (INFO ) (L3)**: Same function as PFD page first-level.

4) **TIME (OBS ) (L4)**: Same function as PFD page first-level.

5) **SET FUEL (BARO ) (R2)**: Activates fuel totalizer set menu option.

6) **PAGE (NRST ) (R3)**: Activates MFD display page select menu option.

7) **FORMAT, DCLTR**, or **EXCD**  **(R4)**:

a) **FORMAT** : On ND, traffic, strikes, datalink, video, and weather radar pages, activates appropriate page format menu option. On the weather radar page, **FORMAT** appears when an RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 is installed but a Radar control panel is not installed.

b) **DCLTR**: On HSI page with optional VOR or ADF symbology enabled or declutterable OASIS overlays, activates HSI declutter menu option. On hover page with declutterable OASIS overlays, activates hover declutter menu option. On weather radar page with declutterable OASIS overlays or in horizontal profile mode, activates weather radar declutter menu option.

c) **EXCD:** On a standalone OASIS page, activates the EICAS exceedance menu option. **EXCD** only appears if exceedances are logged.

8) **EXPAND CAS (❶):**

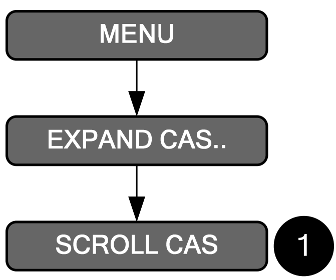



**Figure 5-6: Expand CAS Menu**

Activates the Expand CAS menu option and only appears when there are more than 11 active CAS messages being displayed on the IDU.

## 5.6. Lower-Level Menus (Below First-Level)

Top-level and first-level menus, called lower-level menus, and the eight pushbuttons and encoder control them as seen in Figure 5-1.

## 5.7. Flight Plan (FPL ) Menu

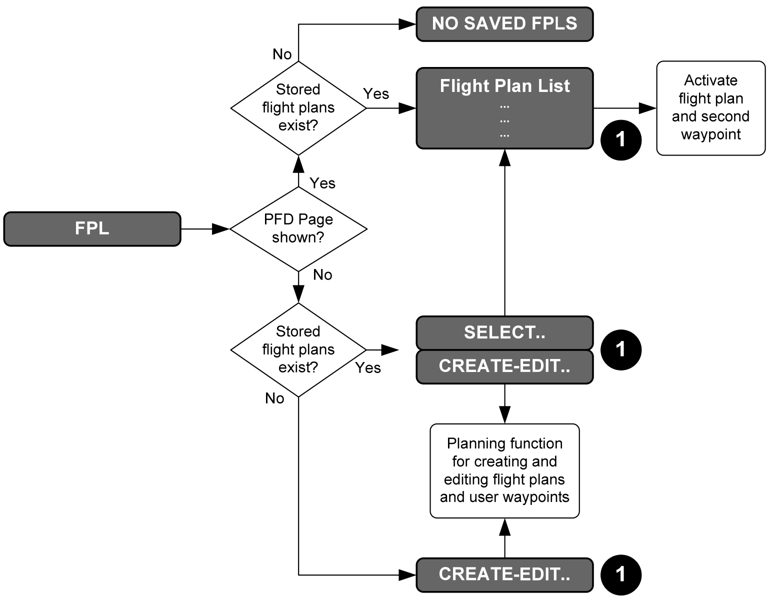



**Figure 5-7: Flight Plan Menu**

### 5.7.1. Flight Planner Page

The flight planner is used for following functions on pilot-modifiable elements in the IDU database.

1) Manage stored flight plans (activate, create, edit, delete, and reverse);

2) Manage user waypoints (create, edit, and delete); and

3) Perform RAIM predictions.

Because the flight planner takes over the IDU's controls, limitations are placed upon access and display of the flight planner. The flight planner is not available when a PFD page is being displayed on the IDU. (MFD in reversion mode).

When the flight planner is accessed, it only appears on the MFD to preserve access to crucial PFD page controls such as altimeter settings.

### 5.7.2. PFD Page Shown

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for existing saved flight plans. If there are no saved flight plans, **NO SAVED FPLS** appears. Otherwise, a selection list of saved flight plans is presented. Upon selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated.

### 5.7.3. MFD Page Shown on IDU

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for existing saved flight plans. If there are no saved flight plans, the flight planner is activated. Otherwise, an option list is presented for the pilot to either select a saved flight plan or enter the flight planner. Selecting the saved flight plan option leads to a list of saved flight plans. Upon selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated.

### 5.7.4. Create an Overfly User Waypoint


**Figure 5-8: Creation of Overfly User Waypoint**

When flying over intended waypoint, press **MENU (R1)** then **DESIG (L3)** on the PFD or MFD. A user waypoint is created at the present position and automatically named “OF###”, where ‘###’ is the next in sequence overfly user waypoint number available. User waypoint at panning location is automatically named “PN###” accordingly. Change the waypoint name by using the **EDIT USER WPT** function on the MFD.

**NOTE:**

When the maximum user waypoint count is 998 and an attempt is made to create additional user waypoints, **USER WPTS FULL** message appears.

### 5.7.5. Flight Plan (FPL ) Menu Selecting (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
2) Scroll ❶ to desired flight plan and push to enter.

### 5.7.6. Flight Plan (FPL ) Menu Create-Edit (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **FPL (L1)**.


2) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.

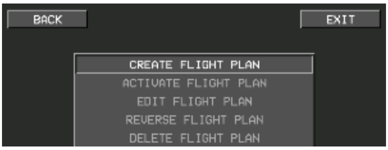

3) Push ❶ to enter.


4) Press **ADD (R2)** to begin creating first waypoint.


5) Either use ❶ to create a new waypoint or press **NRST APT.. (L2)**, **NRST VOR.. (L3)**, **NRST NDB.. (L4), NRST FIX.. (R2)**, or **NRST USR.. (R3)**, and make desired selection. Push ❶ to enter.


6) When finished, press **SAVE (R4)** to store the new flight plan as one of 100 flight plans in memory. If 100 flight

plans are present, the **CREATE FLIGHT PLAN** option is absent.

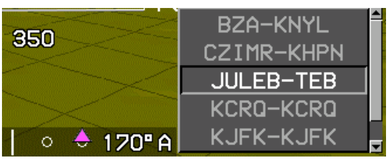



7) If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

## 5.7.7. Activate Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Scroll ❶ to **SELECT..** and push to enter.




3) Scroll ❶ to desired saved flight plan and push to enter to exit and return to normal operation.

Or


1) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.


2) Scroll ❶ to **ACTIVATE FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to desired saved flight plan and push to enter.

4) If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

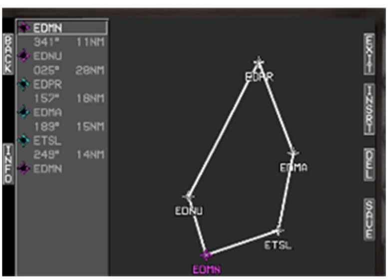
### 5.7.8. Edit Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **FPL (L1)**.


2) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **EDIT FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.


4) Scroll ❶ to desired flight plan and push to enter.




5) Edit flight plan by adding or deleting waypoints as appropriate.

6) To save, press **SAVE (R4)**.

7) If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

### 5.7.9. Reverse Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **FPL (L1)**.


2) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **REVERSE FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.


4) Scroll ❶ to desired flight plan and push to enter.

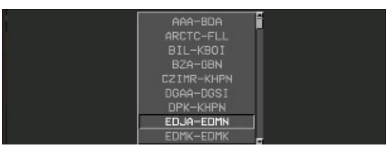
5) If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

## 5.7.10. Delete Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

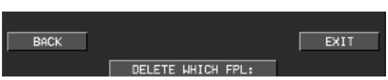

2) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **DELETE FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.




4) Scroll ❶ to desired flight plan to be deleted and push to enter.


5) Push ❶ to **CONFIRM DELETE FPL**.




6) Next flight plan is highlighted. If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

## 5.7.11. Create User Waypoint (LAT-LON) (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)

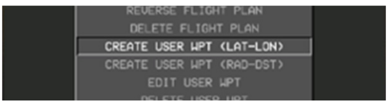
User waypoints may be created with three methods:

1) Latitude and Longitude
2) Radial and Distance
3) Overfly (Designate)

Follow the step-by-step procedure defined below to create a user waypoint using latitude and longitude.

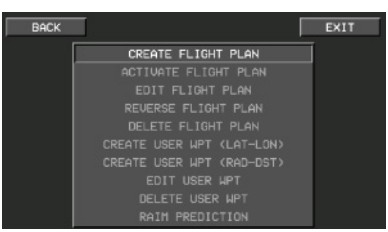

1) Press **FLP (L1)**.


2) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.




3) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE USER WPT (LAT-LON)** and push to enter.






4) To name new user waypoint, scroll ❶ and push to enter all five-character spaces. With new name created, use ❶ to proceed through all fields as necessary.

Preloading of the approach bearing is dependent upon mode of flight as follows:

On Ground: Preloaded with current heading

In Flight: Preloaded with **OFF** value.

If desired, specify the approach bearing to user waypoint in degrees 1°-360°. **OFF** value disables VFR approaches to the user waypoint. Once all fields are entered, press **SAVE (R4)** to save the user waypoint and return to the editing screen.

## 5.7.12. Create User Waypoint (RAD-DST) (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **FPL (L1)**.


2) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE USER WPT (RAD-DST)** and push to enter.


The identifier is automatically named RD### where ### is the next available radial distance waypoint number.*


4) After all fields have been entered, press **SAVE (R4)** to save and return to the editing screen.

* **Reference Waypoint** : The pilot is prompted to enter an identifier for the reference waypoint on the second line. Use ❶ to enter the reference waypoint in the same manner as a waypoint is entered for a flight plan. If there is a single result from the search, the pilot is advanced to the radial entry box. If there is no result from the search, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is displayed, and upon selection, the pilot is advanced to the radial entry box. **INFO** menu appears at this level and provides access to information for the highlighted result.

**Radial Entry**: The third line is for pilot to specify a radial from the reference waypoint in increments of degrees.

**Distance Entry**: The fourth line allows the pilot to specify a distance from the reference in increments of tenths of nautical miles.

## 5.7.13. Edit User Waypoint (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **FPL (L1)**.


2) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **EDIT USER WPT** and push to enter.


4) Scroll ❶ to desired waypoint to be edited.


5) Use ❶ to enter alphanumeric characters Follow prompts to edit information. Push ❶ to step through all character spaces.


6) To back up, press **BACK** (**L1**) and continue to the end of all character spaces.

7) Select another waypoint to edit or push **SAVE** (**R4**) to save changes to return to the EDIT USER WPT menu.

## 5.7.14. Delete User Waypoint (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)

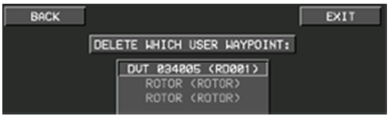

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.


2) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **DELETE USER WPT** and push to enter.


4) Scroll ❶ to desired waypoint to be deleted.


5) Push ❶ to **CONFIRM DEL USER WPT**.




8) If no other waypoints to delete, press **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu and return to the MAP.

**NOTE:**

Pilot alterations of user waypoint parameters while in flight do not automatically update to an active flight plan.

When changes are made to a user waypoint, and those changes are desired in existing flight plans, which use the waypoint, it must be deleted and replaced in the flight plans with the following steps:

1) EDIT the user waypoint as described in § 5.7.13.
2) Open a flight plan which uses the user waypoint.
3) Delete the existing waypoint from the flight plan.
4) Save and exit.
5) Reload the flight plan if it were in use.

### 5.7.15. RAIM Prediction

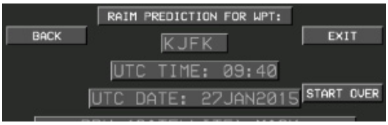
When selected, the RAIM prediction screen is only shown if the GPS /SBAS receiver is capable of performing a RAIM prediction. There must be no faults along with a current almanac in memory. The **FAULTS** menu may be monitored to determine if the GPS/SBAS receiver is capable of performing a RAIM prediction.


1) Press **FPL (L1)**.


2) Scroll ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **RAIM PREDICTION** and push to enter.

**SEE NOTE BELOW.**




4) If another RAIM Prediction is necessary, press **START OVER** (**R2**) to start the process again or press **EXIT** (**R1**) to exit the RAIM Prediction menu.

**NOTE:**

The pilot may perform RAIM prediction at a designated waypoint. The screen has various data entry boxes as follows:

1) **Designated Waypoint** : The pilot is prompted to enter an identifier for the designated waypoint. If there is a single result from the search, the pilot is advanced to the UTC time entry box. If there is no result from the search, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented and, upon selection, the pilot is advanced to the UTC time entry box. **INFO (L3)** appears at this level to aid in selection and give access to information for the highlighted results.

2) **UTC Time Entry**: Allows entry of the 24-Hour UTC estimated time of arrival at the designated waypoint.

3) **UTC Date Entry**: Allows entry of the UTC estimated date of arrival at the designated waypoint.

4) **PRN Mask Entry**: Allows the pilot to specify the PRN number of satellites expected to be unavailable at the destination.

5) **EXIT** : Allows exit of the RAIM prediction screen at any time.

6) Once a designated waypoint and UTC estimated time of arrival are entered, **CALC (R2)** appears for the pilot to initiate the RAIM Prediction. Press **CALC (R2)** to check the UTC estimated time of arrival and ensure it is within the

current almanac (i.e., <3.5 days from current date and time). If it is, a Predictive FDE Request message requesting “Detection Availability” with a required HAL of 0.3NM is sent to the GPS /SBAS receiver. In response, the GPS/SBAS receiver replies with a sequence of Predictive FDE Response messages. These messages are parsed and used to fill in the RAIM Prediction result area at the bottom of the screen. The RAIM Prediction result area shows the RAIM Prediction results as “OK” or “XX” for ETA ± in 5-minute increments. Once a prediction is complete, **START OVER (R2)** appears to allow the pilot to perform another prediction without having to exit the RAIM Prediction screen.

## 5.8. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu

### 5.8.1. Main Menu

See Section 7 IFR Procedures for active flight plan description.

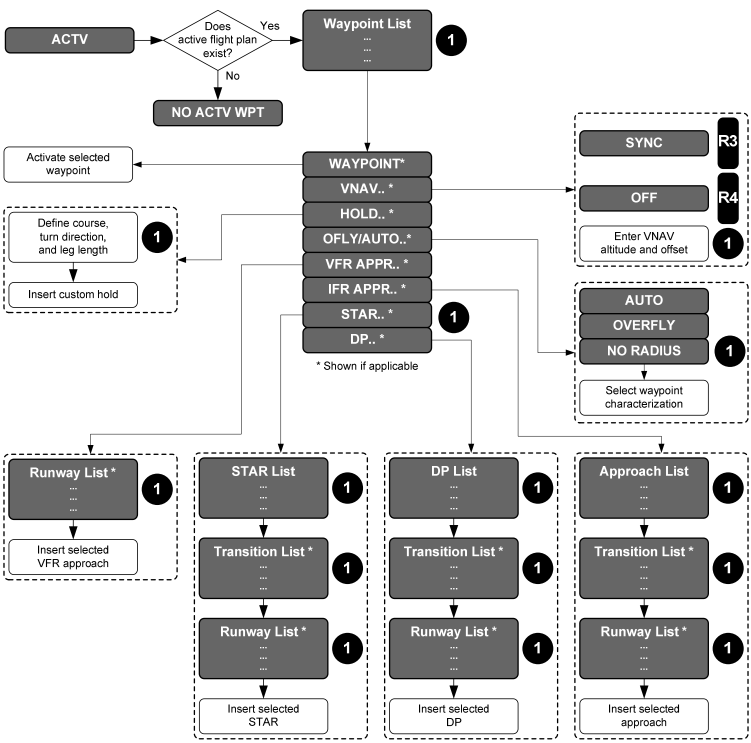



**Figure 5-9: Active Flight Plan Main Menu**

## 5.8.2. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options

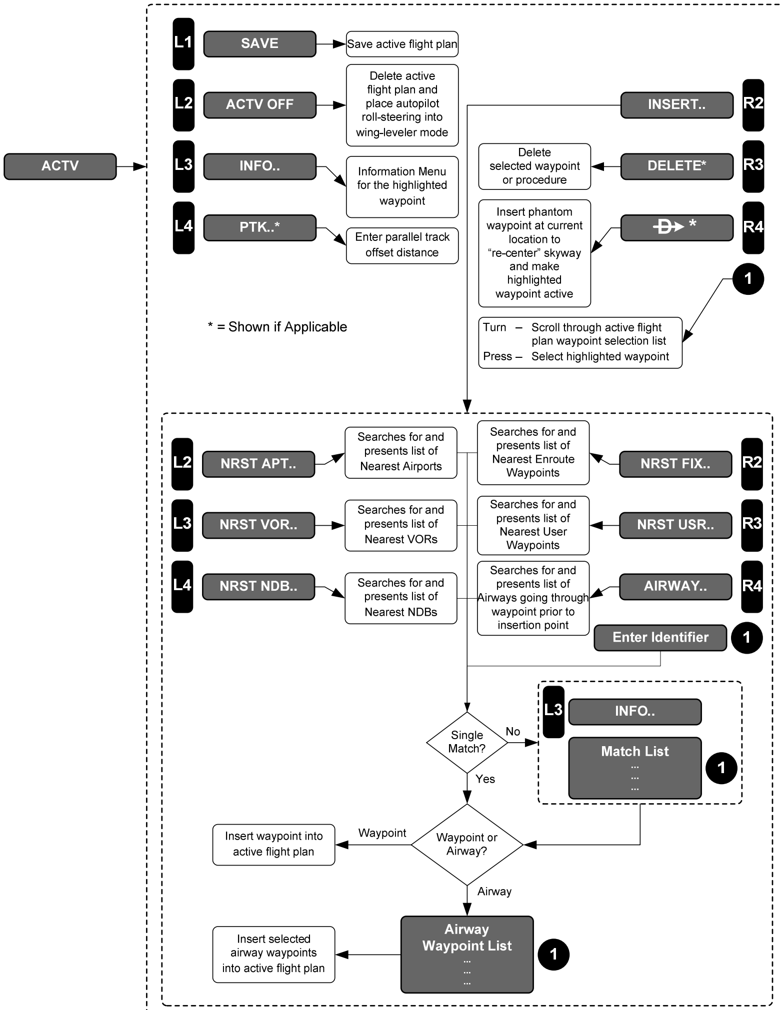



**Figure 5-10: Active Flight Plan Menu Options**

Various options appear at the same menu level as the nav log selection list. These options allow various modifications to be made to the active flight plan as follows.

Upon activation of the active flight plan menu, the application checks for the existence of an active waypoint. If there is no active waypoint, a **NO ACTIVE WPT** menu message is displayed. Otherwise, a selection list in the form of a nav log of waypoints in the active flight plan is presented. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for detailed active flight plan information.

1) **SAVE** (**L1**): Saves active flight plan. Stored flight plans are saved without procedures or phantom waypoint (this is a safety item as procedures potentially change every 28 days). Stored flight plans are named by their first and last waypoints. If the new stored flight plan has the same start and end points as a previously saved flight plan but has different routing, a number (0-9) is appended to the name to uniquely identify up to 10 routings with the same start and end points.

2) **ACTV OFF** (**L2**): Deletes active flight plan. The pilot is prompted to confirm deletion prior to completion of the operation.

3) **INFO** (**L3**): Activates information menu option for highlighted waypoint.

4) **PTK** (**L4**): Shown if the active leg can be offset allowing the pilot to specify a parallel offset distance that applies to the active and contiguous legs. The range of parallel offsets are from 20NM left of track to 20NM right of track in 1NM increments.

5) **INSERT** /**ADD** (**R2**): Allows the pilot to insert or add a waypoint or airway into the active flight plan. If the highlighted position is one position past the end of the active flight plan, **ADD (R2)** appears, otherwise **INSERT (R2)** appears. When the highlighted waypoint is the second or subsequent waypoint of a procedure, the tile does not appear. This prevents corruption of IFR approaches, STARs, and DPs. When activated, the pilot is prompted to enter an identifier. Performing a search for waypoints requires the entry of at least two characters. If only one character is entered, only airways are searched.

   **For waypoints**, if there is a single result from the search, the result is inserted or added to the active flight plan. If there is no result from the search, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented and, upon selection, the selected waypoint is inserted or added to the active flight plan. **INFO (L3)** appears at this level to aid in selection and give access to information for the highlighted result.

**For airways**, a search is performed for all airways going through the highlighted waypoint and matching the entered identifier (i.e., to get a list of all Victor airways, Q-Routes and T-Routes going through the highlighted waypoint, enter an identifier string of “V”, “Q” or “T”). If there is a single result from the search, a list of airway waypoints is shown for the pilot to select the desired exit point. If there is no result from the search, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching airway identifiers is presented and, upon selection, a list of airway waypoints is shown for the pilot to select the desired exit point. Upon selecting the desired exit point, all airway waypoints from the previous waypoint to the desired exit point are inserted or added to the active flight plan.

6) **NRST APT (L2)**: Performs a search for 20 airports within 240NM nearest to the waypoint prior to the insertion point or, if there is no waypoint prior to the insertion point, current aircraft location. If there are no results (i.e., no airports within 240NM with a runway length greater than or equal to the minimum runway length setting), **NO RESULTS** is displayed. Otherwise, a selection list is displayed including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. Upon selecting a result from the selection list, the item is inserted or added to the flight plan. **INFO (L3)** appears at this level to aid in selection and give access to information for the highlighted result, which includes datalinked weather information when available. With optional datalink, **WX LGND (L2)** and **EXPND WX (L3)** are available at this level to show a weather symbol legend and highlighted result METAR and TAF text respectively.

7) **NRST FIX (R2)**: Performs a search for 20 fixes within 240NM nearest to the waypoint prior to the insertion point or, if there is no waypoint prior to the insertion point, current aircraft location. If there are no results (i.e., no fixes within 240NM), **NO RESULTS** is displayed. Otherwise, a selection list is displayed including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. Upon selecting a result from the selection list, the item is inserted or added to the flight plan. **INFO (L3)** appears at this level to aid in selection and give access to information for the highlighted result.

8) **NRST NDB (L4)**: Performs a search for 20 NDBs within 240NM nearest to the waypoint prior to the insertion point or, if there is no waypoint prior to the insertion point, current aircraft location.

If there are no results (i.e., no NDBs within 240NM), **NO RESULTS** is displayed. Otherwise, a selection list is displayed including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. Upon selecting a result from the selection list, the item is inserted or added to the flight plan. **INFO (L3)** appears at this level to aid in selection and give access to information for the highlighted result.

9) **NRST USR (R3)**: Performs a search for 20 user waypoints within 240NM nearest to the waypoint prior to the insertion point or, if there is no waypoint prior to the insertion point, current aircraft location. If there are no results (i.e., no user waypoints within 240NM), **NO RESULTS** is displayed. Otherwise, a selection list is displayed including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. Upon selecting a result from the selection list, the item is inserted or added to the flight plan. **INFO (L3)** appears at this level to aid in selection and give access to information for the highlighted result.

10) **NRST VOR** (**L3**): Performs a search for 20 VORs within 240NM nearest to the waypoint prior to the insertion point or, if there is no waypoint prior to the insertion point, current aircraft location. If there are no results (i.e., no VORs within 240NM), **NO RESULTS** is displayed. Otherwise, a selection list is displayed including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. Upon selecting a result from the selection list, the item is inserted or added to the flight plan. **INFO (L3)** appears at this level to aid in selection and give access to information for the highlighted result.

**Identifier Entry Box:** The pilot may enter an identifier. Performing a search for waypoints requires the entry of at least two characters. If there is a single result from the search, it is inserted or added to the active flight plan. If there is no result from the search, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented and, upon selection, the selected waypoint is inserted or added to the active flight plan. **INFO (L3)** appears at this level to aid in selection and give access to information for the highlighted result, which includes datalinked weather information when available. With optional datalink, **WX LGND (L2)** and **EXPND WX (L3)** are available at this level to show a weather symbol legend and highlighted result METAR and TAF text respectively.

11) **DELETE (R3)**: Not shown if the highlighted waypoint is a parallel offset entry or exit waypoint (these types of waypoints are deleted by removing the parallel offset). Otherwise, if the highlighted waypoint is a non-procedure waypoint, the function deletes the highlighted waypoint from the active flight plan. If the highlighted waypoint is part of a procedure, the function deletes the entire procedure from the active flight plan. The pilot is prompted to confirm deletion prior to completion of the operation. This tile does not appear if the highlighted waypoint is a non-procedure waypoint and there are fewer than three non-procedure waypoints in the active flight plan. This is because an active flight plan must always have at least two non-procedure waypoints. The tile also does not appear when the highlighted waypoint is suppressed or when the highlighted position is one position past the end of the active flight plan.

12) **Direct**  **(R4)**: Not shown if the highlighted waypoint is a parallel offset entry or exit waypoint. Otherwise, inserts a phantom waypoint at the current aircraft location and makes the highlighted waypoint active. The phantom waypoint is a fly-over defined entry waypoint, and the leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity. This assures the skyway is "re-centered" to provide guidance to the new active waypoint. This tile does not appear when the highlighted waypoint is suppressed or when the highlighted position is one position beyond the end of the active flight plan.

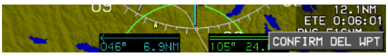
### 5.8.3. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **ACTV (L2)** to view active flight plan.


2) Scroll ❶ to desired waypoint. Push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to desired option and push to enter.


4) As one option, a VNAV setting is entered.




5) As another option, deleting the next waypoint is accomplished.

## 5.8.4. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu (Step-By-Step)


1) With the desired flight plan selected and activated, the next steps may be accomplished on the PFD or MFD.

2) Press **ACTV (L2)** to view active flight plan.

3) Scroll ❶ to desired waypoint. Push to enter.


4) Scroll ❶ to **VNAV..** then to desired altitude and push to enter.


5) If no OFFSET is necessary, push ❶ to enter.


6) View active flight plan for further editing or press **EXIT (R1)** to clear active flight plan from view.

### 5.8.5. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Options NRST Menu Option (Step-By-Step)


1) With active flight plan displayed, press **INSERT..** (**R2**) to see NRST options.


2) Press **NRST APT..** (**L2**), **NRST VOR..** (**L3**), **NRST NDB..** (**L4**), **NRST FIX..** (**R2**), **NRST USR..** (**R3**), or **AIRWAY..** (**R4**) to view applicable list. Scroll ❶ to desired selection and push to insert into active flight plan.

3) Press **SAVE (L1)** to save active flight plan as one of the 100 stored flight plans. (Any procedure within the saved active flight plan is not saved.)

## 5.9. Information (INFO ) Menu

If **INFO** is activated from within the **ACTV, NRST,** or **Direct** menu, information on the highlighted waypoint is shown. Otherwise, the function checks for an active waypoint. If there is an active waypoint, it becomes the default entry. If there is no active waypoint, then the nearest airport becomes the default entry.

If the default entry is accepted, then information for the default entry is shown. If the user rejects the default entry by entering identifier characters, then a search for matching characters is performed. Only two identifier characters are needed for searching, therefore after entering two identifier characters, **SEARCH (R4)** appears for an immediate search to begin if desired. If there is a single result from the search, information for that result is shown. If there is no result from the search, the user is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented to allow the user to select the desired identifier.

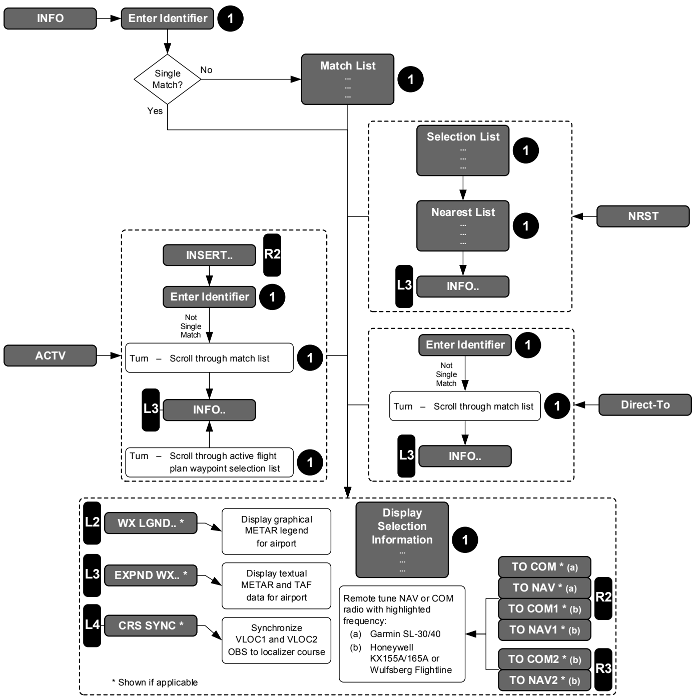



**Figure 5-11: Information Menu**

The amount and type of information presented depends upon the type of waypoint as follows.

**Table 5-5: INFO Menu Information**

| **Type** | **NAVAID** | **Airports** | **With Datalink Enabled** |
|---|---|---|---|
| Waypoint Identifier<br>Waypoint Type<br>Waypoint elevation<br>Long Name<br>Bearing and distance<br>Latitude and longitude | NAVAID Type<br>Frequency | Communication frequencies<br>Airport runway data | Airport graphical METAR<br>Current Altimeter setting<br>Current Wind |
| | | | If textual METAR data is not available, all conditions are followed by "----" |

**Table 5-6: INFO Menu***

| **Single Frequency Associated with Waypoint** | **Conditions** | **Frequencies <118 MHz (NAV)** | **Frequencies >118 MHz (COM)** |
|---|---|---|---|
| **NAV** or **COM** tiles | More than one frequency with waypoint when highlighted in INFO block | **TO NAV1 (R2)**<br>**TO NAV2 (R3)** | **TO COM1 (R2)**<br>**TO COM2 (R3)** |
| *When remote tuning is enabled for Garmin SL-30/40 radios, only a single **TO COM** or **TO NAV** is shown at **(R2)**. | | | |

**NOTE:**

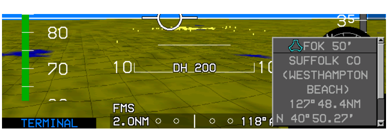
Frequencies are only sent to either com or nav radios in the standby position. It is up to the pilot to swap frequencies to the active position in the applicable radio.

When the information is presented for an ILS or localizer waypoint and the current VLOC1 or VLOC2 omnibearing selectors are not synchronized with the localizer course, **CRS SYNC (L4)** allows one-touch synchronization of **VLOC1 (L3)** and **VLOC2 (L4)** omnibearing selectors to the localizer course.


**Figure 5-12: CRS SYNC**

### 5.9.1. Information (INFO ) Menu (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **INFO.. (L3)** to view active waypoint.




2) Push ❶ to view information.

### 5.10. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu

OBS menu allows the pilot to control the omnibearing selector for showing course deviations. Press **FMS (L2)** to specify a manual or automatic OBS setting in which the active OBS is controlled by the active flight plan. OBS for VLOC1 allows the pilot to specify the active OBS setting for the VLOC1 navigation function. OBS for VLOC2 allows the pilot to specify the active OBS setting for the

VLOC2 navigation function. Manual **FMS**, **VLOC1**, and **VLOC2 OBS** settings are settable in increments of 1°. **OBS SYNC (R3)** synchronizes the manual **FMS**, **VLOC1**, or **VLOC2 OBS** settings (depending upon HSI source) to the inbound course or, if the inbound course cannot be determined, to aircraft heading. When HSI source is FMS, **OBS AUTO /OBS MAN**  **(R4)** toggles between automatic and manual OBS settings.

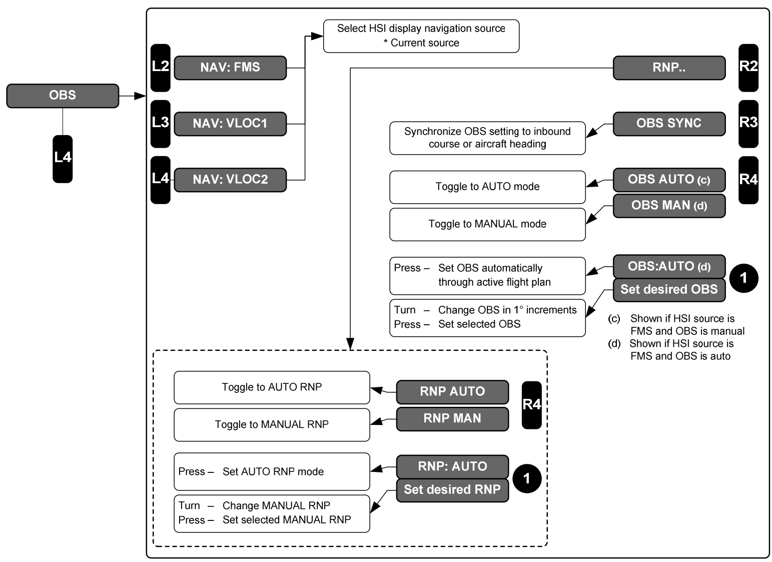



**Figure 5-13: Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu**

**NOTE:**

If a true north mode discrete input is configured, the OBS menu allows the pilot to toggle between **TRUE NORTH** and **MAG NORTH** modes.

With VOR symbology enabled, the OBS function also permits the pilot to select either **FMS, VLOC1**, or **VLOC2** as the HSI source. The HSI source selects the navigation source used to generate HSI guidance symbology. The OBS function also permits the pilot to select between manual and automatic RNP settings.

Upon selecting **RNP.. (R2)**, **RNP AUTO /RNP MAN (R4)** toggles between automatic and manual RNP settings. Manual RNP is selectable between 0.10NM and 15NM as follows:

1) 0.01NM increments between RNP 0.10 and RNP 0.3

2) 0.1NM increments between RNP 0.3 and RNP 2

3) 1NM increments between RNP 2 and RNP 15

### 5.10.1. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu (Step-By-Step)


1) Before pressing **OBS (L4)** to make any OBS changes, view the current setting to see if **FMS** is selected.


2) Press **OBS (L4)** and make HSI source selection or change to **OBS MANUAL (R4).**

## 5.11. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu

The heading bug menu allows the pilot to set the heading bug in increments of 1°, synchronize the heading bug to current heading, or turn off the heading bug.

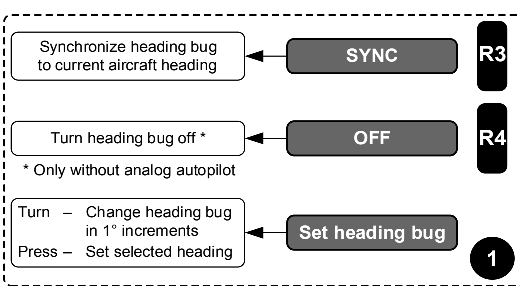



**Figure 5-14: Heading Bug (HDG) Menu**

### 5.11.1. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu (PFD Only) (Step-By-Step)


1) Scroll ❶ to enter Heading mode.
2) Scroll ❶ to change heading bug in 1° increments.
3) Push ❶ to select new heading or press **SYNC** (**R3**) to sync current heading.

## 5.12. Nearest (NRST) Menu

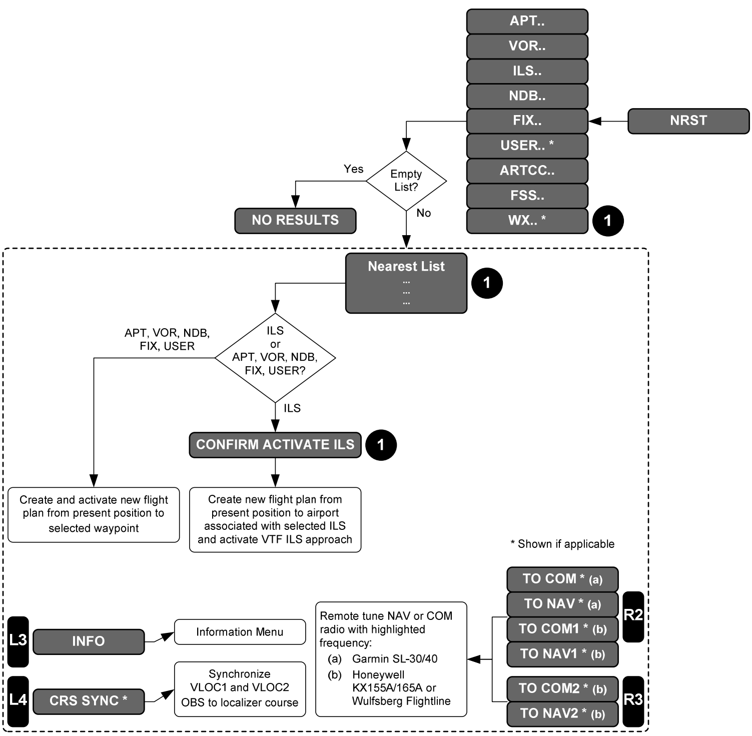



**Figure 5-15: Nearest (NRST) Menu**

Upon selecting a category from the option list, a selection list of up to 20 items within 240NM matching the category appears. If the list is empty (i.e., no items within 240NM), **NO RESULTS** is displayed. The selection list includes identifier, bearing, and distance to the item, the list for Heliports and airports also contains an indication of the longest runway length at the airport. The selection list for airports contains only airports with runway length greater than or equal to the minimum runway length setting when the system was configured during installation.

The selection list for airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs, ARTCCs, and FSSs includes an associated frequency (CTAF in the case of airports). Tiles are shown to allow transmission of the associated frequency to remote NAV or COM radios. If the frequency is greater than or equal to 118MHz, the tiles read **TO COM#** and the transmission is addressed to COM radios. If the frequency is less than 118MHz, the tiles read **TO NAV#**, and the transmission is addressed to NAV radios, **TO COM1** or **TO NAV1 (R2)**, or a **TO COM2** or **TO NAV2 (R3)** position.

**NOTE:**

Frequencies are only sent to either com or nav radios in the standby position. It is up to the pilot to swap frequencies to the active position in the applicable radio.

When the results for airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs, fixes, and user waypoints are displayed, **INFO (L3)** appears to provide further information on the highlighted item.

In the case of **NRST ILS** where the current VLOC1 or VLOC2 OBS does not match the localizer course, **CRS SYNC (L4)** is presented to synchronize VLOC1 and VLOC2 OBS to the localizer course.

Upon selecting a waypoint of type airport, VOR, NDB, fix, or user waypoint, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. Upon selecting a waypoint of type ILS, **CONFIRM ACTIVATE ILS** is displayed. When the pilot confirms the ILS activations, the following actions occur:

1) A direct flight plan to the airport associated with the ILS is created;

2) A vectors-to-final ILS approach to the ILS is activated;

3) If the heading bug is turned OFF, the heading bug is activated to current heading to act as a starting point for receiving vectors (autopilot enabled systems only);

4) VLOC1 and VLOC2 OBS settings are set to the associated localizer course;

5) HSI source is switched as follows:

   a) If there is only one nav radio installed, the source for the selecting side is changed to VLOC1. The source for the other side does not change.

   b) If there are two nav radios installed, the default sensor for the selecting side controls which source is used. The source for the other side does not change.

6) Connected nav radios are remote tuned to ILS frequency.

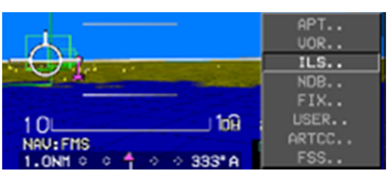
## 5.13. Nearest (NRST) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **NRST (R3)** to enter Nearest Menu.


2) Scroll ❶ to select **APT..** from list, push to enter.

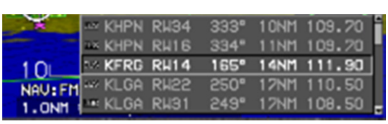

3) Scroll ❶ to desired airport and select to either **INSERT**, **INFO**, or send frequency to **COMM1** or **COMM2.**

### 5.13.1. Nearest ILS (NRST ) Menu (Step-By-Step)




1) Press **NRST (R3)** to enter Nearest Menu.

2) Scroll ❶ to select ILS from list. Push to enter.




3) Scroll ❶ to desired airport and ILS approach then push to enter.


4) Push ❶ to confirm and activate ILS.

## 5.14. Direct Menu

Upon activating the direct menu from the top-level menu, the function checks for a current active waypoint and, if found, the active waypoint becomes the default entry. If there is no active waypoint, the nearest airport becomes the default entry.

If the default entry is the active waypoint and accepted by the pilot, a phantom waypoint is inserted at the current aircraft location. The phantom waypoint is a fly-over defined entry waypoint, and the leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity. This assures the skyway is “re-centered” to provide guidance to the new active waypoint. The rest of the active flight plan remains unchanged.

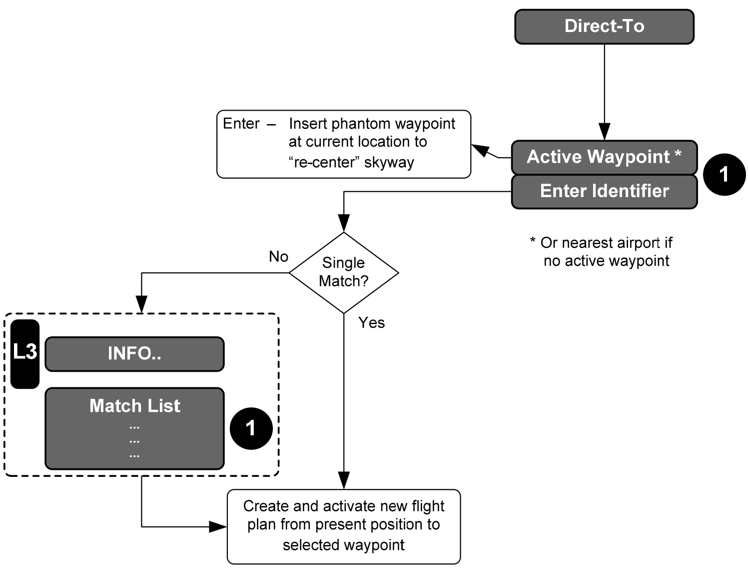



**Figure 5-16: Direct Menu**

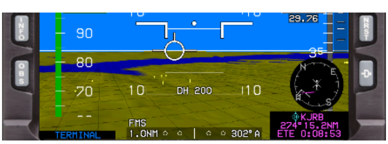
If the default entry is not the active waypoint and accepted by the pilot, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint.

If the pilot rejects the default entry by entering identifier characters, a search for matching identifiers is performed. If there is a single result from the search, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint.

If there is no result from the search, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier.

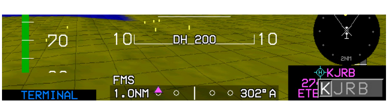
If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented. Upon selection, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. **INFO (L3)** appears at this level to aid in selection and give access to the information function for the highlighted result.

### 5.14.1. Direct Menu (Step-By-Step)




1) Press  **(R4)** to enter the Direct menu.

2) The active waypoint or, in absence of an active waypoint, the nearest airport appears.




3) Either push ❶ to insert a phantom waypoint at the current aircraft location or scroll ❶ to begin entering new identifier.


4) After creating new identifier, scroll ❶ to the end and push to enter. A new active flight plan is created from the present aircraft position.

5) If necessary, search waypoints for selection. Scroll ❶ to desired selection. Push to enter.

## 5.15. Time (TIME ) Menu

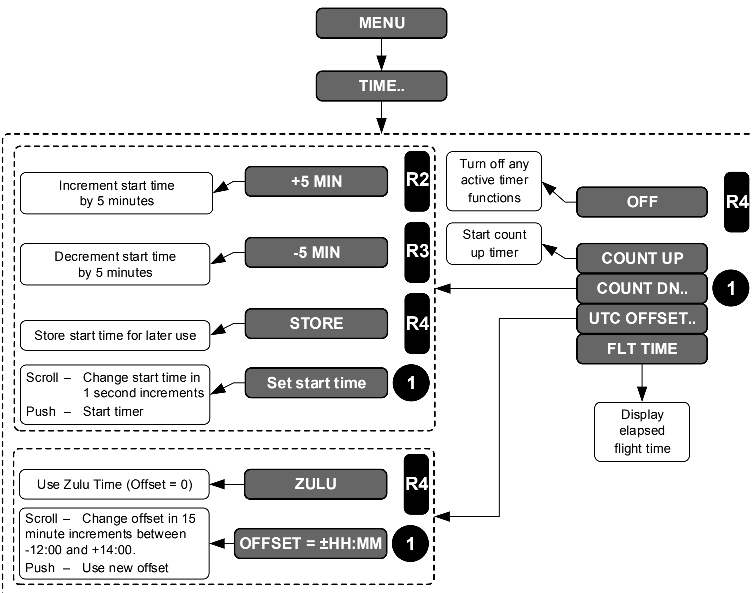



**Figure 5-17: Time Menu**

Upon selecting the time menu, an option list appears to let the pilot choose the count up, countdown timer, or flight time display. Press **OFF**  **(R4)** to turn off any active timer functions.

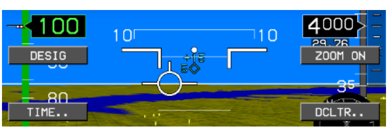
If the count up timer is selected, the count up timer is activated. If the countdown timer is selected, the pilot is prompted to enter a start time from which the countdown begins. Shortcut tiles to quickly add or decrement by five-minute increments are provided at this level. After entering a start time, the pilot may either start the countdown timer or select **STORE**  **(R4)** to store the start time for later use.

If the UTC offset is selected, the pilot is prompted to enter a UTC offset between -12:00 and +14:00 in 15-minute increments. A shortcut to quickly select Zulu time (UTC offset = 0:00) is provided at this level.

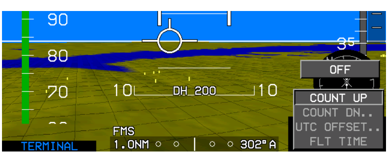
If the pilot selects the flight time display option, the elapsed time since the aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode is displayed for ten seconds or until any button is pressed. If the aircraft has not yet transitioned from ground to air mode, upon selecting the flight time display option, elapsed time is displayed as **FLT TM: 00:00:00**.

### 5.15.1. Time (TIME ) Menu (Step-By-Step)

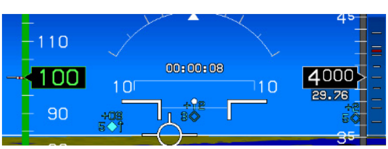
1) Press **MENU (R1)**.



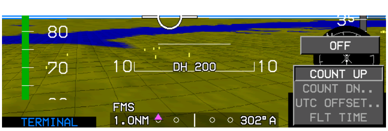

2) Press **TIME.. (L4)** to enter the **TIME..** menu.




3) Scroll ❶ to select **COUNT UP**, **COUNT DN..**, **UTC OFFSET..** or **FLT TIME**, and push to enter.




4) If **COUNT UP** is desired, push ❶ to enter. A timer appears on the PFD area above the pitch scale.




5) To turn off timer, press **MENU (R1)** and **TIME.. (L4)** then press **OFF (R4)** on PFD or MFD.

## 5.16. PFD Source (SOURCE) Menu

Upon activating the PFD source menu, an option list of sensor sources is shown for the pilot to select/deselect the following items:

1) ADC1,
2) ADC2,
3) AHRS1,
4) AHRS2,
5) GPS1,
6) GPS2,
7) Radar altimeter 1, and
8) Radar altimeter 2

If a Genesys ADAHRS is the selected AHRS and a DG/Slave discrete input is not configured for that AHRS, then **AHRS SLAVE/AHRS DG (R2)** appears to toggle between the two AHRS modes. If in DG mode without slew discrete inputs is configured for the selected AHRS, then **AHRS SLEW (R3)** appears to enter the submenu to adjust the DG mode slewing value.

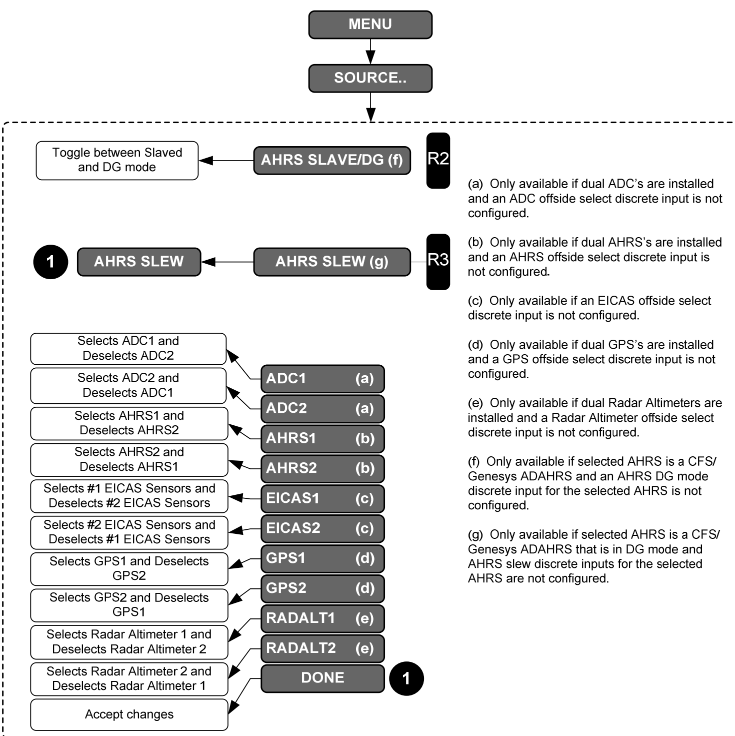
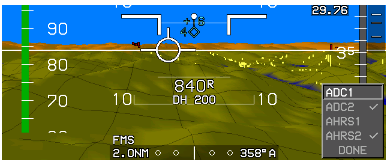



**Figure 5-18: PFD Source Menu**

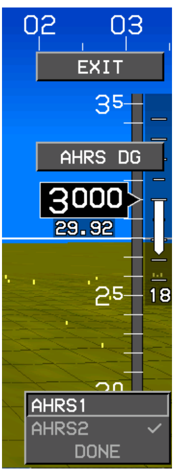
## 5.16.1. PFD Page First-Level Source Selection (Step-By- Step)


1) Press **MENU (R1)**.


2) Press **SOURCE.. (L2)**.




3) Scroll ❶ to desired source, push to check/uncheck, scroll ❶ to **DONE** and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.





4) When dual AHRS are installed with an AHRS off-side select discrete is not configured.

5) When Genesys AHRS is installed and in DG Mode without discrete inputs for the selected AHRS are not selected.

## 5.17. PFD Bugs (BUGS ) Menu

Upon selecting the PFD Bugs menu, set either minimums **(MINS ) (R3)**, an airspeed bug **(IAS ) (L2)**, the VNAV climb or descent angle (**VNAV CDA )**  **(R4)**, or vertical speed **(VSI ) (L4)**.

Selecting the minimums option brings up a further option list for setting either decision height or minimum altitude. Selecting the minimum altitude option allows the pilot to either synchronize the minimum altitude to current altitude, turn the minimum altitude off, or set the minimum altitude in increments of 10 feet. The decision height option allows the pilot to either, set the decision height to a default height of 200 feet, turn the decision height off, or set the decision height in increments of 10 feet.

Selecting the airspeed bug option allows the pilot to either, synchronize the airspeed bug to current airspeed, turn the airspeed bug off, or set the airspeed bug in increments of one knot indicated airspeed. On the low end, airspeed bug settings are no less than 60KIAS and no greater than $\mathbf{V_{NE}}$.

**NOTE:**

When integrated with a Genesys/HeliSAS-E in IAS mode, it is not possible to turn off the airspeed bug.

Selecting the VNAV climb or descent angle option brings up a further option list for setting either climb angle or descent angle. At this further level, selecting either option allows the pilot to set the climb angle or the descent angle (as appropriate) in increments of 0.1° (a value of 0 is not allowed). Corresponding feet per nautical mile are shown adjacent to the climb or descent angle setting in parentheses. In addition, a shortcut tile is available to set the climb or descent angle to 3°.

Select the VSI bug option to either, synchronize the VSI bug to the current VSI, turn the VSI bug off, or set the VSI bug in increments of 100 feet per minute. The airspeed bug and VSI bug are mutually exclusive, therefore selecting one turns off the other.

Selecting the target altitude option allows the user to either synchronize the target altitude to current altitude, turn the target altitude off or set the target altitude in increments of 100 feet.

**NOTE:**

“Target altitude” refers to pre-selected altitude in Genesys/S-TEC HeliSAS-E installations.

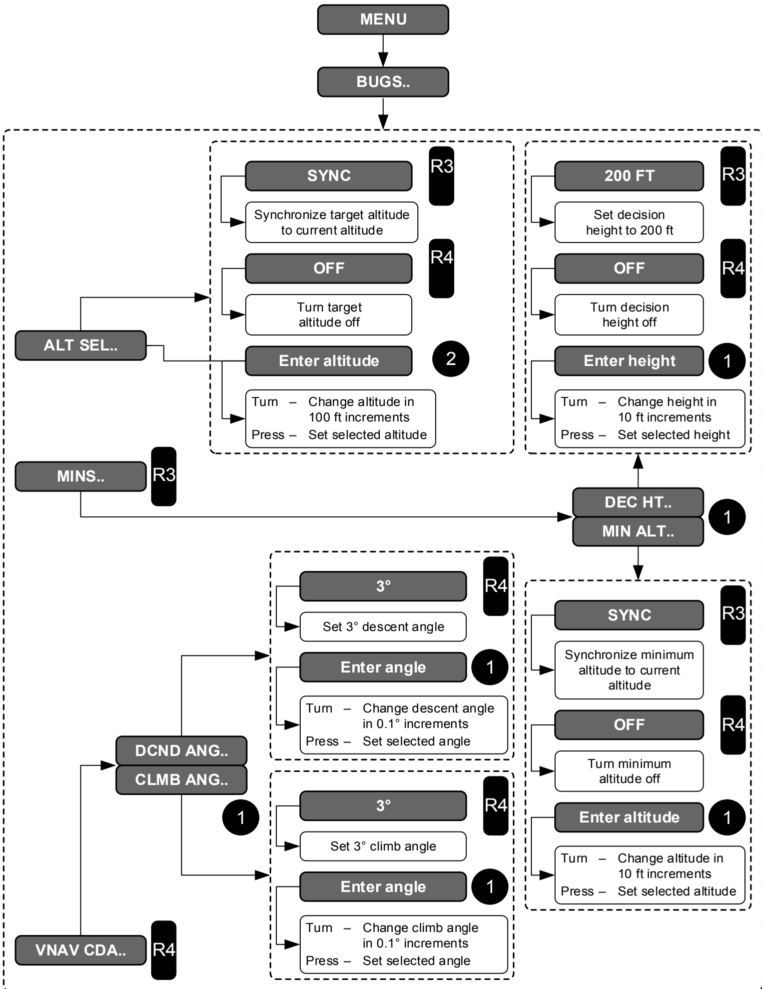



**Figure 5-19: PFD Bugs (BUGS ) Menu**

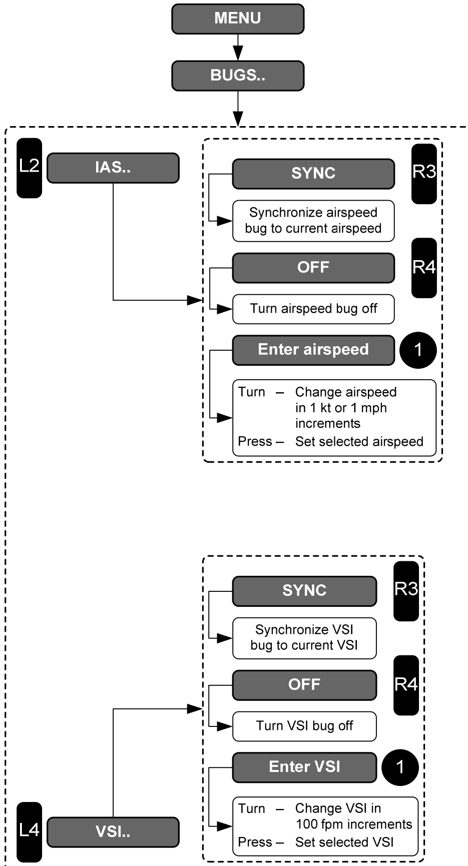
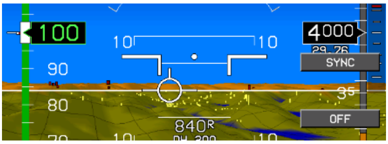



**Figure 5-20: PFD Bugs (BUGS ) Menu (Continued)**

### 5.17.1. PFD Bugs (BUGS ) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU (R1)** then **BUGS (R2)** to enter the Bugs menu.


2) Press **IAS (L2)**, **VSI (L4)**, **MINS (R3)**, or **VNAV CDA (R4)** to select desired menu.



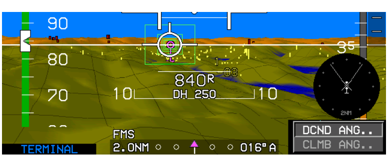

3) If **IAS (L2)** is entered, press **SYNC (R3)** or **OFF (R4)** to accept or turn off IAS bug.


4) If a different **IAS** bug is desired, scroll ❶ to select desired airspeed and push to enter new value.

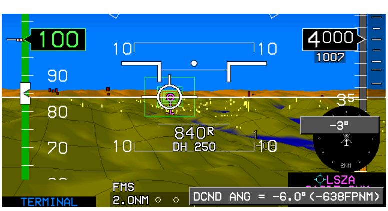

5) If **MINS (R3)** is selected, scroll ❶ to select either **DEC HT..** or **MIN ALT..** and push to enter.


6) If **DEC HT..** is selected, scroll ❶ to create new decision height. Push to enter.

7) DH displays on PFI below FPM.




8) If **VNAV CDA (R4)** is selected, scroll ❶ to select either **DCND ANG..** or **CLIMB ANG...** Push to enter.




9) If **DCND ANG..** is selected, Scroll ❶ to create the descent angle. Push to enter new descent angle or select default **3° (R4)**.

## 5.18. PFD Declutter (DCLTR ) Menu

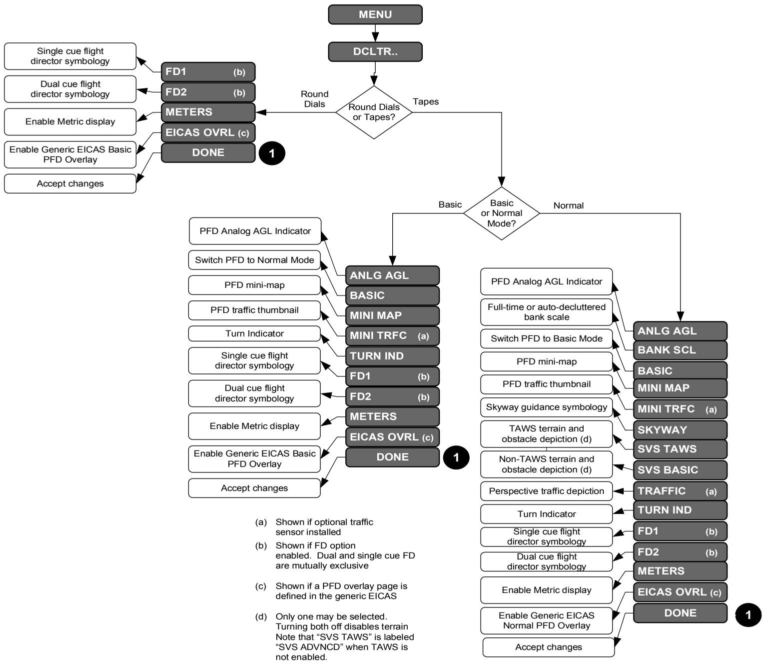



**Figure 5-21: PFD Declutter (DCLTR ) Menu**

Upon activating the PFD declutter menu, an option list of declutter items is shown.

**Table 5-7: PFD Declutter Options and Features**

| Declutter Options | Configuration: Tapes | Configuration: Basic | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Analog AGL Indicator | ✓ | ✓ | Mutually exclusive with MINI MAP, and MINI TRFC. |
| Full-Time or Auto Decluttered Bank Scale Display | ✓ | | Automatically returns to Bank Scale when decelerating to Hover Mode |
| Basic Mode | ✓ | ✓ | |

**Table 5-7: PFD Declutter Options and Features**

| Declutter Options | Configuration | | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Tapes | Basic | |
| Mini-Map | ✓ | ✓ | Mutually exclusive with ANLG AGL, and MINI TRFC |
| Traffic Thumbnail | ✓ | ✓ | Mutually exclusive with ANLG AGL, and MINI MAP |
| Skyway Guidance | ✓ | | |
| Airspeed Trend | ✓ | | Feature only |
| Non-TAWS | ✓ | | SVS TAWS is labeled “SVS ADVANCED” when TAWS is not enabled |
| TAWS | ✓ | | |
| Perspective Traffic Depiction | ✓ | | |
| Turn Rate Indication | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Single Cue Flight Director | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Dual Cue Flight Director | ✓ | ✓ | |
| METERS | ✓ | ✓ | |

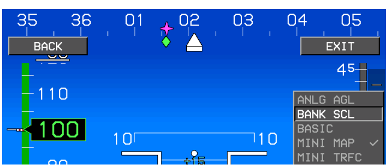
In Basic mode, the pilot may select or deselect the following items:

1) PFD analog AGL indicator
2) Basic mode (switches PFD back to Normal mode)
3) PFD Mini traffic
4) PFD Mini-map
5) Turn indicator
6) FD1
7) FD2
8) Meters
9) Up to 8 declutterable OASIS overlays

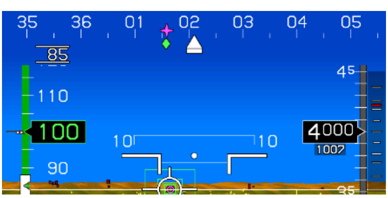
## 5.18.1. PFD Declutter (DCLTR ) Menu (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **MENU (R1)** then **DCLTR (R4)** to enter the Declutter menu.

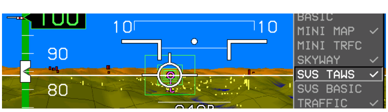

2) Scroll ❶ to **ANLG AGL**, **BANK SCL**, **BASIC**, **MINI MAP**, **MINI TRFC**, **SKYWAY**, **SVS TAWS**, **SVS BASIC**, **TRAFFIC**, **TURN IND**, **FD1**, **FD2**, **METERS**, or **EICAS OVRL** (if applicable) and push to check/uncheck. Scroll ❶ to **DONE** and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.




3) If **BANK SCL** is unchecked, scroll ❶ to **DONE** and push to enter, or press **EXIT (R1).**

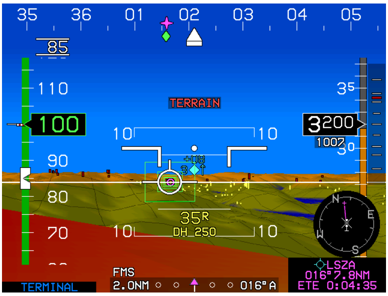



4) Bank scale is removed while in level flight.




5) Scroll ❶ to **SVS TAWS** push to check/uncheck then scroll ❶ to **DONE** and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.


6) If **SVS BASIC** mode is desired, scroll ❶ to **SVS BASIC**, push ❶ to check/uncheck, then scroll ❶ to **DONE** and



push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.

7) In the event of a TAWS warning, the system automatically switches back to **SVS TAWS** mode if terrain were disabled.

## 5.19. PFD Altimeter Menu

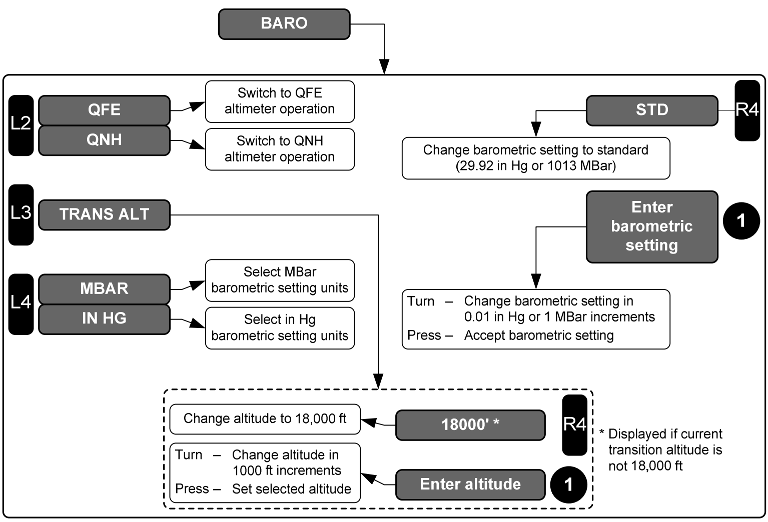



**Figure 5-22: PFD Altimeter Menu**

Press **BARO (R2)** to activate the altimeter menu. Scroll ❶ to increment (CW) or decrement (CCW) the barometric setting and push ❶ to accept the new barometric setting. In addition, the following options are available in the altimeter menu:

1) **QNH /QFE (L2)**: Toggles between QNH and QFE altimeter operation. When in QNH mode, QNE operation automatically is selected when above the transition altitude with a standard altimeter setting. The following definitions:

a) **QFE** : Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold).

b) **QNE** : Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar [hPa]) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

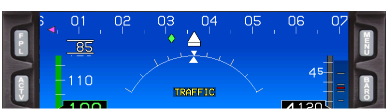
c) **QNH** : Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

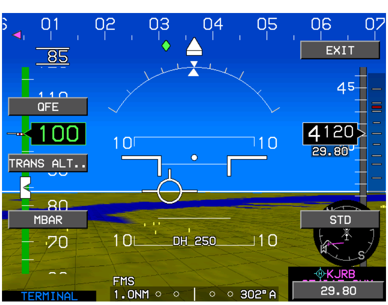
2) **TRANS ALT (L3)**: Changes transition altitude in units of 500 feet. Transition altitude is used to generate barometric setting warnings and to determine QNE /QNH operation. If current transition altitude is not 18,000 feet, **18000' (R4)** is available to set transition altitude as 18,000 feet.

3) **MBAR/IN HG (L4)**: Allows the pilot to select the barometric setting units (inHg or mbar).

4) **STD**  **(R4)**: Sets the barometric setting to standard (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar).

### 5.19.1. PFD Altimeter Menu (Step-By-Step)




1) Press **BARO (R2)** to enter the Altimeter menu.

2) Scroll ❶ to set proper QNH and push to enter.

3) Crosscheck proper QNH under altitude indication.

4) Press **BARO (R2)** again and **STD (R4)** to reset altimeter setting to 29.92 and push ❶ to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.


5) Normally the BARO menu is only used on the PFD, but it can be opened and changes made on the MFD. Press **BARO (R2)** and make changes accordingly.

## 5.20. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS ) Menu

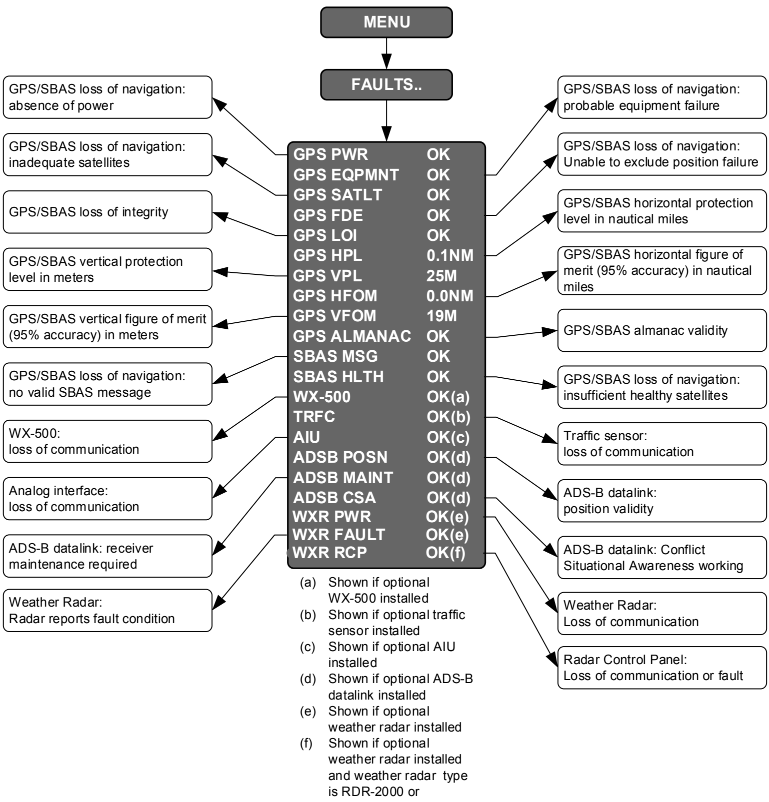



**Figure 5-23: MFD Fault Display Menu**

Upon selecting the MFD faults menu, the status of the following system parameters are displayed:

1) GPS /SBAS loss of navigation due to absence of power (GPS PWR )
2) GPS /SBAS loss of navigation due to probable equipment failure (GPS EQPMNT)
3) GPS /SBAS loss of navigation due to inadequate satellites to compute a position solution (GPS SATLT )
4) GPS /SBAS loss of navigation due to a position failure that cannot be excluded within the time to alert (GPS FDE )
5) GPS /SBAS loss of integrity and loss of navigation due to loss of integrity (GPS LOI )
6) Readout of the current GPS /SBAS horizontal protection level (GPS HPL ) in nautical miles. This value may be used as the estimate of position uncertainty required in RNP airspace.
7) Readout of the current GPS /SBAS vertical protection level (GPS VPL ) in meters.
8) Readout of the current GPS /SBAS horizontal figure of merit (GPS HFOM ) in nautical miles. This value is an indication of the 95% confidence horizontal position accuracy.
9) Readout of the current GPS /SBAS vertical figure of merit (GPS VFOM) in meters. This value is an indication of the 95% confidence vertical position accuracy.
10) An indication of whether the GPS /SBAS receiver has a valid almanac in memory (GPS ALMANAC ).
11) GPS /SBAS loss of navigation due to no valid SBAS message received for four seconds or more (SBAS MSG ).
12) GPS /SBAS loss of navigation due to insufficient number of SBAS HEALTHY satellites (SBAS HLTH ).
    a) An Attitude or Range Fault Condition exists.
    b) A Control Fault Condition exists.
    c) A T/R Fault Condition exists.

13) If the WX-500 option is enabled, loss of communications with the WX-500 (WX-500).

14) If the traffic option is enabled, loss of communications with the traffic sensor (TRFC).

15) If the analog interface option is enabled, loss of communications with the analog interface (AIU).

16) If ADS-B datalink is enabled, an indication of ADS-B position validity (ADSB POSN), an indication of whether maintenance of the ADS-B receiver is required (ADSB MAINT), and an indication of whether the Conflict Situational Awareness algorithm is working (ADSB CSA).

17) If weather radar is enabled, an indication of weather radar power/communication status (WXR PWR X or WXR PWR OK). Weather radar power/communication status failed (WXR PWR X) reflects any one of the following conditions are true:

    a) Loss of weather radar communication, or

    b) Weather radar mode is OFF.

18) If weather radar is enabled, an indication of weather radar fault status (WXR FAULT –, WXR FAULT X, or WXR FAULT OK). When weather radar power/communication status is failed, weather radar fault status indicates determination of weather radar faults is not possible (WXR FAULT –). Weather radar fault status failed (WXR FAULT X) reflects any one of the following conditions are true:

    a) A cooling fault condition exists.

    b) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6 or Collins 800/840, a display or control bus fault condition exists.

    c) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6, Collins 800/840 or Honeywell PRIMUS, a calibration or air data fault condition exists.

    d) An attitude or range fault condition exists.

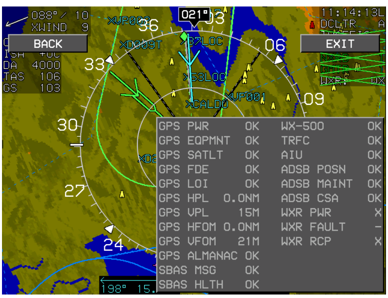
    e) A control fault condition exists.

    f) A T/R fault condition exists.

19) If weather radar is enabled and the weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100, an indication of radar control panel status (WXR RCP X or WXR RCP OK). Radar control panel status failed (WXR RCP X) indicates either loss of communication or a failure status using the same test as invalid data SSM for output data.

### 5.20.1. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS ) Menu (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **MENU (R1)** then **FAULTS (L1)** to view the faults menu.




2) View status of GPS and equipment parameters.

## 5.21. MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Setting (SET FUEL) Menu

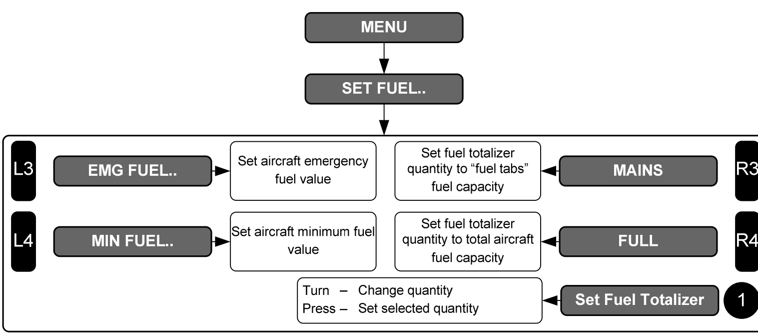



**Figure 5-24: MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Menu**

The fuel quantity setting menu allows the pilot to:

1) Set the fuel totalizer quantity in increments of volume units.

2) If either a fuel totalizer or fuel level sensing (with no unmonitored fuel) is configured in the air craft limits, set emergency and minimum fuel bugs in increments of volume units.

3) If an aircraft fuel caution or aircraft fuel warning is configured in the air craft limits, set emergency and minimum fuel bugs in increments of volume units.

In addition, if a fuel totalizer is configured in the air craft limits, Press **MAINS (R3)** to quickly set the quantity to the "fuel tabs" fuel capacity, and **FULL**  (**R4**) to quickly set the quantity to the total aircraft fuel capacity. Units of measure and fuel flow are shown in the quantity window when available.

## 5.22. MFD Page (PAGE ) Menu

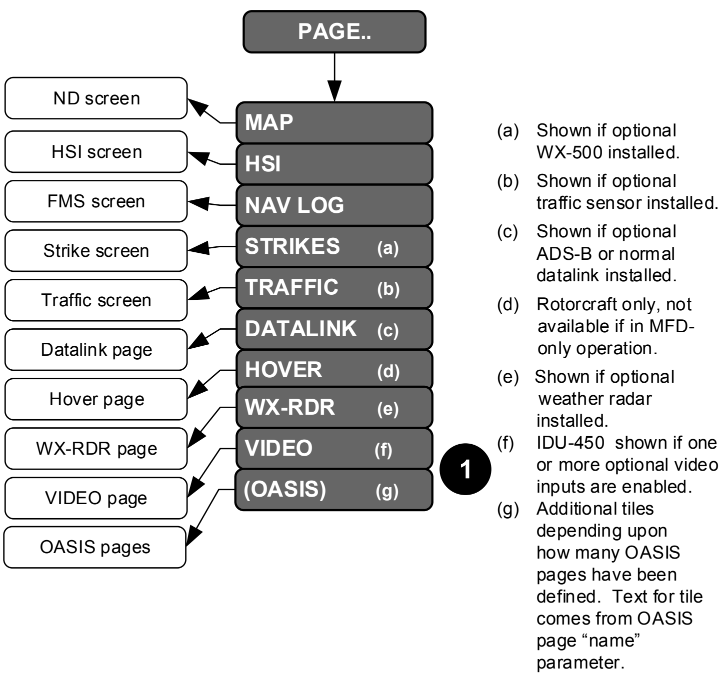



**Figure 5-25: MFD Page (PAGE ) Menu**

**PAGE** menu allows the pilot to select which MFD page to display:

1) **MAP**: Shows the ND page

2) **HSI**: Shows the HSI page

3) **NAV LOG** : Shows the FMS page

4) **STRIKES**: Shows the Strike page (See Strikes Appendix)

5) **TRAFFIC**: Shows the Traffic page (See Traffic Appendix)

6) **DATALINK**: Shows the Datalink page (See Datalink Appendix)

7) **WX-RDR**: Shows the Weather Radar page (See Weather Appendix)

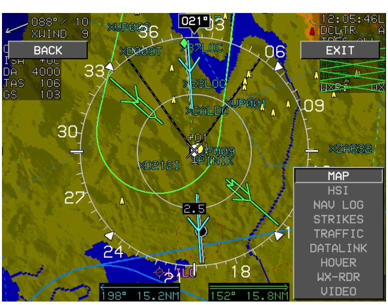
8) **VIDEO**: Shows the Video page (See Video Appendix)

9) **(OASIS)**: Shows OASIS configured page(s)

### 5.22.1. MFD Page (PAGE ) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU (R1)**.


2) Press **PAGE.. (R3)** to view page selection menu.

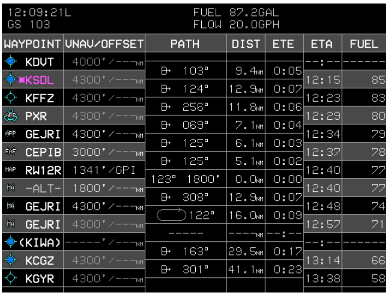



3) Scroll ❶ to **MAP**, **HSI**, **NAV LOG**, **STRIKES**, **TRAFFIC**, **DATALINK**, **HOVER**, **WEATHER RADAR**, or **VIDEO** and push to enter.

## 5.23. MFD NAV Log Page

1) Press **MENU (R1)** then **PAGE.. (R3)** and scroll

❶ to **NAV LOG** and push to enter.




2) **NAV LOG** page cannot be formatted nor used to edit the active flight plan.

## 5.24. MFD ND Page Format (FORMAT ) Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu when in the ND page, an option list appears with the following:

1) **CENTER/ARC** : Toggles between a centered and arced ND display format (if not panning).

2) **HDG UP/N UP** : Toggles between heading up and north up ND display format (if not panning).

3) **PAN ON/PAN OFF** : Toggles ND page pan mode.

4) **SYMB DCLTR** : Activates an option list to choose either automatic or manual navigation symbol declutter. If the pilot chooses manual navigation symbol declutter, a further option list appears to allow the pilot to individually select:

   a) large airports;

   b) IFR airports;

   c) VFR airports;

   d) VORs;

   e) NDBs ;

   f) fixes ;

   g) terminal fixes ; and

   h) user waypoints.

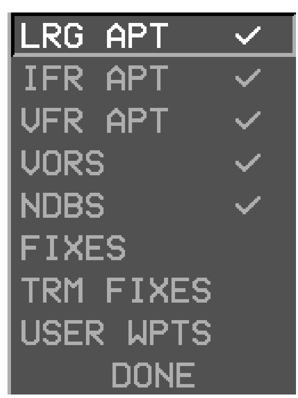



**Figure 5-26: MFD Symbol Declutter**

Turning on VFR airports also turns on large and IFR airports. Turning on IFR airports also turns on large airports. Turning off large airports also turns off IFR and VFR airports. Turning off IFR airports also turns off VFR airports.

5) **FNCT DCLTR** : Activates an option list for the pilot to individually toggle display of:

   a) airspace ;

   b) borders ;

   c) datalinked NEXRAD, graphical METARs (if ADS-B option is enabled);

   d) estimated time of arrival (ETA);

   e) high-altitude airways ;

   f) low-altitude airways ;

   g) current latitude and longitude display of present position;

   h) ADF #1 pointer (if ADF symbology is enabled);

   i) ADF #2 pointer (if dual ADF symbology is enabled);

   j) VOR1 pointer (if VOR symbology is enabled);

   k) VOR2 pointer (if dual VOR symbology is enabled);

   l) Strikes (if WX-500 option is enabled);

   m) Terrain ;

   n) Traffic (if traffic option is enabled); and

   o) Weather radar (if weather radar option is enabled); and

   p) Up to 8 declutterable OASIS overlays.

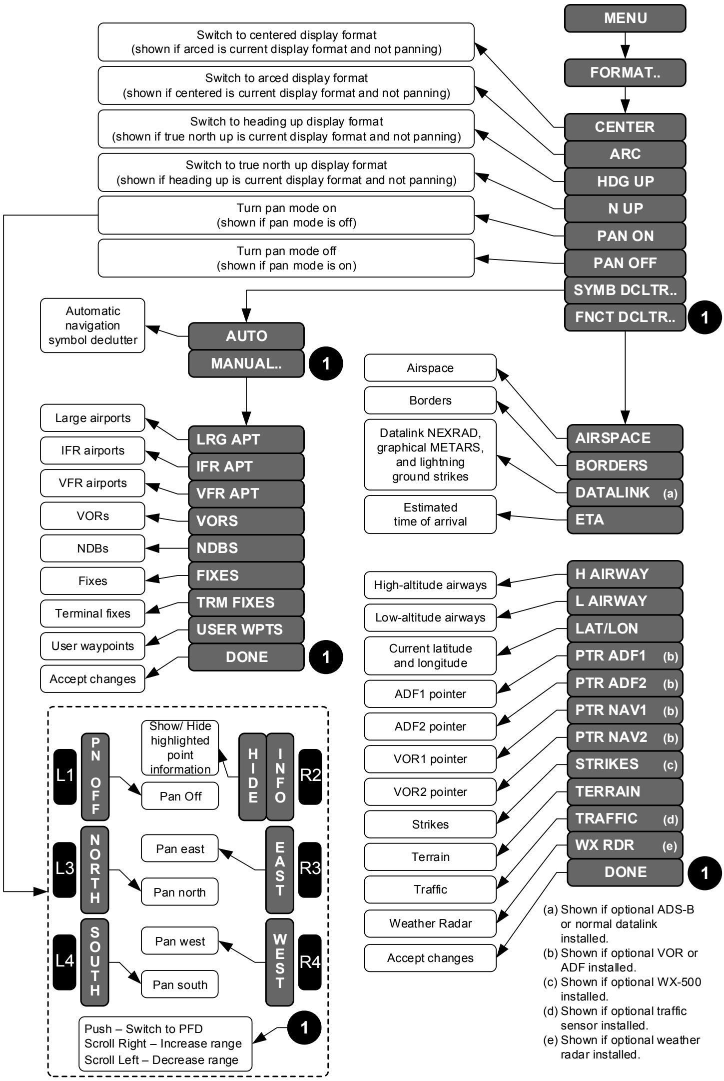



**Figure 5-27: MFD ND Page Format Menu**

## 5.24.1. MFD ND Page Format (FORMAT ) Menu (Step-By-Step)


1) Press **MENU (R1)** and **FORMAT.. (R4)**.


2) Scroll ❶ to **FNCT DCLTR..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **LAT/LON,** scroll ❶ to **DONE** and push to enter, or press **EXIT (R1)**.

## 5.24.2. MFD HSI Page

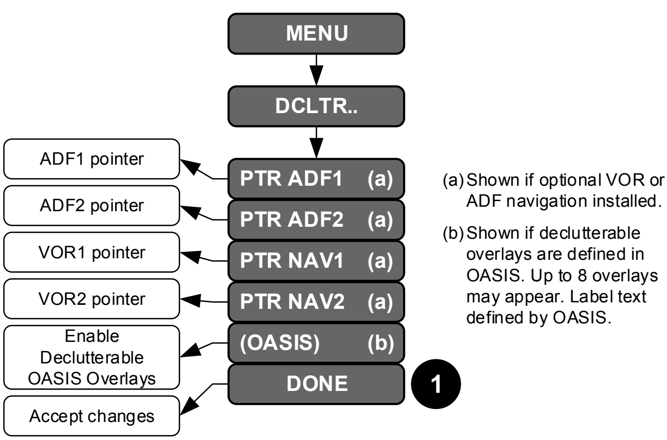
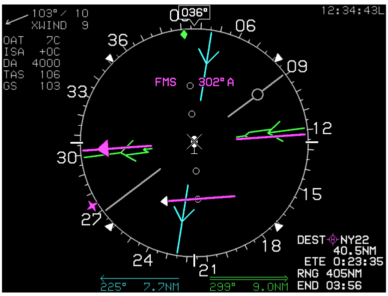



**Figure 5-28: MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu**

## 5.25. MFD HSI Page

1) Press **MENU (R1)** then **PAGE.. (R3)** and scroll ❶ to **HSI** and push to enter.




2) HSI page displayed with full scale deflection and flashing FMS CDI.

## 5.26. MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

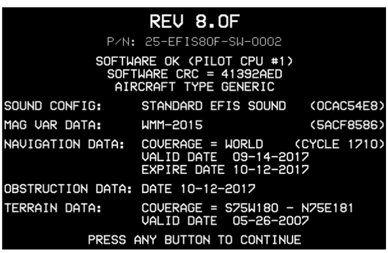
Upon selecting the HSI pointers menu when in the HSI page, an option list appears to allow the pilot to individually select display of:

1) ADF1 pointer (if ADF symbology is enabled);
2) ADF2 pointer (if dual ADF symbology is enabled);
3) VOR1 pointer (if VOR symbology is enabled); and
4) VOR2 pointer (if dual VOR symbology is enabled).
5) Up to 8 declutterable OASIS overlays.

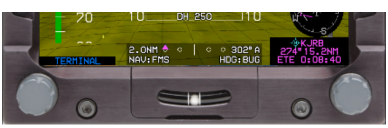
# Section 6 Quick Start Tutorial

Quick Reference Guide (DOC 64-000100-080F)


Begin by reading the EFIS Rotorcraft Flight Manual (RFM) or Rotorcraft Flight Manual Supplement (RFMS).




Power up the EFIS. The system performs a built-in test routine. If all tests pass, the system displays a screen with the database coverage. Press any button or push/scroll ❶ to acknowledge. The system begins a two-minute countdown while awaiting sensor initialization. For flight planning purposes or etc., press any button to override this countdown.



❷ ❶

Right encoder is numbered ❶. The left encoder (❷) is for lighting control only.

## Changing Altimeter Setting on PFD or MFD


Press **BARO (R2)** and scroll ❶ to desired QNH altimeter setting and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.

## Creating Direct to Active Waypoint on PFD or MFD

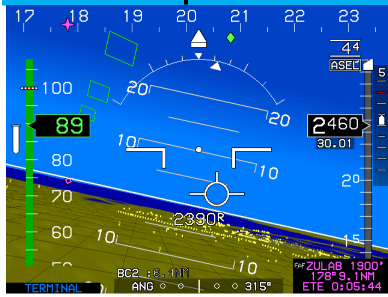

Press **(R4)** for Direct-To menu. If in the air, the nearest airport appears. Scroll ❶ to alpha or numerical character then push to confirm and advance to the next position. Push to enter, until all five spaces have been either entered or viewed.


A direct route to the active waypoint is activated and appears as magenta tethered balloon on the PFD as shown.

## Active Waypoint on PFD


Active waypoint information, including waypoint type and identifier, elevation or crossing altitude, and bearing and distance are displayed below the traffic thumbnail, analog AGL indicator, or mini map as configured.

## Indicated Airspeed on PFD




Indicated airspeed is on the left, altitude is on the right, and heading is across the top. An FMS/VLOC CDI is located on the bottom. The VSI appears on the right side of the altitude tape.

## Menu Options on MFD


On the MFD, press **MENU (R1)** to view soft menu selections for easy access with press of appropriate IDU button.

## Page Options on MFD


On the MFD, press **MENU (R1)** then **PAGE (R3)** to view list of available pages. Scroll ❶ for selection and push to show desired page.

# Flight Plans (Stored Routes)

## Activate Flight Plan on PFD or MFD

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
2) Scroll ➊ to **SELECT..** and push to enter.
3) Scroll ➊ to select desired flight plan to activate.
4) Push ➊ to activate desired flight plan.

## Create Flight Plan on MFD

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
2) Scroll ➊ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.
3) Scroll ➊ to **CREATE FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.
4) Press **ADD (R2)** to create first waypoint with ➊ by entering waypoints from beginning to end, or press **NRST APT (L2)**, **NRST VOR (L3)**, **NRST NDB (L4)**, **NRST FIX (R2)**, or **NRST USR (R3)**, select next waypoint, and push to enter.
5) Press **SAVE (R4)** to save flight plan.
6) Press **EXIT (R1)** to exit flight planner.

# Waypoints

## Create a User Waypoint on PFD or MFD

1) Press **MENU (R1)**.
2) Press **DESIG (L3)**.

## Edit a User Waypoint on MFD

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
2) Scroll ➊ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.
3) Scroll ➊ to **EDIT USER WPT** and push to enter.
4) Scroll ➊ to highlight desired waypoint to edit and push to enter.
5) Edit waypoint. Press **SAVE (R4)** and press **EXIT (R1)** to exit.

## Add Waypoint to an Active Route on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.

2) Scroll ➊ to location on waypoint list where added waypoint is to be inserted above.

3) Press **INSERT (R2)**.

4) Press **NRST APT (L2)**, **NRST VOR (L3)**, **NRST NDB (L4)**, **NRST FIX (R2)**, **NRST USR (R3)**, or **AIRWAY (R4)** (when applicable) and then

   a) Scroll ➊ to make selection and push to enter, or

   b) Use ➊ to enter waypoint identifier and push to enter.

5) Press **SAVE (L1)** to save new active flight plan as another stored flight plan.

## Delete Waypoint from an Active Route on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.

2) Scroll ➊ to highlight the waypoint to delete and press **DELETE (R3)** to prompt **CONFIRM DEL WPT**. If part of a published procedure, press **DELETE (R3)** to prompt **CONFIRM DEL PROC**.

3) Push ➊ to **CONFIRM DEL WPT or CONFIRM DEL PROC** and push to enter.

4) Press **SAVE (L1)** to save new active flight plan as another stored flight plan.

# Omnibearing Selector Function

## Automatic OBS (FMS OBS Only) on PFD or MFD

1) Press **OBS (L4)**.

2) Push ➊ **OBS:MANUAL or AUTO** (as applicable) to enter.

### Manual OBS on PFD or MFD

1) Press **OBS (L4)**.
2) Select desired HSI source, press **NAV VLOC1 (L3)** or **NAV VLOC2 (L4)**.
3) If HSI source is **NAV FMS**, press **OBS MANUAL (R4)** then scroll ❶ to desired OBS value and push to enter, or press **OBS SYNC (R3)** and push to enter.
4) If HSI source is **NAV VLOC1 (L3)** or **NAV VLOC2 (L4)** scroll ❶ to desired course (OBS:XXX° (XXX°)) and push to enter.

## Approaches/Track

### Select a VFR Approach on PFD or MFD

(The active flight plan must contain an eligible airport for runway selection and VFR approach creation.)

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
2) Scroll ❶ to highlight the desired airport or user waypoint, push to enter.
3) Scroll ❶ to highlight **VFR APPR..** and push to enter.
4) Scroll ❶ to select desired runway and push to enter.

### Change Runway during VFR Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
2) Scroll ❶ to highlight the following and push to enter:
    a) Eligible airport
    b) **VFR APPR..**
    c) Desired runway

(This will delete the previous VFR approach and create a new VFR approach to the selected runway.)

## Select an IFR Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
2) Scroll ➊ to the desired eligible airport and push to enter.
3) Scroll ➊ to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.
4) Scroll ➊ to desired approach and push to enter.
5) Scroll ➊ to desired transition and push to enter.
6) Scroll ➊ to desired runway and push to enter.

## Change Runway on IFR Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
2) Scroll ➊ to destination airport and push to enter.
3) Select **APPR:** Scroll ➊ to desired approach. Push to enter.
4) Select **TRANS:** Scroll ➊ to desired transition. Push to enter.
5) Select **RW:** Scroll ➊ to desired runway. Push to enter.

(This will delete the previous IFR approach and create a new IFR approach to the selected runway.)

## Create NRST ILS Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press **NRST (R3)**.
2) Scroll ➊ to ILS.. and push to enter.
3) Scroll ➊ to desired airport beginning with ILS and push to enter.
4) Push ➊ to **CONFIRM ACTIVATE ILS**.

## Manual Leg Management on PFD


A manual termination leg was created within a procedure and waypoint sequencing is suspended.

To resume normal waypoint sequencing, press **RESUME (L2)**.

# XFILL SYNC Operation

## XFILL Sync Operation on PFD

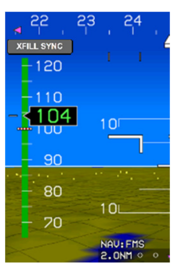
(Crossfill is the normal default mode of operation.)

1) During crossfill inhibited operation, XFILL INHBT appears on the PFD in the lower left corner.

2) When the pilot and co-pilot systems are not synchronized, XFILL ARM appears in lower left corner of the PFD.

3) When the pilot and co-pilot systems are not synchronized, press **MENU (R1)** then **XFILL SYNC (L1)** to synchronize the pilot and co-pilot active flight plan parameters from the system where the button press occurred.





# Section 7 IFR Procedures

## 7.1. Active Flight Plan

Upon activation of the active flight plan menu, the EFIS checks for an active waypoint. If there is no active waypoint, **NO ACTIVE WPT** is issued. Otherwise, a nav log of waypoints in the active flight plan is presented with the following:

1) Waypoint identifier and characterization (default, overfly [**OF**], or no radius [**0R**])
2) Symbol designating waypoint type and what type of procedure (if any) the waypoint is associated
3) VNAV altitudes and offsets associated with each waypoint
4) Information related to flight plan path between each waypoint

In the case of an approach with a final approach segment data block, the VNAV offset readout associated with the missed approach point (MAP) is "GPI" to designate distance to the glidepath intercept point. When courses are presented as part of the path information, they are displayed referenced to magnetic north with the degree (°) symbol.

VNAV altitudes and offsets from the navigation database or have been manually entered are white, and those computed automatically are gray. The active waypoint is designated by an asterisk and is magenta but turns amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

A suppressed waypoint (designated by brackets) is an airport associated with an IFR or VFR approach procedure. After an approach procedure is activated, the associated airport is no longer part of the active flight plan for guidance purposes. However, the associated airport is still shown in the nav log for it to be highlighted for information or to activate other procedures to the airport. Since only one approach may be active at any given time, only one waypoint may be suppressed at any given time.

A skipped waypoint is a waypoint associated with a dynamic termination leg with a zero length. These are either:

1) An altitude termination leg when current aircraft altitude is above the termination altitude; or

2) System-created (i.e., not NavData® specified) intercept to a course to a fix leg where there is insufficient distance to calculate an intercept heading.

To add a waypoint to the end of the active flight plan, scroll through each waypoint of the flight plan to one position past the end. If not, the application makes the selected waypoint active. Otherwise, an option list is presented.

Upon selection of a waypoint from the selection list, the EFIS checks whether the selected waypoint meets the criteria for waypoint activation, manual VNAV parameter entry, custom holding pattern entry, manual overfly characterization, VFR approach entry, IFR approach entry, STAR entry, or DP entry. If it does, an option list is presented as follows:

1) **WAYPOINT**: If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped, nor a manual termination, make the selected waypoint the active waypoint.

2) **VNAV**: If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped, a manual termination, part of an IFR approach, nor part of a VFR approach, enter a manual VNAV altitude and offset for the selected waypoint. This level includes tiles to synchronize the VNAV altitude to current altitude and to remove the manual VNAV altitude and offset entry. VNAV altitudes are settable in increments of 100 feet, and offsets are settable in increments of 1NM.

3) **HOLD**: If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped, a manual termination, part of an IFR approach after the FAF/FAWP, part of a VFR approach, a holding waypoint, nor a DP anchor waypoint, enter a manual holding pattern at the selected waypoint. Define the course, turn direction (left or right), and leg length (expressed as either distance or time) for the manual holding pattern. Holding pattern course is settable in increments of 1° and leg length is settable in increments of 1NM (1-25NM) or a tenth of a minute (0.5-5.0 MIN).

4) **OFLY/AUTO**: If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped nor a manual termination, change the waypoint’s overfly characterization. The choices are:

    a) **AUTO**: Reset automatic overfly characterization by FMS.

b) **OVERFLY**: Force the overfly characterization to be an overfly adjust-exit waypoint and force the inbound course to go directly to the waypoint regardless of the amount of course change required.

c) **NO RADIUS**: Force the turn radius at the waypoint to be zero. This forces the inbound course and outbound course to go directly to and from the waypoint regardless of the amount of course change required.

**NOTE:**

It is not possible to track a “NO RADIUS” path perfectly, but the FMS path guidance quickly recaptures the outbound course after resuming automatic waypoint sequencing. Designating a waypoint as a “NO RADIUS” waypoint affects the turn radius used to calculate procedure turn and holding pattern leg paths.

5) **VFR APP**: If the selected waypoint is a user waypoint with an approach bearing, a VFR approach to the user waypoint based upon the approach bearing is created, and the user waypoint is suppressed. If the selected waypoint is a VFR airport or an IFR airport with surveyed runways, the pilot is presented with a list of runways. After selecting a runway, a VFR approach to the runway is created, and the airport waypoint is suppressed. Activating a VFR approach deletes any pre-existing IFR or VFR approaches. If a heading bug is not already active, activating a VFR approach activates the heading bug on current aircraft heading and is used to define the course intercept angle.

6) **IFR APP**: If selected waypoint is an airport with an IFR approach, the pilot is presented with a list of available approaches (including, if applicable, the five-digit channel number, followed by a list of available transitions, if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways at the airport). After selection, the appropriate IFR approach is created, and the airport waypoint is suppressed. Activating an IFR approach deletes any pre-existing IFR or VFR approaches. If there is a pre-existing STAR to the airport, the IFR approach waypoints are inserted after the STAR waypoints. If a heading bug is not active and the activated transition is “Vectors to Final,” activating an IFR approach activates the heading bug on current aircraft heading for purposes of defining the course intercept angle.

7) **STAR**: If the selected waypoint is an airport with a STAR, the pilot is presented with a list of available STARs, followed by a list of available transitions (if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways at the airport). After selection, the appropriate STAR is created. Activating a STAR deletes any pre-existing STAR. If there is a pre-existing approach (IFR or VFR) to the airport, the STAR waypoints are inserted prior to the approach waypoints.

8) **DP**: If the selected waypoint is an airport with a DP, the pilot is presented with a list of DPs, followed by a list of available transitions (if there are more than one) and runways (if there are surveyed runways at the airport and more than one runway is authorized for the DP). After selection, the appropriate DP is created, and upon activation, deletes any pre-existing DPs.

## 7.2. IFR Procedures

Pilots operating in a radar environment are expected to associate departure headings or an RNAV departure advisory with vectors or the flight path to their planned route or flight. There are two types of departure procedures (DP); obstacle departure procedures (ODP) are printed either textually or graphically, and standard instrument departure procedures (SID) are always printed graphically. All DPs, either textual or graphic, may be designed using either conventional or RNAV criteria. RNAV procedures have RNAV printed in the title.

ODPs are not found in the navigation database, and therefore the climb angle found in the PFD BUGS menu should be set to comply with the steeper than normal climb gradient during the departure until established on the enroute structure. ODPs are recommended for obstruction clearance and may be flown without ATC clearance, unless an alternate departure procedure (SID or radar vector) has been specifically assigned by ATC.

Approach minima are never coded in NavData®. On some approaches, the altitude coded at the MAP for a non-precision approach coincides with an MDA (normally where the final approach course does not align with the runway), but more often the coded altitude is some height above the threshold.

## 7.3. Overview of Procedures and Instrument Approaches

This Genesys Aerosystems EFIS provides 3-D GPS precision and non-precision instrument approach guidance using a system integral TSO C146c BETA 3 GPS receiver with GPS and augmented GPS with Satellite Based Augmentation System (SBAS) commonly referred to as WAAS (Wide Area Augmentation System). In order to support full integration of RNAV procedures into the National Airspace System (NAS), a charting format for instrument approach procedures (IAPs) designed to avoid confusion and duplication of instrument approach charts.

Use of this GPS receiver provides a level of certified service supporting RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV, LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LPV lines of minima within system coverage. Some locations close to the edge of the coverage may have lower availability of vertical guidance.

Approach with vertical guidance (APV) procedures are defined in ICAO Annex 6 and include approaches such as the LNAV/VNAV procedures presently being flown with barometric vertical navigation (BARO-VNAV). These approaches provide vertical guidance but do not meet the more stringent standards of a precision approach. With the WAAS BETA 3 GPS receiver and updatable navigation database in this system, these approaches may be flown using an electronic glidepath, which eliminates errors introduced by using barometric altimetry.

In addition to LNAV/VNAV procedures, APV takes advantage of the high accuracy guidance and increased integrity provided by GBS/SBAS. This SBAS (TEROS/ICAO) generated angular guidance allows use of the same TERPS approach criteria for ILS approaches. The resulting approach procedure minima, localizer performance with vertical guidance (LPV), have a decision altitude as low as 200 feet height above touchdown (EASA OPS LPV 250 ft.) with visibility minimums as low as ½ mile (providing the terrain and airport infrastructure and regulations support the lowest minima criteria.)

Another non-precision GPS/SBAS approach is certified as a localizer performance (LP) approach where terrain or obstructions prohibit the certification of the LPV vertically guided approach. This approach takes advantage of the angular lateral guidance and smaller position errors (provided by GPS/SBAS) to provide a lateral only procedure similar to an ILS localizer. LP procedures may provide lower minima than a LNAV procedure due to the narrower obstacle clearance surface. In the LP approach, vertical guidance is for information only and is based on SBAS or BARO information.

The Genesys Aerosystems EFIS guides the pilot through every step of the approach procedure with Highway in the Sky (HITS) 3-D symbology. The system defines a desired flight path based upon the active flight plan. The current position of the aircraft is determined relative to the desired path in order to determine lateral deviation for display on the GPS/SBAS CDI and VDI. The EFIS auto-sequences from one waypoint to the next in accordance with the flight plan along the flight path with the following exceptions:

1) Pilot has selected a manual GPS/SBAS OBS (SUSPEND shown).
2) Active waypoint is the missed approach waypoint, and the missed approach procedure has not been armed (**ARM**) or initiated (**MISS**) (SUSPEND shown).
3) Aircraft is in a published or manually created holding pattern, and the pilot has not chosen to continue (**CONT**) out of the holding pattern (SUSPEND shown).
4) Active waypoint is the last waypoint of the active flight plan (no flag shown).
5) Leg following active waypoint is a manual termination leg, and the pilot has not chosen to resume (**RESUME**) to the waypoint following the manual termination (SUSPEND shown).

The linear vertical scale limits of the VDI for LNAV/VNAV and LPV approaches are shown in Figure 7-1.

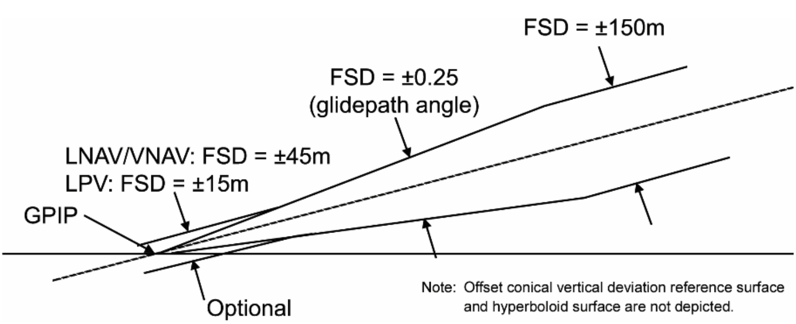



**Figure 7-1: Vertical Deviation Indicator Linear Deviation**

### 7.3.1. Highway in the Sky (Skyway)

When not decluttered, the PFD displays the active navigation route or manual OBS course in a 3-D manner with a series of skyway boxes, which overlay the flight plan route at a desired altitude and provide lateral and vertical guidance. Skyway boxes conform to the VNAV requirements of GPS/SBAS receiver requirements (TSO-C-146C). The top and bottom of the boxes are parallel to the horizon on straight leg segments and dynamically tilt with respect to the horizon on turning leg segments based on leg segment turn radius and groundspeed.

When the active route is in view, up to five boxes are shown with the dimensions being a constant 400 feet wide (±200 feet from the desired lateral path) by 320 feet tall (±160 feet from the desired vertical path) spaced horizontally 2000 feet. Skyway boxes are drawn using the hidden surface removal techniques of the terrain and obstruction rendering, so a skyway box behind terrain appears to be so. Skyway boxes disappear in basic mode and unusual attitude mode. In reversionary mode 1 (GPS failure), skyway boxes disappear after one minute to indicate degraded navigation performance.

**Table 7-1: Highway in the Sky Configuration**

| **Type HITS Lines** | **Fully Integrated Autopilot** | **Partially Integrated Analog Autopilot**<br><br>(HDG Mode and/or NAV/APR mode discrete inputs) | **Un-Integrated Autopilot or No Autopilot** |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Dashed** | Not coupled to skyway | | |
| **Solid** | Coupled to Skyway | Coupled to skyway. Autopilot is either in HDG mode with LNAV heading/roll-steering sub-mode engaged or in NAV/APR mode with the FMS, FMS1, or FMS2 as the selected navigation source. | Always Solid |

Skyway box altitude is controlled by VNAV altitude, aircraft altitude, aircraft climb performance, and climb/descent angle setting. If no

VNAV altitude is set, the skyway boxes describe the desired lateral flight path of the aircraft at the aircraft's current altitude.

With a VNAV altitude set, the boxes provide both lateral and vertical guidance. Climb and descent angle settings are controlled individually with a resolution of 0.1° on the PFD. VNAV is guided by VNAV waypoints determined by VNAV altitude and VNAV offset from flight plan waypoints. There are two sources for VNAV altitudes, the navigation database and manual input through the ACTV menu which are then automatically computed by the system using “look-ahead” rules. When “look-ahead” finds a further VNAV altitude constraint above the previous VNAV altitude constraint (i.e., climb commanded), an automatic VNAV altitude is continuously calculated for the waypoint based upon an immediate climb to the altitude constraint at the higher of actual climb angle or the climb angle setting (dynamic climb angle). When “look-ahead” finds a further VNAV altitude constraint below the previous VNAV altitude constraint (i.e., descent commanded), an automatic VNAV altitude is calculated for the waypoint based upon a descent to reach the VNAV altitude constraint at the associated waypoint using the descent angle setting. If no further VNAV altitude constraints are found, the automatic VNAV altitude is set to the last valid VNAV altitude constraint.

When a VNAV climb is desired, the boxes are drawn at a vertical position the higher of: (a) the dynamic climb angle emanating from the aircraft's present position (aircraft-referenced); (b) the dynamic climb angle emanating from the next waypoint VNAV altitude (geo-referenced forward); or (c) the climb angle setting emanating from the previous waypoint VNAV altitude (geo-referenced backward). The geo-referenced backward calculation is only considered when the current leg is part of a procedure and is designed to provide pilot awareness, if a specified climb gradient is not being met. Once the boxes intercept the VNAV altitude, further boxes are drawn with a zero angle to show a level off followed by a level flight segment as an anticipatory cue for planning. Climb guidance is depicted in Figure 7-2, Figure 7-3, and Figure 7-4.

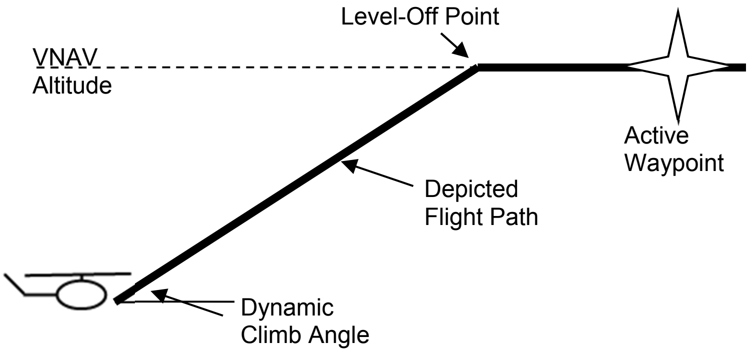



**Figure 7-2: Highway in the Sky (Aircraft Referenced)**

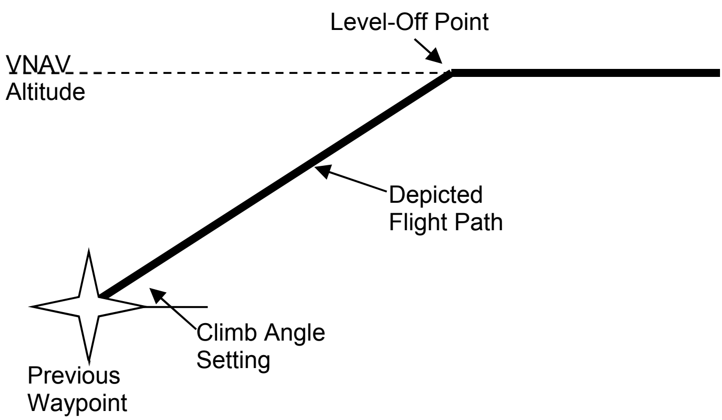



**Figure 7-3: Highway in the Sky (Geo-Referenced Backward)**

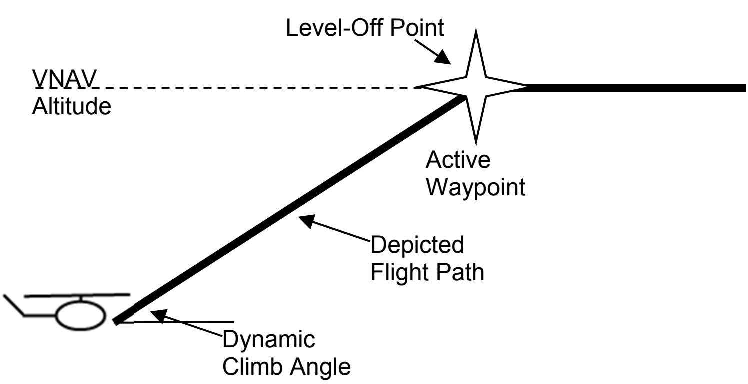



**Figure 7-4: Highway in the Sky (Geo-Referenced Forward)**

When a VNAV descent is desired, boxes are drawn with a zero angle until reaching a descent point. Further boxes are drawn downward at an angle corresponding to the descent angle setting. The descent point is defined by the intercept of a line emanating upward from the subsequent VNAV waypoint at the descent angle setting and a line representing level flight at the previous VNAV altitude. On the final approach segment of an IFR approach, descent angle and VNAV waypoint are defined as follows.

**Table 7-2: Final Segment of IFR Approach, Descent Angle and VNAV Waypoint**

| Condition | VNAV Waypoint | Descent Angle |
|---|---|---|
| IFR approach with valid final approach segment data block | Glidepath intercept point (GPIP) as defined in final approach segment data block | Descent angle as defined in final approach segment data block |
| No or invalid final approach segment data block<br><br>No intermediate waypoints exist between FAF and MAP. | Missed approach point location | Straight line from FAF to MAP location and altitudes. |
| No or invalid Final Approach Segment data block<br><br>Intermediate waypoints exist between FAF and MAP. | Missed approach point location | Steepest descent angle based upon straight lines from the FAF and subsequent intermediate waypoints to MAP location and altitudes. |

On the final approach segment of a VFR approach procedure, the higher of the descent angle setting or 3° is used.

Because five boxes are shown, the descent point depiction is an anticipatory cue. Figure 7-5 depicts descent guidance and creates an easily understood, yet safe, VNAV paradigm meeting the VNAV requirements current guidance. Simplicity is a primary objective.

Further, the paradigm is biased towards keeping the aircraft at the highest altitude possible for the longest period of time, an important safety benefit for operators of single-engine aircraft. The climb paradigm compensates for an aircraft's ability to climb more steeply than specified and warns of being below a desired climb gradient when the aircraft is unable to meet the specified climb angle. The descent paradigm encourages flying stabilized approaches.

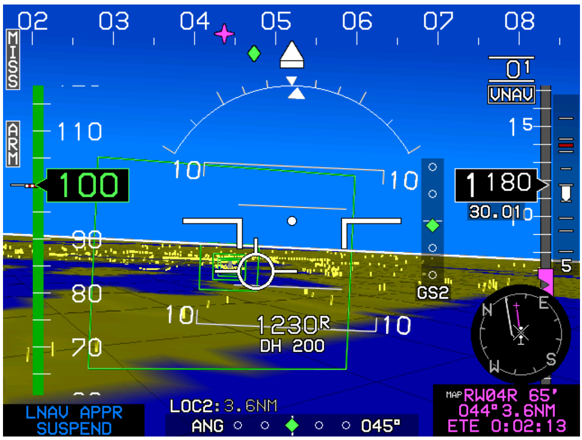



**Figure 7-5: Highway in the Sky Final Approach Segments**

### 7.3.2. Waypoint Sequencing

Where automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended due to reasons 4 or 5 in § 7.3, the EFIS automatically switches from TO operation to FROM operation when appropriate. If not suspended, automatic waypoint sequencing occurs upon the following conditions:

1) Bearing to the transition point (turn bisector for fly-by waypoint, active waypoint for fly-over waypoint) is more than 90° from the current course (i.e., transition from “TO” to “FROM” operation);

2) Aircraft location is within two turn diameters (based upon current true airspeed and 15° angle of bank) of the active waypoint location; and

3) Aircraft heading is within 90° of the current course (i.e., generally pointed in the correct direction).

The desired flight path is created from a sequence of straight, left turning, and right turning leg segments designed to provide smooth skyway, GPS/SBAS CDI, and lateral autopilot guidance. Each leg between waypoints is composed of up to nine segments. Radii for turning segments (other than DME arc or radius to a fix segments) are calculated with the parameter speed determined as follows:

1) If the waypoint is part of a DP and within 30 NM of the departure runway, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.

2) If the waypoint is part of a STAR and within 30 NM of the arrival runway, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.

3) If the waypoint is part of an IAP or VFR approach procedure, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.

4) If the waypoint is part of a holding pattern, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.

5) Otherwise, speed is the current true airspeed or preprogrammed procedure speed, whichever is higher.

In all cases, if NavData® derived speed limit is associated with the waypoint, speed is the lower of the NavData® derived speed limit or the speed determined above.

### 7.3.3. Fly-Over Waypoints

To create the desired flight path, each waypoint is designated as a fly-by or a fly-over waypoint. Waypoints are further subdivided into waypoints with a defined entry heading and waypoints with a defined exit heading. Waypoint auto-sequencing for fly-by waypoints occurs at the bisector of the turn. Waypoint auto-sequencing for fly-over waypoints occurs over the waypoint.

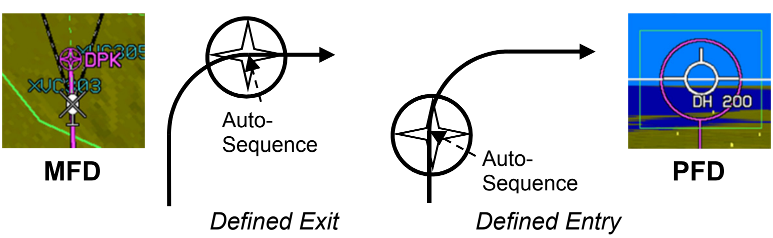



**Figure 7-6: Fly-Over Waypoints**

The following waypoints are fly-over with defined entry heading:

1) Exit from holding pattern and procedure turn;

2) Entry into holding pattern;

3) Missed approach point;

4) Phantom waypoint (waypoint created by either inserting a waypoint into the active flight plan or performing the Direct-To function within the active flight plan -- avoids S-turns);

5) Last waypoint;

6) Start waypoint (waypoint created by creating a new active flight plan with the Direct-To function – avoids S-turns);

7) Reference (takeoff runway end) waypoint of a DP;

8) Waypoint leading into discontinuity; and

9) Altitude, DME, or radial termination legs (ARINC 424 path types CA, FA, VA, CR, VR, CD, FD, and VD).

10) Waypoints marked as overfly in the navigation database.

The definitions of leg type designators are as follows.

**Table 7-3: RNAV Path Terminator Leg Type**

| **Path** | **Designator** | | **Terminator** |
|---|---|---|---|
| Constant DME arc | A | A | Altitude |
| Course to | C | C | Distance |
| Direct Track | D | D | DME Distance |
| Course from a Fix to | F | F | Fix |
| Holding Pattern | H | I | Next Leg |
| Initial | I | M | Manual Termination |
| Constant Radius | R | R | Radial Termination |
| Track Between | T | | |
| Heading To | V | | |
| Examples: **CF**= Course to Fix, and **FM**= Course from a Fix to a Manual Termination, etc. | | | |

### 7.3.4. Fly-By Waypoints

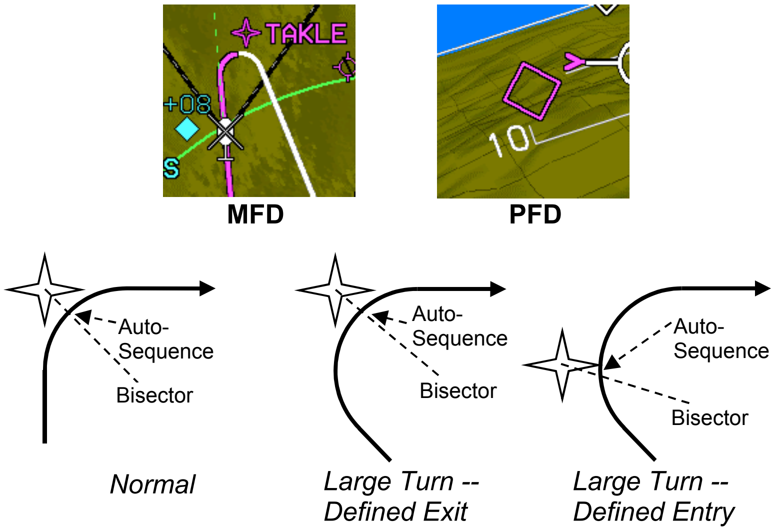



**Figure 7-7: Fly-By Waypoints**

The following waypoints are fly-over with defined exit heading:

1) Entry into procedure turn; and

2) Waypoint exiting a discontinuity with the exception of phantom waypoints or DP reference waypoints;

3) First waypoint with the exception of start waypoints or DP reference waypoints;

4) Course to a fix legs that are not to the FAF/FAWP are fly-by with defined entry heading. All other waypoints are fly-by with the entry adjusted and have a defined exit heading.

**NOTE:**

Entry adjustments should be expected anytime a turn exceeds 120º. Turns greater than 120º should not be used in conjunction with RNP routes. (RNP standards specifically exclude such turns from RNP requirements.)

Leg segments for paths are constructed by the EFIS as follows.

**Table 7-4: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by the EFIS**

| Path Type | Entry Waypoint | Exit Waypoint | # of Segments and Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| Straight Leg, DME Arc, or Radius to a Fix | Fly-By | Fly-By | 2nd half of fly-by turn at entry waypoint.<br>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns.<br>1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint. |
| | Fly-By | Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading | 2nd half of fly-by turn at entry waypoint.<br>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns.<br>Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint. |
| | Fly-By | Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading | 2nd half of fly-by turn at entry waypoint.<br>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry turn to exit waypoint. |
| | Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading | Fly-By | WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit turn.<br>1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint. |
| | Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading | Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading | WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit turn.<br>Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint. |
| | Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading | Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading | WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit waypoint. |
| | Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading | Fly-By | Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint. |

| Table 7-4: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by the EFIS | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Path Type** | **Entry Waypoint** | **Exit Waypoint** | **# of Segments and Description** |
| | | | WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns.<br>1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint. |
| | Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading | Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading | Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint.<br>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns.<br>Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint. |
| | Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading | Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading | Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint.<br>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry turn to exit waypoint. |
| Proce-dure Turn | Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading | Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading | WGS-84 geodesic path from entry waypoint on outbound heading for 30 seconds.<br>Turn to procedure turn heading (45°).<br>Outbound on procedure turn heading for 72 seconds.<br>Turn to inbound heading (135°).<br>WGS-84 geodesic path to exit waypoint. Entry waypoint and exit waypoint are same point.<br>Turn to proper entry procedure heading. This heading varies. For a parallel entry, it is 180° from |

| Table 7-4: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by the EFIS | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Path Type** | **Entry Waypoint** | **Exit Waypoint** | **# of Segments and Description** |
| | | | the holding course. For direct and teardrop entries, it is the heading required to get to entry of inbound turn. |
| Holding Pattern | Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading | Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading | WGS-84 geodesic path to entry of inbound turn.<br>Inbound turn. Degree of turn varies depending upon entry procedure and heading.<br>WGS-84 geodesic path to holding fix for direct and teardrop entries. WGS-84 geodesic path to entry of turn to holding pattern heading for parallel entries.<br>Turn to holding pattern heading for parallel entries. This leg is not used for direct and teardrop entries.<br>Turn to holding pattern outbound leg (180°).<br>Holding pattern outbound leg (length based upon either time or distance as specified by navigation database).<br>Turn to holding pattern inbound leg (180°).<br>Holding pattern inbound leg (length based upon either time or distance as specified by navigation database). |

### 7.3.5. Direct-To

If the EFIS generates a WGS-84 geodesic path to a designated “To” fix, the aircraft captures this path without “S-turning” or undue delay. Where the selected “To” fix is in the active flight plan, the required transition is created as follows:

1) A phantom waypoint is created at the current aircraft location.

2) Leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated as a discontinuity.

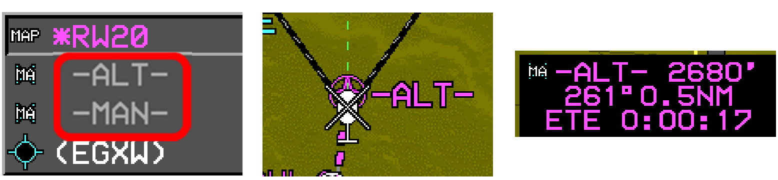
3) Phantom waypoint is designated as a fly-over defined entry heading waypoint where the entry heading is current aircraft track.

Where the selected “To” fix is not in the active flight plan, the required transition is created as follows:

1) A new active flight plan is created from “Start” (current aircraft location) to the “To” fix.

2) “Start” waypoint is designated as a fly-over defined entry heading waypoint where the entry heading is current aircraft track.

#### 7.3.5.1. Direct-To Unnamed Waypoints inside Procedures




Active Flight Plan | MFD Navigation Display | PFD Waypoint information

**Figure 7-8: Unnamed Waypoints**

The following identifiers are implemented for unnamed waypoints inside a published procedure and are found on the ND or inside the active flight plan.

1) **-ALT-** for altitude terminations

2) **-DIR-** for waypoints that begin a Direct-To leg

3) **-DME-** for distance or DME terminations

4) **-INT-** for intercept terminations

5) **-RAD-** for radial terminations

6) **-MAN-** for manual terminations

## 7.4. Discontinuities

Where the EFIS is unable to construct a smooth flight path as described above due to active flight plan waypoint spacing (i.e., spacing too close for turn radius), a discontinuity is placed between the waypoints. When a discontinuity exists, no path nor skyway is drawn between the waypoints. The pilot cannot activate the waypoint exiting the discontinuity, as it is not possible to provide path guidance to this waypoint. Attempts to activate the waypoint exiting the discontinuity activates the next waypoint or, if there is no next waypoint (i.e., end of active flight plan), activation of the waypoint leading into the discontinuity.

### 7.4.1. Manual Termination Legs

Manual termination legs (ARINC 424 path types FM and VM) are a special case and are handled as follows:

1) The manual termination leg is a discontinuity;

2) Waypoint sequencing is suspended on the leg prior to the manual termination leg;

3) Once the CDI transitions to FROM operation, **RESUME (L2)** appears;

4) When ready to end manual navigation and resume a path to the waypoint following the manual termination leg, press **RESUME (L2)** to create and activate a Direct-To path to the waypoint.

**NOTE:**

If the manual termination leg is not followed by another waypoint (other than a suppressed waypoint), **RESUME (L2)** does not appear, because there would be no waypoint-to-waypoint sequencing to resume.

## 7.5. Magnetic Course

The source of magnetic variation used for paths defined using magnetic course is in accordance with the following:

1) If the leg is part of a database terminal area procedure and the magnetic variation is specified by the State for the procedure, the magnetic variation to be used is the value specified.

2) If the leg is not part of a procedure and the active fix is a VOR, the magnetic variation to be used is the published station declination for the VOR.

3) If the leg is not part of a procedure and the terminating fix is not a VOR, the magnetic variation to be used is defined by the system using an internal model.

The EFIS is capable of computing magnetic variation at any location within the region where flight operations may be conducted using magnetic north reference. The assigned magnetic variation is calculated using the NIMA GEOMAG algorithm and World Magnetic Model appropriate to the five-year cycle in a MAGVAR database.

### 7.5.1. AHRS Modes for Heading Source

**AHRS Slaved—EFIS Magnetic North**: Standard mode of operation. Everything displayed relative to magnetic north drift free.

**AHRS Slaved—EFIS True North**: Everything is displayed relative to true north with drift free heading. The preferred way to operate in areas where navigation is done relative to true north. (See Section 9 Appendix for limitations on Earth's magnetic flux horizontal field)

**AHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS Magnetic North**: Use this mode when operating around significant magnetic disturbances in areas where navigation is done relative to magnetic north. Ensure the compass rose is slewed to a magnetic north value.

**AHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS True North:** Method of operation in high-latitude areas where navigation is accomplished relative to true north. Heading is not drift free and requires periodic correction. This mode may also be used when operating around significant magnetic disturbances in areas where navigation is done relative to true north. Ensure the compass rose is slewed to a true north value.

### 7.5.2. GPS Altitude

WGS-84 ellipsoid altitude received from the GPS/SBAS is converted to geodetic (MSL) altitude using the EGM 2008 geoidal database, which is revised on a 12-year cycle.

### 7.5.3. Dead Reckoning

The EFIS has dead reckoning capability and is active whenever a valid position is not being sent by the GPS/SBAS sensor. The EFIS projects the last known GPS/SBAS position forward using TAS and heading corrected for last known wind as it continues to navigate using this position and the active flight plan. The system provides the capability to determine bearing to an airport based upon the dead reckoning position.

### 7.5.4. Parallel Offsets

The parallel offset is a route parallel to, but offset from, the original active route. The basis of the offset path is the original flight plan leg(s) and one or more offset reference points as computed by the EFIS. The computed offset reference points are located so that they lie on the intersection of lines drawn parallel to the host route at the desired offset distance and the line that bisects the track change angle. Except in the case where the parallel offset ends, the offset reference point is located abeam of the original flight plan waypoint at the offset distance.

The parallel offset function does not propagate through route discontinuities, unreasonable path geometries as follows:

1) Legs that are parts of approach procedures (IFR and VFR); or

2) Legs with complex geometries or that begin or end with dynamically terminations. (ARINC 424 path types other than CF, DF, or TF or any leg where the starting waypoint is not a fixed position); or

3) Legs that begin at an aircraft starting position (reference waypoint in a DP or start/phantom waypoints created by the Direct-To function.

Parallel offset function does not propagate through the following:

1) Any waypoint at the beginning or end of a route discontinuity; or

2) Any waypoint at the beginning or end of a prohibited leg type; or

3) A waypoint with an unreasonable path geometry, defined as a turn greater than 120°.

When the parallel offset function begins or ends within a flight plan due to the above constraints, parallel offset entry or exit waypoints are inserted into the flight plan. Discontinuities precede parallel offset entry waypoints and follow parallel offset exit waypoints. This allows the pilot to navigate to and from the parallel offset as required.

The EFIS provides guidance to parallel tracks at a selected offset distance. When executing a parallel offset, navigation mode and all performance requirements of the original route in the active flight plan are applicable to the offset route. The EFIS provides for entry of offset distance in increments of 1NM, left or right of course, and is capable of offsets of at least 20NM. Offset mode is clearly indicated with an advisory flag, i.e., PTK = L 20NM. When in offset mode, the EFIS provides reference parameters (e.g., cross-track deviation, distance-to-go, time-to-go) relative to the offset path and offset reference points.


**Figure 7-9: Parallel Offset PTK-/PTK ENDING**

Once a parallel offset is activated, the offset remains active for all flight plan route segments until removed automatically (transitioning through a parallel track exit waypoint), until the flight crew enters a “Direct-To” routing or activates a new flight plan route, or until (manual) cancellation.

**NOTE:**

If a parallel offset is entered in the active flight plan and then cancelled, that active flight plan is no longer eligible for configuring another parallel offset without deleting and reopening due to the creation of a discontinuity.

**Table 7-5: Parallel Offsets Symbols and Description**

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| PTK PTK–<br>080° 10.5NM<br>ETE 0:03:02 | Parallel offset has been created and has a designated ending waypoint. |
|  | Designated ending waypoint of parallel offset |
| PTK = R 3NM | Parallel track advisory indicating offset track 3 NM to the right of host route. |
|  | **PTK.. (L4)** appears when active route is eligible for a parallel offset. |
| PTK ENDING | Approaching end of parallel offset waypoint |
| VNAV AT EDMN<br>ALTITUDE: 4300'<br>OFFSET: ---NM | VNAV altitude is possible with offset of distance before or after waypoint. |
| VNAV AT EDMN<br>ALTITUDE: 6800'<br>OFFSET: NA | VNAV altitude input is possible but not an offset of a distance before or after waypoint. |

| Table 7-5: Parallel Offsets Symbols and Description | |
|---|---|
| **Symbol** | **Description** |
|  | The absence of **PTK (L4)** indicates a parallel offset is not allowed for reasons stated above. |
|  | Indicates each waypoint is a part of the parallel offset. |

## 7.6. Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes

In the default GPS/SBAS mode, the EFIS has enroute, terminal, LNAV approach, LNAV/VNAV approach, LP approach, LPV approach, VFR approach, and departure navigation modes. Mode annunciation, alert limits (horizontal and vertical), and CDI FSD (horizontal and vertical) are determined by navigation mode.

| Table 7-6: Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes | |
|---|---|
| **Navigation Mode** | **Annunciation** |
| Enroute | None |
| Terminal | TERMINAL |
| LNAV Approach | LNAV APPR |
| LNAV/VNAV Approach | LNAV/VNAV APPR |
| LP Approach | LP APPR |
| LPV Approach | LPV APPR |
| VFR Approach | VFR APPR |
| Departure | TERMINAL |

The system switches to default navigation modes based upon region of operation as follows.

| Table 7-7: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation | |
|---|---|
| **Default Navigation Mode** | **Definition of Region** |
| Departure | Selected when the active waypoint is the first waypoint of a departure or missed approach procedure and the active leg heading is aligned (±3°) with the active runway heading. Also set when the active waypoint is the MAWP but a missed approach has been manually activated*. |
| VTF Approach (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP or LPV) | VTF IFR approach has been selected; and<br>within 30 NM of the active runway*; and<br>the FAWP is the active waypoint*; and<br>the bearing to the FAWP is within 45° of the final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria)*; and<br>the desired track to FAWP is within 45° of the final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria). |
| Approach (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP or LPV) | IFR approach has been selected; and<br>within 30 NM of the active runway*; and<br>the MAWP or the FAWP is the active waypoint; and<br>if the FAWP is the active waypoint:<br>the bearing to the FAWP is within 45° of the final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria)*; and<br>the desired track to FAWP is within 45° of the final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria)*; and<br>either the segment leading into the FAWP is not a holding pattern or the pilot has elected to continue out of holding. |
| VFR Approach | VFR approach has been selected*; and<br>within 30 NM of the active runway*; and<br>the active runway is the active waypoint. |
| Terminal | Not in departure mode; and |

**Table 7-7: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation**

| Default Navigation Mode | Definition of Region |
|---|---|
| | Not in approach mode; and<br>The active waypoint is part of a departure or the active waypoint and previous waypoint are parts of an arrival or approach or within 30 NM of the departure airport, arrival airport, or runway. |
| Enroute | Not in departure, approach, or terminal modes. |

**NOTE:**

During RNP 0.3 Approach (manually or coded) the scale remains in RNP 0.3.

## 7.7. GPS/SBAS CDI Scale

**Table 7-8: Summary of Changes In Cross-Track FSD**

| | To Enroute | To Terminal | To Approach |
|---|---|---|---|
| **From Enroute** | | Change from ±2 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode. | |
| **From Terminal** | Change from ±1 NM FSD to ±2 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering enroute mode. | | If VTF, switch immediately. Otherwise, change from ±1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of 2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP |
| **From Approach** | | Change to ±1 NM. | |

| Table 7-8: Summary of Changes In Cross-Track FSD | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **To Enroute** | **To Terminal** | **To Approach** |
| **From Departure** | | If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ±0.3 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD at the turn initiation point of the first fix in the departure procedure. | |

**NOTE:**

For RNP 0.3 routes, time to alert (TTA) is the same as for the approach. For RNP 0.3, the EFIS uses a 10-second TTA when using GPS-only, and a 2-second TTA when using EGNOS.

## 7.8. Approach Type Selection

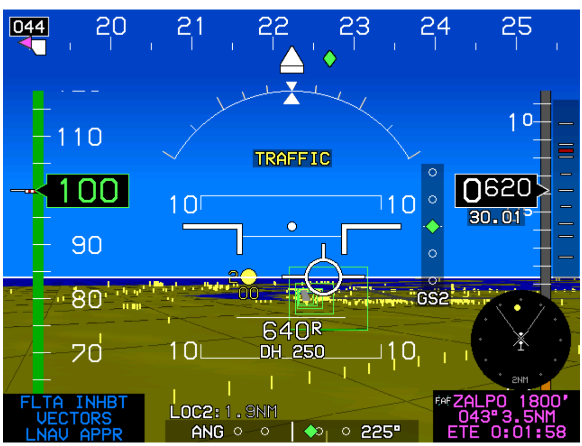



**Figure 7-10: GPS Mode (LNAV APPR)**

The EFIS selects the approach type (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP, or LPV) when entering approach mode with the following order of precedence and prerequisites:

1) **LPV**:

   a) ARINC-424 “Level of Service” indicates LPV minimums are published;

   b) Valid long-term, fast, and ionospheric SBAS corrections are available and being applied to at least 4 GPS satellites;

   c) Final approach segment data block exists and passes CRC; and

   d) Horizontal and vertical alert limits from final approach segment data block are predicted to be supported.

2) **LP**: (Same precedence and prerequisites as **LPV**)

3) **LNAV/VNAV**:

   a) ARINC-424 “Level of Service” indicates LNAV/VNAV minimums are published;

   b) If a final approach segment data block exists, it passes CRC; and

   c) Horizontal alert limit of 556 m. (.3 NM) is predicted to be supported.

**NOTE:**

Because the EFIS inherently supports barometric VNAV, it is not a prerequisite for the vertical alert limit to be predicted or supported. Nor is it a prerequisite for valid long-term, fast, and ionospheric SBAS corrections to be available and applied to at least four GPS satellites. Rather, the vertical alert limit (50 m) and SBAS correction tests are used to determine whether to present guidance based upon GPS altitude or barometric altitude.

4) **LNAV**: This is the default approach type and is selected when none of the above selections is made. There are no prerequisites for selecting LNAV.

The EFIS continuously displays the approach type (mode indication) after selection. It does not degrade the approach type after selection unless the approach procedure is reselected or changed.

**NOTE:**

These GPS/SBAS modes still appear during a ground-based approach such as an ILS approach.

Some instrument procedures include notes saying the following: “RNP 0.3 required” and are coded as an RNAV procedure. In these cases, select manual RNP to see the RNP and ANP values on the PFD.

### 7.8.1. Approach Path Definition as VTF IFR Approach

In addition, the pilot may select a VTF IFR approach, indicating the pilot does not intend to fly the entire procedure. When a VTF IFR approach is selected, the EFIS creates an initial point (IP) waypoint on the extended final approach course to provide deviations relative to the extended final approach course. The IP is a fly-over defined exit heading waypoint, and the leg prior to the IP is designated as a discontinuity. Until the FAWP has been sequenced, the EFIS indicates a VTF IFR approach has been selected (VECTORS) to indicate guidance is not relative to a published approach path and TERPS or ICAO DO 8168 clearances are not assured.

### 7.8.2. VTF VFR Approach

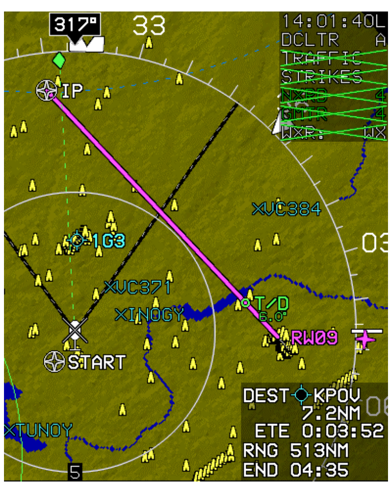



**Figure 7-11: Navigating to FAF on VTF VFR Approach**

The pilot may select a VFR approach to a runway or user waypoint with a defined approach bearing. When a VFR approach is selected, the EFIS creates an IP waypoint approximately 12 NM on the extended final approach course to provide deviations relative to the extended final approach course. The IP is designated as a fly-over defined exit heading waypoint, and the leg prior to the IP is designated as a discontinuity.

During this VTF VFR approach, the aircraft is proceeding towards the IP. Since the IP is designated as a discontinuity, proceeding direct is not possible. When attempting to proceed direct to the IP, only the active leg between the IP and RW01 is activated.

### 7.8.3. Missed Approach and Departure Path Definition

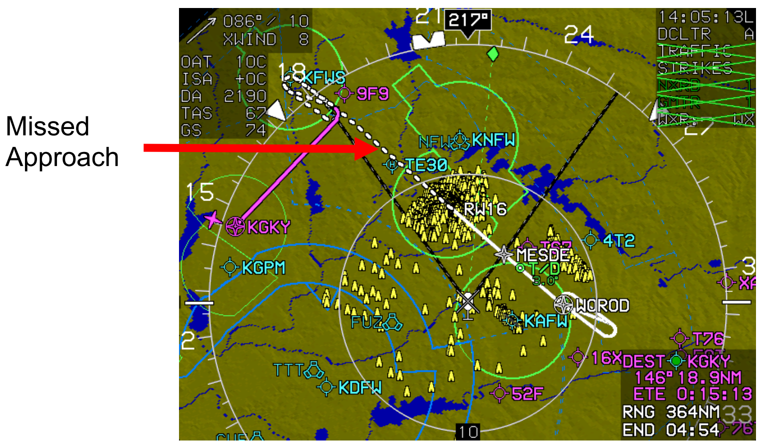



**Figure 7-12: Missed Approach and Departure Path**

Once on the final approach segment (dashed line course similar to instrument approach chart portrayal), the pilot may initiate an immediate missed approach or arm the system to execute the missed approach at the MAWP. If armed before crossing the MAWP, the missed approach is armed for automatic initiation at the MAWP. If a missed approach is not initiated prior to crossing the MAWP, the EFIS switches to FROM mode at the MAWP and continues on the same course.

If the pilot initiates the missed approach, the EFIS provides guidance relative to the procedure. If a missed approach is armed prior to crossing the MAWP, the desired path, to and after the MAWP, is defined by the procedure. If the first leg in the missed approach procedure is not a straight path aligned within 3° of the final approach course, the FSD changes to terminal mode FSD (±1 NM) when the missed approach is initiated. Otherwise, the FSD changes to ±0.3 NM, when the missed approach is initiated (departure mode), and changes to terminal mode FSD (±1 NM) at the turn initiation point of the first waypoint in the missed approach procedure.

The pilot may select DP guidance and, if the first leg in the DP is not a straight path aligned within 3° of the runway heading, terminal mode FSD (±1 NM) is used. Otherwise, the FSD is ±0.3 NM (departure mode) and changes to terminal mode FSD (±1 NM) at the turn initiation point of the first waypoint in the DP.

## 7.9. Loss of Navigation Monitoring

The EFIS continuously monitors for loss of navigation capability. In manual or automatic RNP mode prior to sequencing the FAWP, the loss of navigation caution is displayed using a 10-second TTA if the RNP value is less than 2 NM and a 30-second TTA otherwise. Use the Faults menu to distinguish the cause of the LON caution. The caution returns to its normal state upon termination of the responsible condition.

## 7.10. Selection of an Instrument Procedure

When an instrument procedure is selected and active, the receiver notifies the pilot of the most accurate level of service supported by the combination of the GPS/SBAS signal, receiver, and selected approach, using naming conventions on the minima lines of the selected approach procedure. Once the level of service has been given, the EFIS operates in this mode for the duration of the procedure, unless the level of service is unavailable. The EFIS cannot change back to a more accurate level of service until the next time an approach is activated.

The following includes examples of step-by-step procedures:

1) Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR)

2) ILS Instrument Approach

3) ILS Instrument Approach with Manual Termination leg

4) LOC Back Course Instrument Approach

5) RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima

6) NRST ILS Instrument Approach with Standard Instrument Departure (SID)

7) VOR/DME Instrument Approach

8) Instrument approach with primary and alternate missed approach procedures.

### 7.10.1. Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR) (Step-By-Step)

If the selected waypoint is an airport with a published STAR, this option is available for selection from a list of available STARs, transitions, and runways. After selection, the appropriate STAR is created and displayed on the MAP page. Activating a STAR deletes any pre-existing STAR, and it is inserted prior to any approach waypoints if previously entered.

STARS normally terminate at a fix near the airport, so a radar vector or feeder route is used for transition to the approach phase of the arrival. If an instrument approach is activated during the STAR, the approach waypoints are inserted after the STAR.

The following example includes the execution of a Standard Terminal Arrival Route procedure into Friedrichshafen Germany (EDNY) followed by an ILS RWY 24.

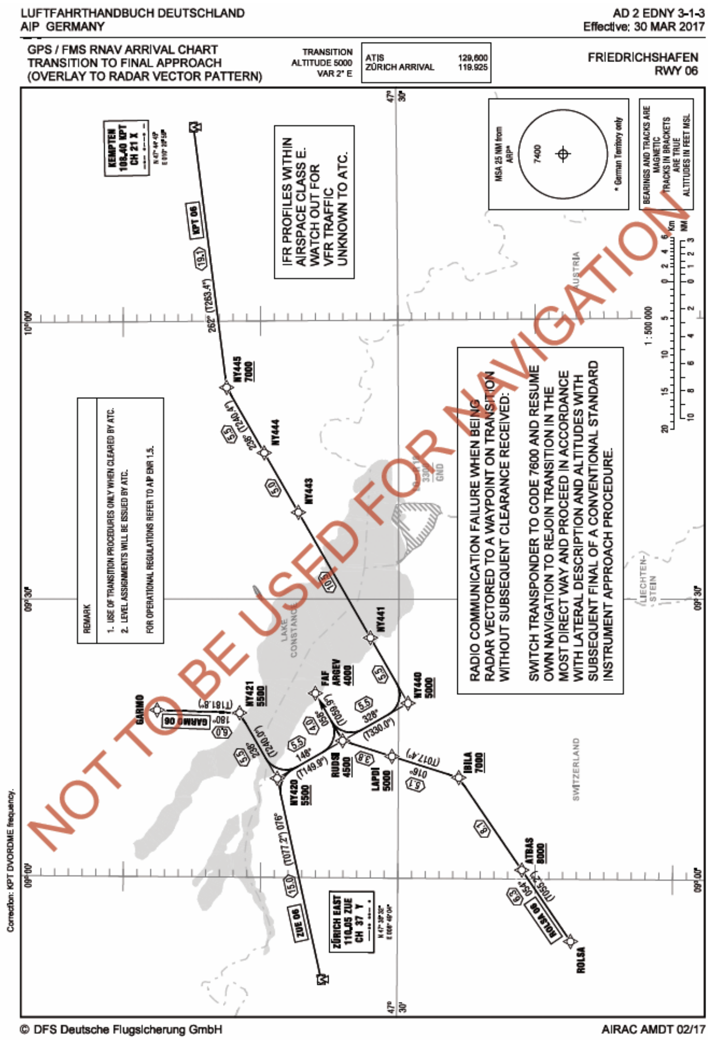
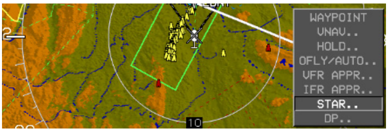



**Figure 7-13: Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR)**

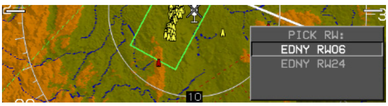

1) Arrival airport must be entered as a waypoint.

2) Push ❶ with desired airport (EDNY) highlighted.

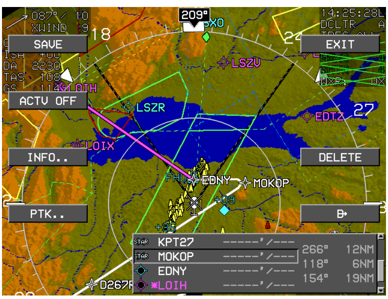



3) Scroll ❶ to **STAR..** and push to enter.

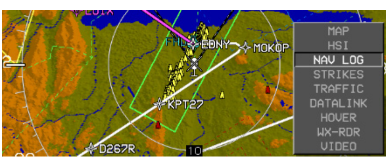

4) Scroll ❶ to desired STAR (**KPT6P**). Push to enter.



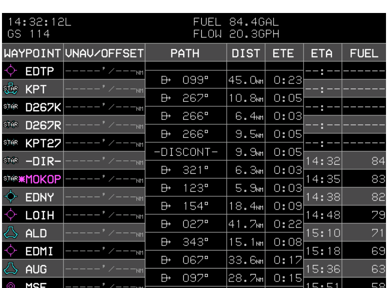

5) If no transition is offered, scroll ❶ to desired runway (**RW06**). Push to enter.




6) ATC clears direct MOKOP and ILS RWY 26. Press **ACTV (L2)** scroll ❶ to **MOKOP**, press **(R4)**, and push ❶ to enter. (See § 7.10.2 for loading an ILS)



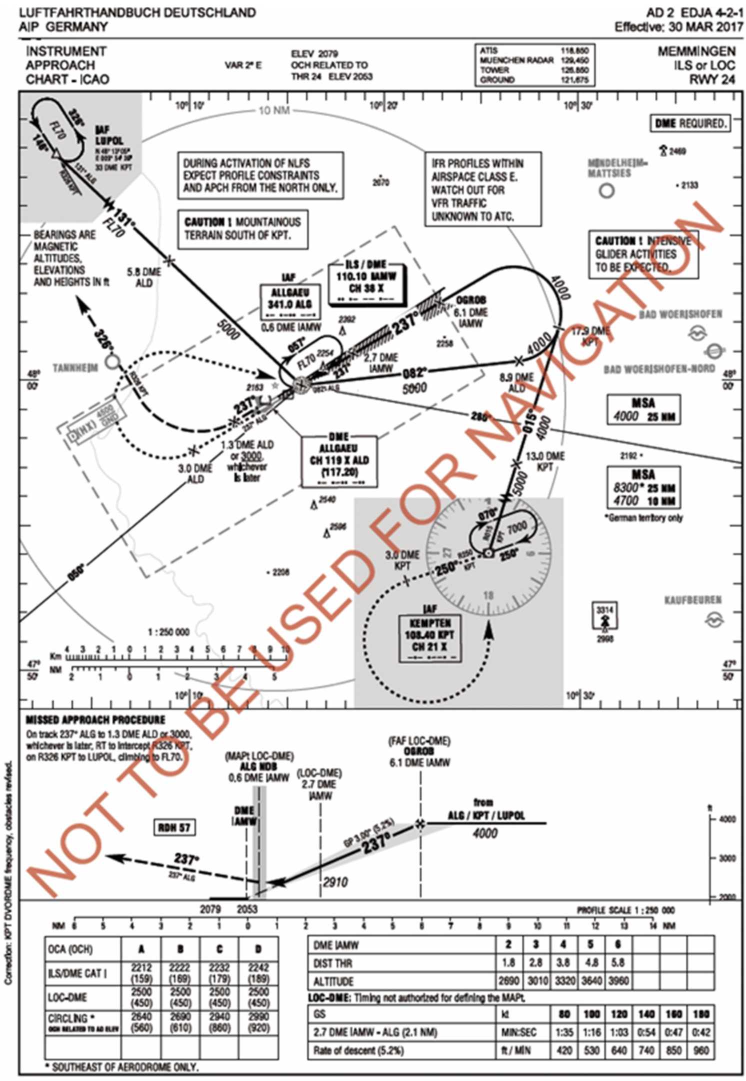

7) Press **MENU (R1)** and press **PAGE (R3)** scroll ❶ to **NAV LOG** and push to enter. View first portion and then scroll ❶ to view remainder of NAV LOG.




8) The NAV LOG, which is static in nature and can be viewed at any time, is the only page with clock time, groundspeed, fuel quantity, and fuel flow displayed. The active flight plan can be opened as an overlay to make changes.

## 7.10.2. ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

All approach operations begin with the same basic steps. This example selects ILS or LOC RWY 24 at Memmingen Germany (EDJA).




| OCA (OCH) | A | B | C | D |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ILS/DME CAT I | 2212 (159) | 2222 (169) | 2232 (179) | 2242 (189) |
| LOC-DME | 2500 (450) | 2500 (450) | 2500 (450) | 2500 (450) |
| CIRCLING * OCH RELATED TO AD ELEV | 2640 (560) | 2690 (610) | 2940 (860) | 2990 (920) |
| | | | | |

* SOUTHEAST OF AERODROME ONLY.

| DME IAMW | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| DIST THR | 1.8 | 2.8 | 3.8 | 4.8 | 5.8 | | | |
| ALTITUDE | 2690 | 3010 | 3320 | 3640 | 3960 | | | |

**LOC-DME:** Timing not authorized for defining the MAPt.

| GS | kt | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.7 DME IAMW - ALG (2.1 NM) | MIN:SEC | 1:35 | 1:16 | 1:03 | 0:54 | 0:47 | 0:42 |
| Rate of descent (5.2%) | ft / MIN | 420 | 530 | 640 | 740 | 850 | 960 |

© DFS Deutsche Flugsicherung GmbH

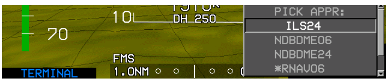
AIRAC AMDT 02/17

**Figure 7-14: ILS Instrument Approach (EDJA)**


1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.

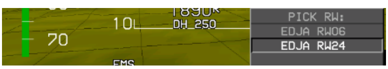
2) Scroll ❶ to desired airport and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **IFR APPR...** Push to enter.



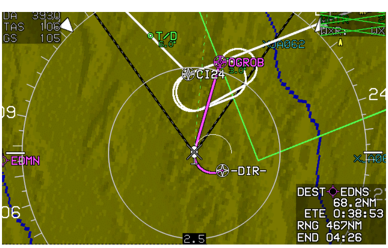

4) Scroll ❶ to desired approach. Push to enter.


5) Scroll ❶ to transition (*indicates most logical from current position). Push to enter.




6) Scroll ❶ to landing runway. Push to enter.

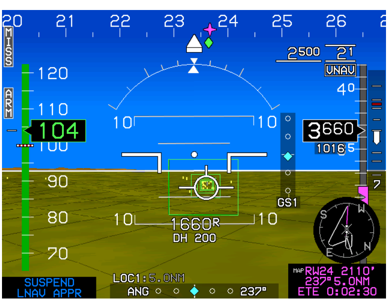

7) If instructed to hold at OGROB as published, scroll ❶ to **OGROB** and push to enter. Scroll ❶ to **HOLD** and push to enter and enter holding direction and leg length or time. Push to enter.



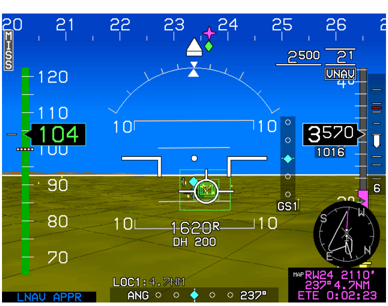

8) The holding pattern is created and is the next leg to be sequenced. ATC issues clearance for the ILS 24 Memmingen and to maintain 4000'.


9) Established in the HOLD as directed at 4000'. When ATC issues clearance for the approach, press **CONT (L2)** to resume waypoint sequencing to the FAF.

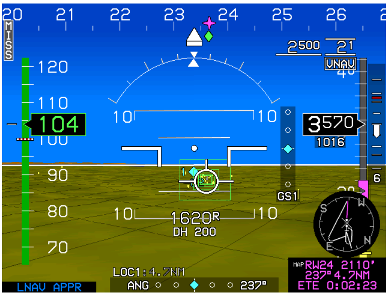

10) MFD view of holding pattern, next leg in white and destination with distance and ETE.



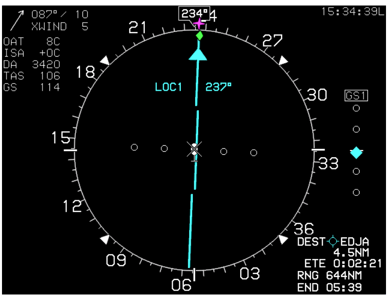

11) Passing the FAF, press **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure and resume waypoint sequencing.




12) After **ARM (L2)** is pressed, SUSPEND disappears, and auto waypoint sequencing continues through the full missed approach procedure after passing the MAWP.

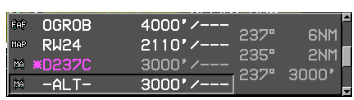



13) PFD inside FAF on localizer centerline and on glideslope.



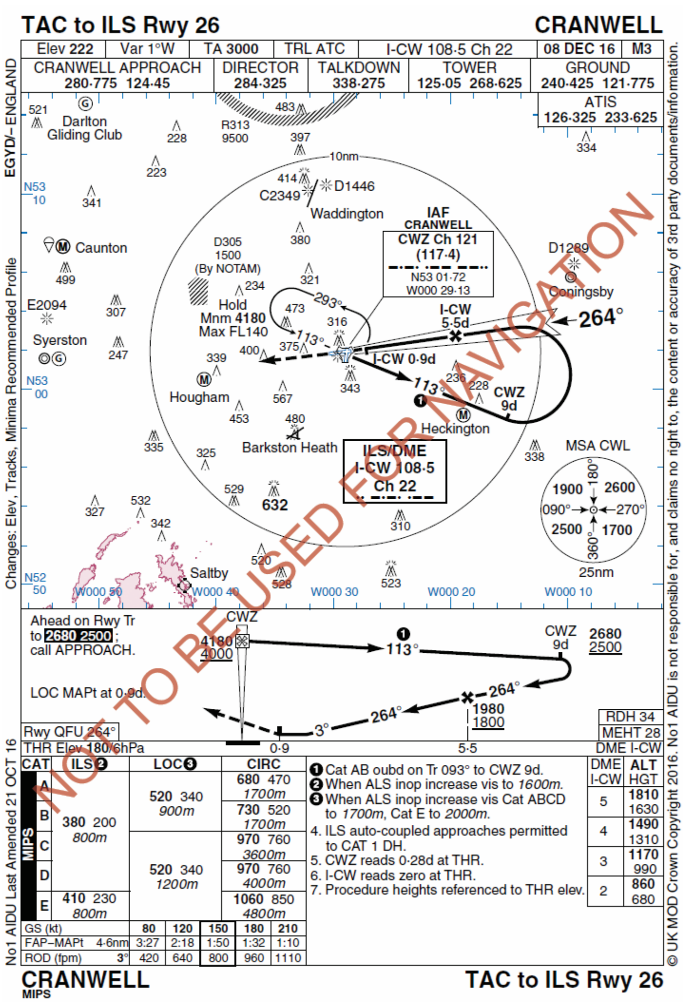

14) MFD HSI page shows the VDI with glideslope source on top of VDI.


15) Missed approach segment appears as magenta and white dashed lines. The next leg (-ALT-) has an altitude termination leg of 3000'.



## 7.10.3. ILS Approach with Manual Termination Leg in MAP (Step-By-Step)

This example selects RAF Cranwell United Kingdom (EGYD) with -ALT- termination leg followed by an immediate manual termination leg requiring pilot action to resume automatic waypoint sequencing.




| CAT | | ILS ❷ | LOC ❸ | CIRC |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| MIPS | A | 380 200 800m | 520 340 900m | 680 470 1700m |
| | B | | | 730 520 1700m |
| | C | | 520 340 1200m | 970 760 3600m |
| | D | | | 970 760 4000m |
| | E | 410 230 800m | | 1060 850 4800m |

| GS (kt) | | 80 | 120 | 150 | 180 | 210 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| FAP–MAPt | 4·6nm | 3:27 | 2:18 | 1:50 | 1:32 | 1:10 |
| ROD (fpm) | 3° | 420 | 640 | 800 | 960 | 1110 |

❶ Cat AB oubd on Tr 093° to CWZ 9d.
❷ When ALS inop increase vis to *1600m.*
❸ When ALS inop increase vis Cat ABCD to *1700m*, Cat E to *2000m.*
4. ILS auto-coupled approaches permitted to CAT 1 DH.
5. CWZ reads 0·28d at THR.
6. I-CW reads zero at THR.
7. Procedure heights referenced to THR elev.

| DME I-CW | ALT HGT |
|---|---|
| 5 | 1810 1630 |
| 4 | 1490 1310 |
| 3 | 1170 990 |
| 2 | 860 680 |

CRANWELL MIPS — TAC to ILS Rwy 26

**Figure 7-15: ILS Approach (EGYD)**

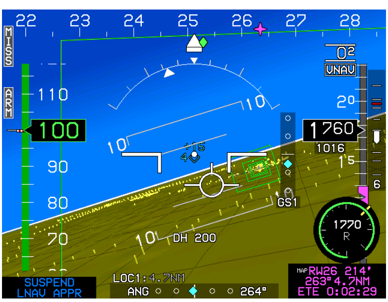

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Scroll ❶ to the destination airport and push to enter.


2) Scroll ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to desired approach and push to enter.


4) Scroll ❶ to desired transition and push to enter. (* = most logical from present position.)

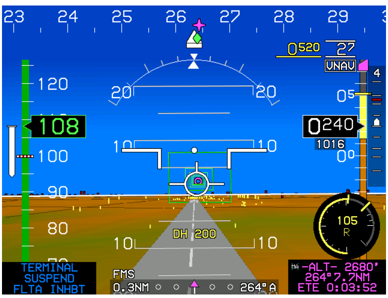

5) Scroll ❶ to desired runway (colors the active runway light gray). Push to enter.



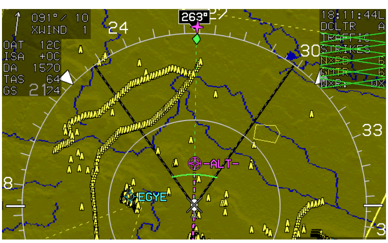

6) Passing the FAF, press **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure and resume automatic waypoint sequencing.


7) DH set at 200’ and localizer minimums set as MDA 520’.

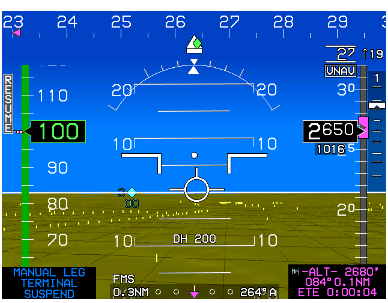

8) On localizer centerline and slightly above glideslope. Below minimum altitude and at DH but not below 200' AGL.



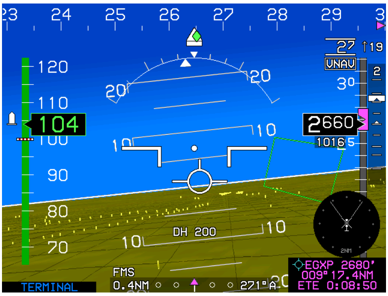

9) Past the MAWP, auto nav source switches to FMS and auto waypoint sequencing is suspended due to -ALT- leg climbing to 2680'.




10) MFD showing manual termination leg with no further course guidance. Altitude predictor arc indicates climb performance meets procedure requirements.




11) Automatic waypoint sequencing still suspended. Press **RESUME (L2)** to resume.




12) After **RESUME (L2)** is pressed, normal waypoint sequencing resumes to next active waypoint (EGXP)

## 7.10.4. LOC Back Course Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This example includes a LOC/DME Back Course approach at Santa Maria, California, USA (KSMX) with attention drawn to OBS settings and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.

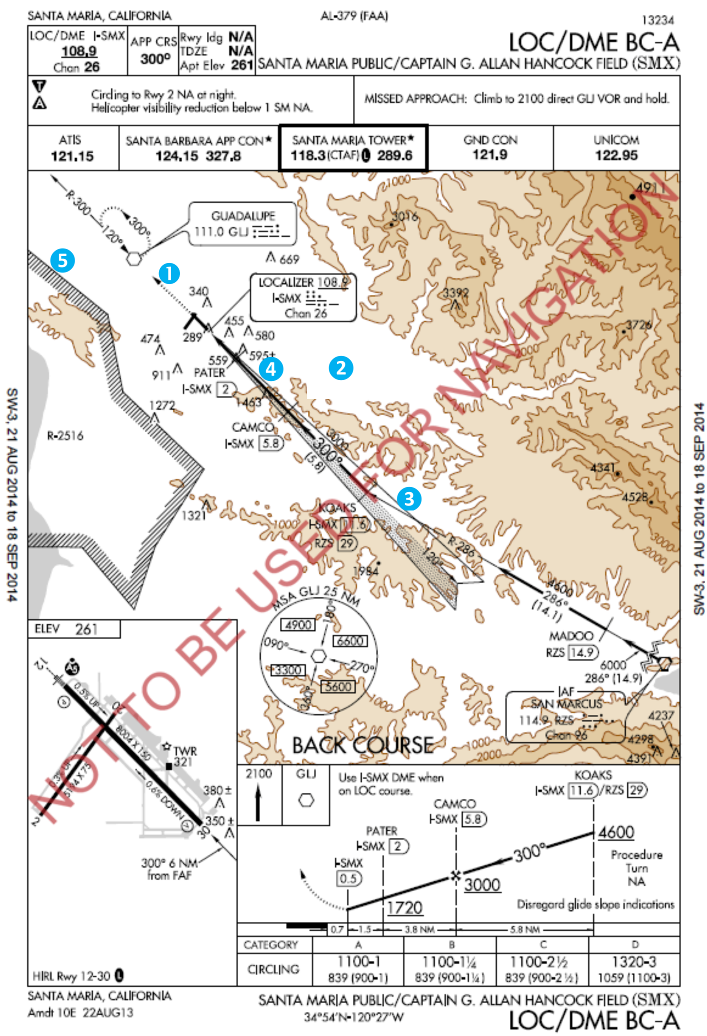
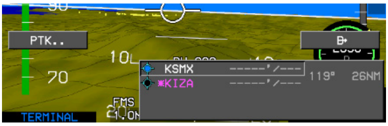



Figure 7-16: LOC Back Course Approach




1) ❶ Press **ACTV (L2)**. Scroll ❶ to airport active waypoint. Push to enter.

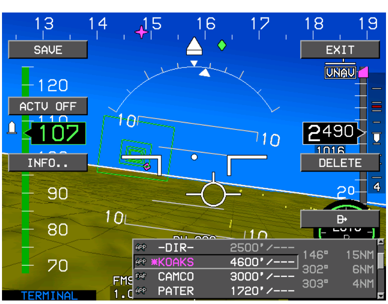

2) Scroll ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.


3) Scroll ❶ to **LBCA** and push to enter.

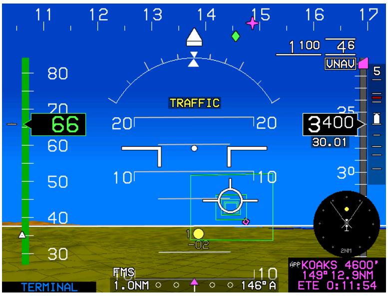

4) Scroll ❶ to transition (*indicates most logical from current position). Push to enter.


5) Scroll ❶ to desired runway. Push to enter.

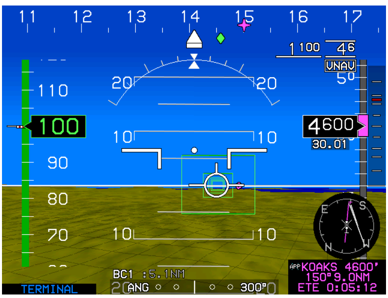

6) Follow ATC clearance and determine where to proceed. To view NAV LOG, press **MENU (R1)** and **PAGE (R3)**. Scroll ❶ to **NAV LOG** and push to enter.



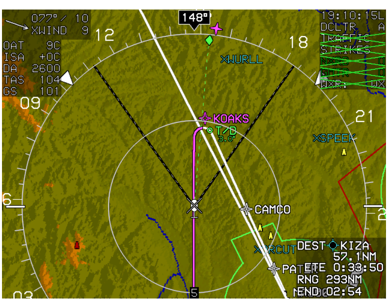

7) ❷ Assume ATC issued clearance to proceed direct to KOAKS, **ACTV** **(L2)** and  **(R4)** were pressed when KOAKS was highlighted.

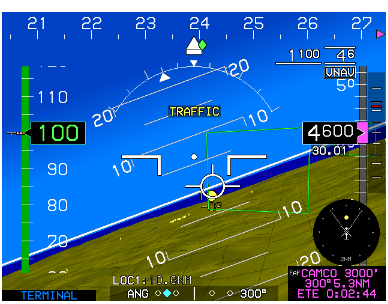



8) To set minimums, press **MENU (R1)**, **BUGS (R2)**, **MINS (R3)**, scroll ❶ to **MIN ALT..**, and push to enter. Scroll ❶ to set minimum altitude and push to enter.

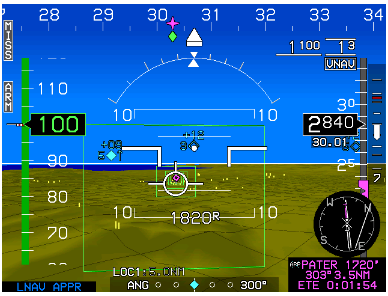


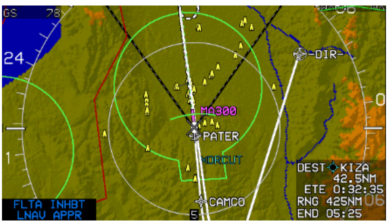

9) ③ Press **OBS (L4)**. Press **NAV VLOC1 (L3)** or **NAV VLOC2 (L4)** as applicable. Scroll ❶ to set back course bearing of 300° and push to enter. This results in proper sensing of back course CDI indications. The map is configured for ARC mode.



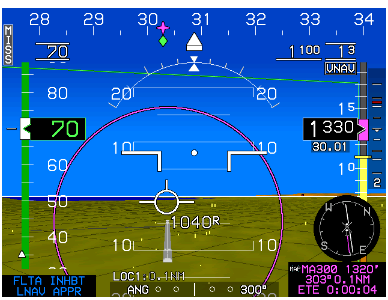




10) Localizer course is now within 105° and has changed from BC to front course with CDI left of center during course intercept from the right side.



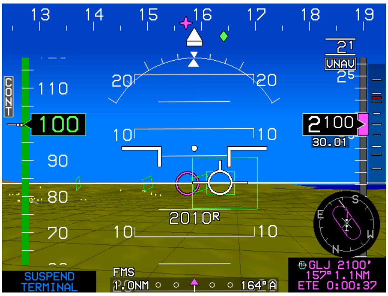




11) 4 After passing the FAF (CAMCO), **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appear. There is no SUSPEND advisory due to the stepdown fix of PATER 0.2NM ahead. Approaching PATER (fly-by waypoint symbol) stepdown fix with the missed approach procedure armed and speed transitioned to 70 KIAS. The green arc altitude predictor indicates arrival at minima over the runway.




12) Approaching MAP MA300 with runway in sight. IAS stabilized at 70 KIAS.


13) Passing the MAWP, nav source automatically switches to FMS.




14) 5 Entering HOLD at GLG and navigating on FMS.

15) **CONT (L2)** appears as a reminder to press when ready to leave the HOLD and continue to the destination KIZA.

## 7.10.5. RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima (Step-By-Step)

This example includes an RNAV (GPS) RWY 32 approach to Wichita, Kansas, USA (KICT) and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.

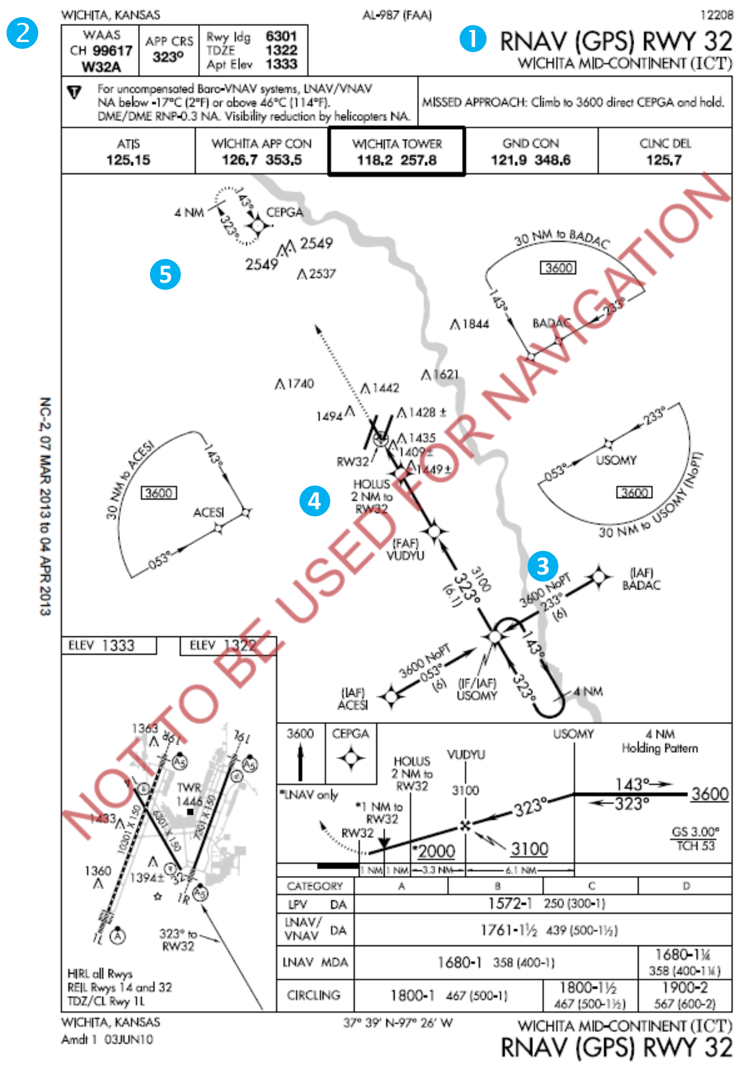
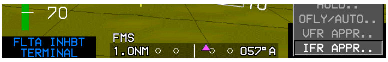
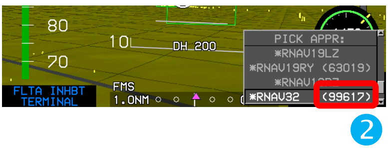



**Figure 7-17: RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima**

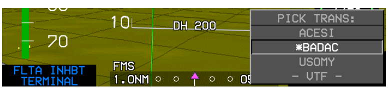

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Scroll ❶ to desired airport ❶ from active flight plan and push to enter.




2) Scroll ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.

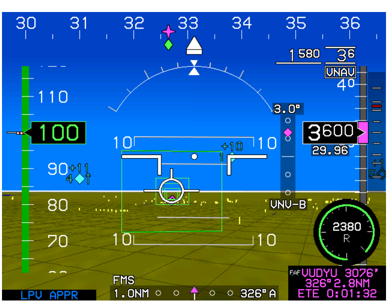



3) Scroll ❶ to desired approach, for example, **RNAV32 (99617)**. Verify WAAS channel number ❷ matches instrument approach chart and push to enter. Push to enter.

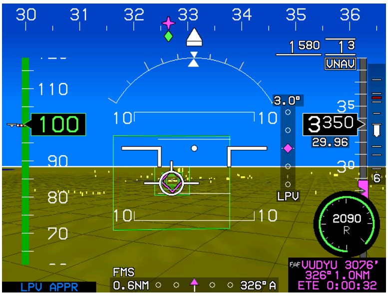



4) Scroll ❶ to the desired transition and push to enter. (* = most logical from present position.)

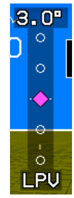

5) Scroll ❶ to assigned landing runway. (Active runway is light gray for identification purposes.)

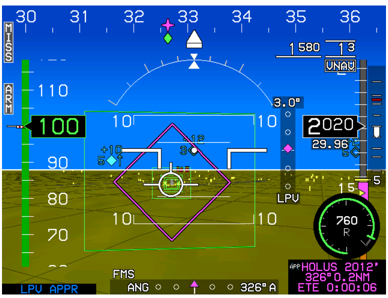



6) While 2.8NM outside of FAF, the VDI source is VNV-B.




7) ③ On final approach course and approaching the FAF, LPV APPR, appears with the VDI. The source automatically switches to LPV.



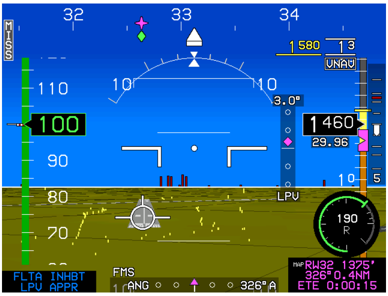

8) ④ Upon passing HOLUS, press **ARM (L2)** to continue auto waypoint sequencing. This is the latest point on the approach to press **ARM (L2)**.


9) VDI displays vertical guidance for the LPV vertical profile based on GPS/SBAS.

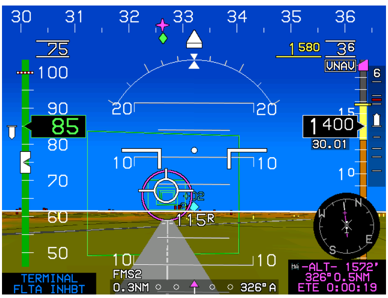
10) Obstructions appear on PFD and MFD.


11) Press **MENU (R1)** then **ZOOM (R3)** for wide-angle view of PFI area.

12) FPM lined up on the active runway on glidepath approaching minimums with CDI centered and on glidepath approaching minimums of 1580’ MSL.

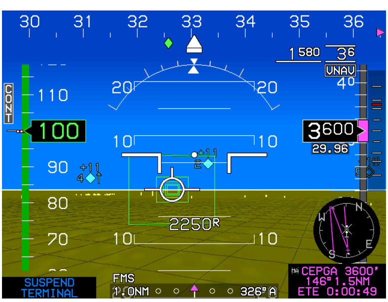



13) Below minimums with FPM aligned with touchdown zone on runway. Minimums are amber (yellow) and flashing as the audible alert, "MINMUMS, MINIMUMS," sounds.




14) Past the MAWP, NAV source remains FMS1 and scale automatically changes to 0.3NM FSD.

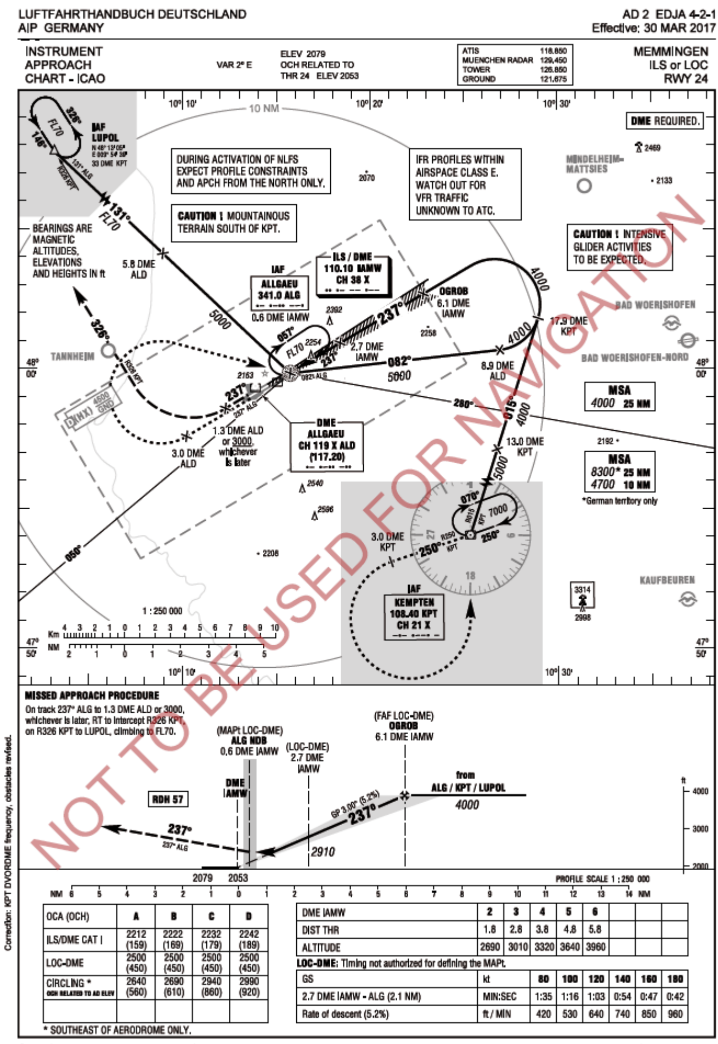
Satisfying the altitude termination leg of 1572' during the missed approach leg.


15) 5 Established in hold at CEPGA. Press **CONT (L2)** to continue waypoint sequencing to next leg in active flight plan.

## 7.10.6. NRST ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This method does not require the airport to be in the active flight plan. This example selects ILS RWY 24 at Memmingen Germany (EDJA) with the NRST ILS method of creation followed by the Kempton Three Alpha (KPT 3A) SID.



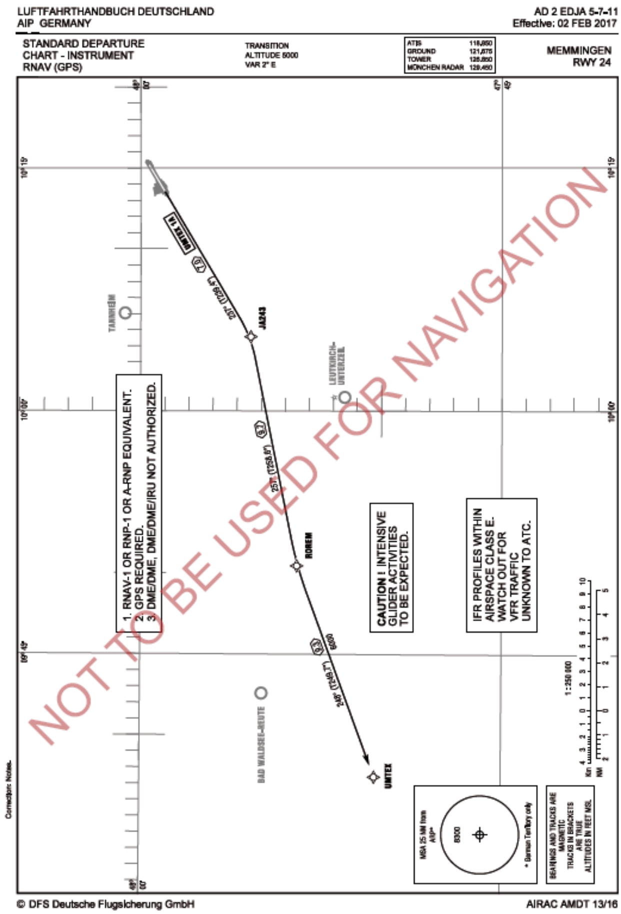

| OCA (OCH) | A | B | C | D |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ILS/DME CAT I | 2212 (159) | 2222 (169) | 2232 (179) | 2242 (189) |
| LOC-DME | 2500 (450) | 2500 (450) | 2500 (450) | 2500 (450) |
| CIRCLING * OCH RELATED TO AD ELEV | 2640 (560) | 2690 (610) | 2940 (860) | 2990 (920) |

| DME IAMW | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| DIST THR | 1.8 | 2.8 | 3.8 | 4.8 | 5.8 |
| ALTITUDE | 2690 | 3010 | 3320 | 3640 | 3960 |

LOC-DME: Timing not authorized for defining the MAPt.

| GS | kt | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.7 DME IAMW - ALG (2.1 NM) | MIN:SEC | 1:35 | 1:16 | 1:03 | 0:54 | 0:47 | 0:42 |
| Rate of descent (5.2%) | ft / MIN | 420 | 530 | 640 | 740 | 850 | 960 |

**Figure 7-18: NRST ILS Instrument Approach**



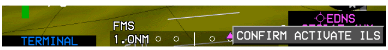

# Figure 7-19: Standard Instrument Departure Procedure

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **KPT 3A** | **KEMPTEN THREE ALPHA**<br>On track 237° ALG to 5.3 DME ALD,<br>LT, on track 166° to intercept R299 KPT to KPT (△).<br>**GPS/FMS RNAV:** [A2500+] - JA242[L] - JA244[L] - KPT. | FL 70 | München Radar<br>129.450 | Not to be used during activation of NLFS. Expect Re-routing by ATC.<br>Flights continuing via M738: PDG 4.9% (300 ft/NM) until reaching KPT. |

# Figure 7-20: Kempton Three Alpha (KPT 3A) SID


1) Press **NRST (R3)**. Scroll ❶ to **ILS...** Push to enter. This clears any prior active flight plan.


2) Scroll ❶ to desired NRST ILS. Push to enter.




3) Once confirmed, push ❶ to activate the ILS.


4) The following actions occur:

   a) Direct flight plan to the ILS airport is created.

   b) A vectors-to-final ILS approach is activated.

   c) Heading bug is activated to the current heading.

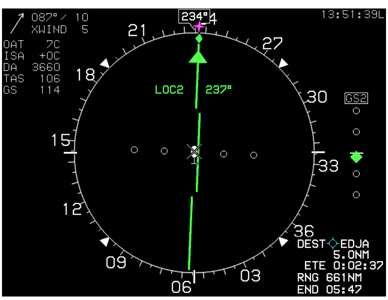
   d) VLOC 1 and VLOC 2 OBS are set to the associated localizer course.

   e) ILS frequency is automatically transmitted to NAV#1 in standby position. (When configured)

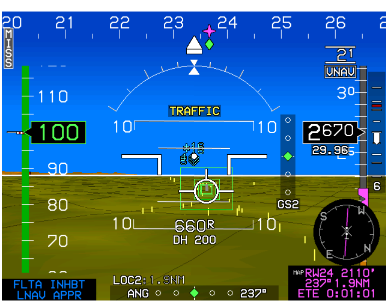
   f) EFIS changes to LOC1, and VDI indicates source of glideslope GS2.


5) Passing the FAF (OGROB), **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appear. Press **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure and resume automatic waypoint sequencing.

6) HITS indicates guidance to follow GPS overlay of the localizer and glideslope. However, the localizer source for CDI and glideslope receiver VDI are the primary sources for guidance on this ILS approach.




7) MFD press **MENU (R1)** then **PAGE (R3)**. Scroll ❶ to **HSI** and push to enter.




8) Inside 2.0 NM final with **FLTA INHBT LNAV APPR** indicating no TAWS alerts are triggered and the default GPS mode LNAV APPR is active.


9) Below DH over the inner marker with zoom mode on and stabilized at 70 KIAS on the localizer centerline.


10) During the missed approach, the navigation source automatically switches to FMS with 0.3NM FSD. FLTA is still inhibited and terminal mode is active while within the terminal area.


11) Press **ACTV (L2)** and scroll ❶ to **JA242** press  **(R4)** and push to enter.

12) Kempton Three Alpha SID was loaded to the (EDJA) suppressed waypoint, and JA242 and JA244 displayed on the white track line. This requires management of the active flight plan to follow the SID in lieu of the missed approach path.

13) Now JA242 is the active waypoint with a magenta line going straight out instead of turning right for the published missed approach procedure. With route of flight as follows:

On track 237° ALG to 5.3 DME ALD. LT, on track 166° to intercept R299 KPT to KPT climb to FL 70.

### 7.10.7. VOR/DME Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This example loads the Lamar Municipal, Colorado, USA VOR/DME RWY 36 approach and is flown via the east arc followed by a missed approach. Blue numbers associate locations on chart and EFIS.

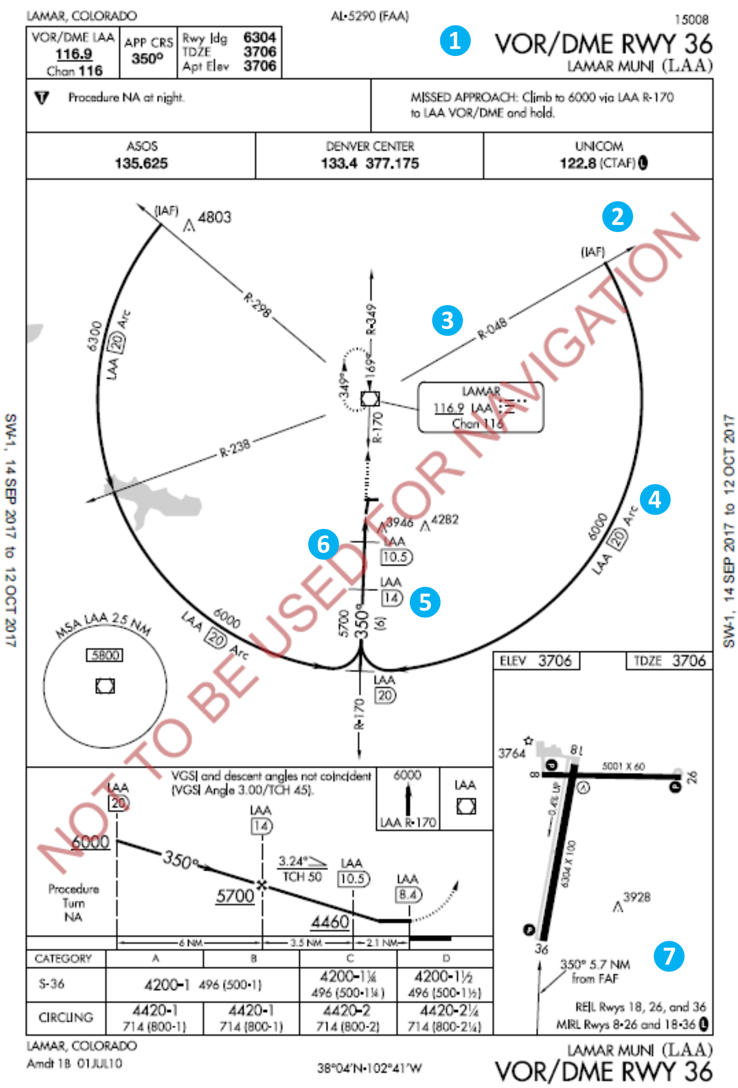
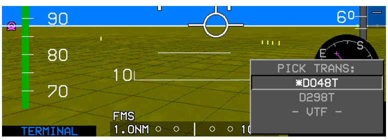



**Figure 7-21: VOR/DME Instrument Approach**

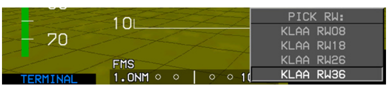


1) With destination airport entered as the waypoint, scroll ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.


2) ① Scroll ❶ to select desired approach (**VORDME36**) and push to enter.

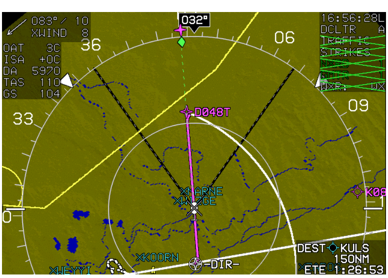



3) Scroll ❶ to desired transition (**DO48T**). (* = most logical from present position.) Push to enter.

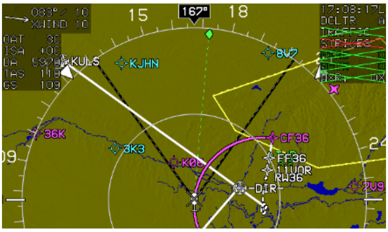



4) Scroll ❶ to desired runway. Push to enter.


5) Press **ACTV (L2)** scroll ❶ to view procedure and select fix for compliance with ATC clearance ② (**DO48T**). Press  **(R4)** and push ❶ to enter.

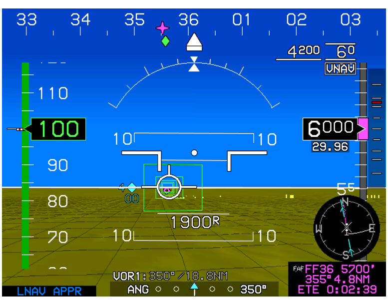



6) A magenta line leads from the -DIR- current position to ③ D048T, which is now the active waypoint. 6000' is the VNAV altitude, and aircraft is descending to the HITS boxes with green arc altitude predictor showing where this altitude is reached along the route.



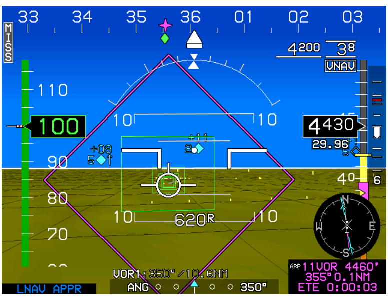

7) Established on the 20 DME ARC ❹ with NAV1 and NAV2 set on 116.9 MHz for LAA VOR and inbound FAC set at 350° on both VORs with DME indicating on both nav sources.


8) To declutter the mini map on the PFD, press **MENU (R1)** and then **DCLTR (R4)**. Scroll ❶ to **MINI MAP** and push to check. Press **EXIT (R1)** or scroll ❶ to **DONE** and push to enter.



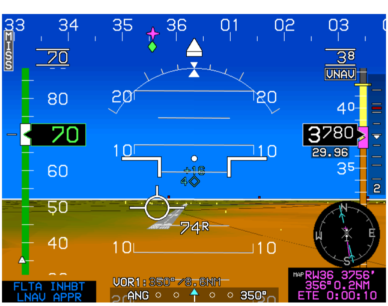

9) Established inbound on the final approach course to the FAF (FF36) ❺ crossing top of descent symbol ahead indicating when descent can be commenced to cross the FAF at 5700'. Nav source is VOR1 and HITS source is GPS. The primary lateral source is the VOR and DME for this instrument approach.


10) After passing the FAF, **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appear. Press **MISS (L1)** to immediately execute the missed approach procedure or press **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure upon crossing the MAWPT.

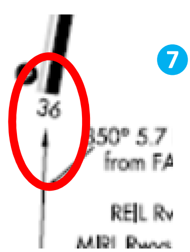


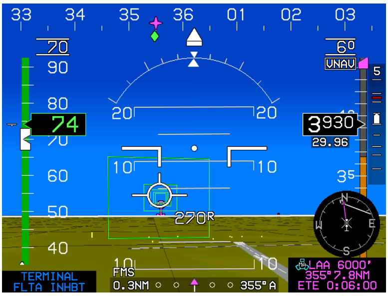

11) Approaching the 6 stepdown fix 11VOR at the proper altitude of 4460' as shown in the waypoint information box.


Below minimums with audible alert, "MINIMUMS, MINIMUMS."


12) Established at 70 KIAS on short final with the runway in sight .6 NM ahead at the same angle as shown on the instrument approach chart.






13) After passing the MAWPT and the missed approach procedure automatically sequenced, aircraft begins following the dashed magenta missed approach course lines on the MAP. NAV source automatically switched to FMS1 and 0.3NM FSD.


references to still being in the terminal area and TAWS terrain alerts are still inhibited.

## 7.10.8. ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate fix (Step-By-Step)

This example loads the Akron-Canton, Ohio, USA, ILS or LOC RWY 1 approach with the missed approach flown to the alternate missed approach fix (KEATN)

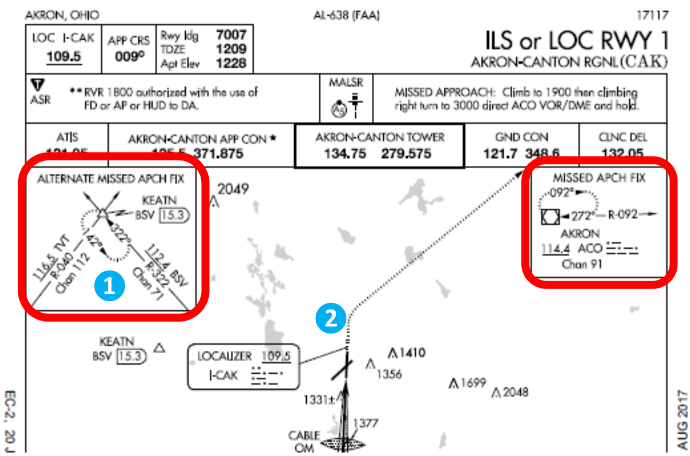
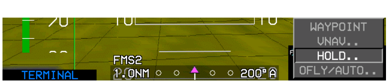



**Figure 7-22: ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate fix (Step-By-Step)**

During the instrument approach clearance, ATC advised that in the event of a missed approach, plan on flying the alternate missed approach instructions to 1 KEATN intersection and hold as published. The ILS RWY 1 instrument approach is loaded and the active flight plan is opened and ❶ is scrolled to one position past (KCAK) and **INSERT (R2)** is pressed and KEATN entered with ❶ and pushed to enter.


1) 1 Create KEATN waypoint in active flight plan between KCAK and KPOV. Push ❶ to enter.


2) Scroll ❶ to **KEATN** and push to enter.

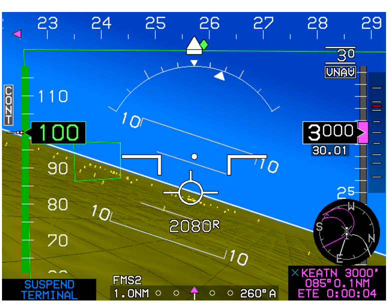



3) Scroll ❶ to **HOLD..** and push to enter.


4) To create published holding pattern at KEATN, scroll/push ❶ through the process then push to enter. Observe KEATN is in correct position in active flight plan after (KCAK.)


5) ② Upon executing the missed approach, press **ACTV (L2)**. Scroll ❶ to **KEATN** press **(R4)** and push ❶ to enter direct routing to KEATN.


6) Verify the active flight plan has the holding pattern entered as published and is depicted on the ND correctly.




7) Established holding pattern at KEATN. When cleared to continue to next waypoint, press **CONT (L2)**. Waypoint sequencing resumes to next waypoint.

8) If an instrument approach is necessary at the destination (KPOV) the approach can be loaded without losing the holding pattern at KEATN, since it was not part of the KCAK ILS 01 Instrument approach procedure.

**NOTE:**

Navigation databases should be current for the duration of the flight. If the Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control (AIRAC) cycle is due to change during the flight, operators and pilots should establish procedures to ensure the accuracy of navigation data including suitability of navigation facilities used to define the routes and procedures for flight. Once acceptable means to compare aeronautical charts (new and old) to verify navigation fixes prior to departure, electronic data have traditionally been verified against paper products. If an amended chart is published for the procedure, do not use the database to conduct the operation.

There may be a slight difference between the navigation information portrayed on the chart and the primary navigation display heading. Differences of three degrees or less may result from equipment manufacturer's application of magnetic variation and are operationally acceptable.

GPS receivers do not "fail down" to lower levels of service once the approach has been activated.

If only 

appears, use the LNAV minima if the rules under which the flight is operating allow changing the type of approach being flown after commencing the procedure. If the lateral integrity limit is exceeded on an LP approach, a missed approach is necessary, since the lateral alarm limit may not be reset while the approach is active.

# Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System Enhanced HTAWS and HTAWS

## 8.1. Enhanced HTAWS and HTAWS (Terrain Awareness Warning System) Functions

The IDU provides TSO-C194 HTAWS functionality. Depending on aircraft configuration and external sensors/switches, the system is configurable as an Enhanced HTAWS or HTAWS. Functions provided by HTAWS are:

1) **Terrain Display**: Terrain and obstacles on PFD and ND.
2) **Forward Looking Terrain Awareness** (**FLTA**): Alerts to hazardous terrain or obstructions in front of the aircraft.
3) **Excessive Rate of Descent** (**GPWS Mode 1**): Alerts when hazardously high rate of descent above terrain (i.e., descending into terrain).
4) **Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain** (**GPWS Mode 2**): Alerts when hazardously high rate of change above terrain (i.e., flying level over rising terrain).
5) **Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach** (**GPWS Mode 3**): Alerts when loss of altitude is detected immediately after takeoff or initiation of a missed approach.
6) **Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration** (**GPWS Mode 4**): Alerts when descending into terrain without properly configuring the aircraft for landing.
7) **Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glideslope** (**GPWS Mode 5**): Alerts when deviating below glideslope on the final approach segment of an ILS approach.

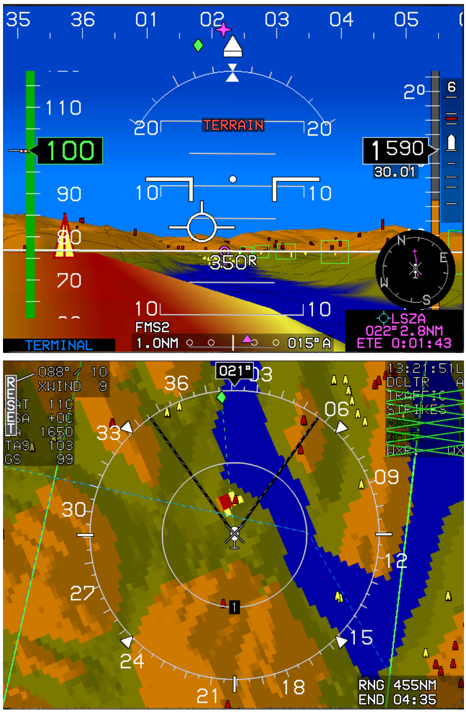
**Table 8-1: TAWS Functions Provided by the EFIS**

| Aircraft Type | TAWS Class | Terrain Display | FLTA | GPWS Mode | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| Rotorcraft RG | Enhanced | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Rotorcraft FG | Enhanced | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ |
| Rotorcraft | Normal | ✓ | ✓ | | | ✓ | | |

Notes: RG = Retractable Gear; FG = Fixed Gear

## 8.2. Terrain Display

Display of terrain on the PFD and MFD are described in Sections 3 Display Symbology and 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures where applicable.




PFD

MFD

**Figure 8-1: Terrain Display**

## 8.3. Forward Looking Terrain Alert Function

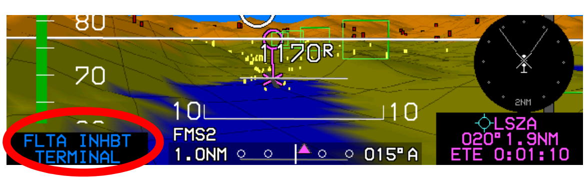



**Figure 8-2: FLTA INHBT**

FLTA function uses the following to alert to hazardous terrain or obstructions within a search envelope in front of the aircraft:

1) Terrain database
2) Obstruction database
3) Airport and runway database
4) Aircraft position
5) Aircraft track
6) Aircraft groundspeed
7) Aircraft bank angle
8) Aircraft altitude
9) Aircraft vertical speed

### 8.3.1. FLTA Modes

The EFIS FLTA mode is either slaved to the GPS/SBAS navigation mode or set automatically based upon default mode logic.

### 8.3.2. GPS/SBAS Navigation Mode Slaving

The EFIS performs TSO-C146c GPS/SBAS functions in addition to the TAWS functions. As a result, GPS/SBAS navigation mode is available as an input to the TAWS. The pilot may select an IFR procedure (approach, DP, or STAR), which automatically changes the GPS/SBAS navigation mode to enroute, terminal, departure, or IFR approach as appropriate. In addition, the pilot may select a VFR approach to any runway or user waypoint with a defined approach path. Selection of a VFR approach causes automatic GPS/SBAS navigation mode to change to enroute, terminal, or VFR approach as appropriate.

When slaved, the GPS/SBAS active runway threshold or user waypoint is the reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting. The advantage is the GPS/SBAS navigation modes are a direct indication to the FLTA function of pilot intent.

### 8.3.3. Default FLTA Mode

If the default FLTA navigation mode is higher in precedence than the GPS/SBAS navigation mode, FLTA mode is slaved to the default FLTA navigation mode. These modes, in order of precedence, are:

1) **Departure Mode**: Enabled when in ground mode. Reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting and mode envelope definition is the last point at which the ground definition was satisfied (this is near the liftoff point). Departure mode ends upon climbing through **1500 feet** above or traveling more than **6NM** from the reference point.

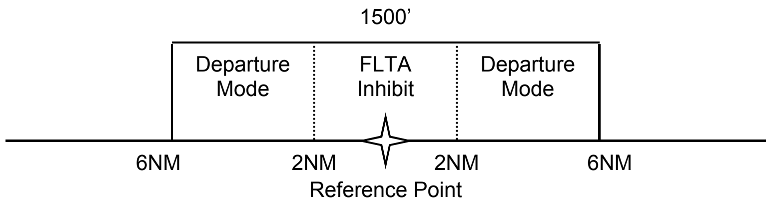



**Figure 8-3: Default FLTA INHBT**

2) **Other Modes**: For other default FLTA modes, reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting and mode envelope is the nearest runway threshold or the nearest user waypoint with a defined approach bearing. TAWS continuously searches all runway thresholds at the nearest three airports to determine the nearest runway threshold. TAWS performs a search for the nearest three airports and nearest user waypoints with a defined approach bearing every 3NM of distance traveled. Modes are as follows:

   a) **Approach Mode**: When within 1900 feet and 5NM of the reference point.

   b) **Terminal Mode**: From 5NM to 15NM from the reference point when below an altitude varying from 1900 feet (at 5NM) to 3500 feet (at 15NM) above the reference point.

   c) **Enroute Mode**: When not in any other mode.

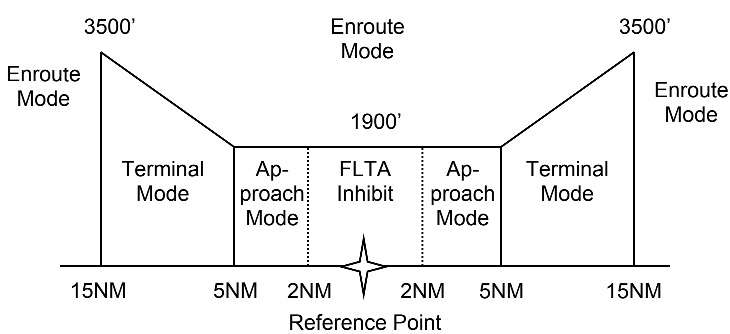



**Figure 8-4: FLTA INHBT Mode Areas**

### 8.3.4. FLTA Search Envelope

The FLTA search envelope is an area in front of and below the aircraft. If terrain or obstructions are found within the FLTA search envelope, a caution or warning is given. Dimensions of the search envelope depend upon TAWS type, FLTA mode, groundspeed, bank angle, and vertical speed. Basic envelope parameters are as follows.

1) **TAWS Type**: Determines value of several parameters used to calculate the search envelope.

**Table 8-2: FLTA Search Envelope for HTAWS**

| Envelope | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Level-Off Rule | 10% of vertical speed<br>Used for level off leading for descending flight reduced required terrain clearance (RTC) |
| Range | 36 seconds of the forward range search envelope<br>Reduced to 24 seconds when low altitude mode is engaged. GPS/SBAS HFOM is added to range. |
| Enroute Mode Level/Climbing Flight RTC | 150 feet<br>Reduced to 100 feet when low altitude mode is engaged. |
| Terminal Mode Level/Climbing Flight RTC | |
| Approach Mode Level/Climbing Flight RTC | |
| Departure Mode Level/Climbing Flight RTC | 100 feet |
| Enroute Mode Descending RTC | |
| Terminal Mode Descending RTC | |
| Approach Mode Descending RTC | |
| Departure Mode Descending RTC | |

2) **Aircraft Track**: Terrain search envelope is aligned with aircraft track.

3) **Aircraft Groundspeed**: Used in conjunction with range parameter to determine look-ahead distance and used in with FLTA mode to determine the search volume width as follows:

    a) **Enroute Mode**: Based on a 30° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft groundspeed. Maximum width is 0.5NM either side of track.

    b) **Terminal Mode**: Based on a 15° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft groundspeed. Maximum width is 0.5NM either side of track.

    c) **Approach Mode**: Based on a 10° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft groundspeed. Maximum width is 0.3NM either side of track.

    d) **Departure Mode**: Based on a 10° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft groundspeed. Maximum width is 0.3NM either side of track.

After calculating search volume width as described above, the GPS/SBAS HFOM is added to search volume width.

1) **Aircraft Bank Angle**: Used to expand the search volume in the direction of a turn and requires at least 10° of bank. In addition, search volume expansion is delayed so at 10° of bank, the bank angle must be continuously held for 3.25 seconds, which is reduced linearly with increased bank angle so at 30° of bank there is no delay time.

2) **Aircraft Vertical Speed**: If above 500 FPM vertical speed is used to determine which RTC values should be used. At vertical speeds less than 500 FPM, level and climbing flight RTC values apply. A three-second pilot reaction time is used and applied to the level-off rule parameters.

### 8.3.5. FLTA Alerts and Automatic Popup

When terrain or obstructions fall within the FLTA search envelope, a FLTA warning is generated. Terrain rendering is enabled when a FLTA warning is initiated or upgraded as follows:

1) On PFD screen, terrain rendering is enabled;

2) On navigation display screen, terrain rendering is enabled only if TAWS Inhibit is not enabled (i.e., TAWS Inhibit prevents terrain from being automatically enabled on the ND).

In addition, when an FLTA warning is initiated or upgraded, an automatic popup mode is engaged as follows:

1) Display switched to navigation display.

2) Display switched to aircraft centered and heading up.

3) Display panning disabled.

4) Display scale set to:

   a) 10NM (groundspeed > 200 knots);

   b) 5 NM (groundspeed < = 200 knots and groundspeed > 100 knots); or

   c) 2NM (groundspeed < = 100 knots).

After the popup mode is engaged, the pilot may change any setting automatically changed by the popup mode. In addition, **RESET (L1)** appears for 20 seconds to reset the previous screen configuration with one button press. Popups only occur on IDU #0 or IDU #2 and do not occur:

1) if TAWS Inhibit is enabled;

2) If CPU#2 is showing the PFI or EICAS function.

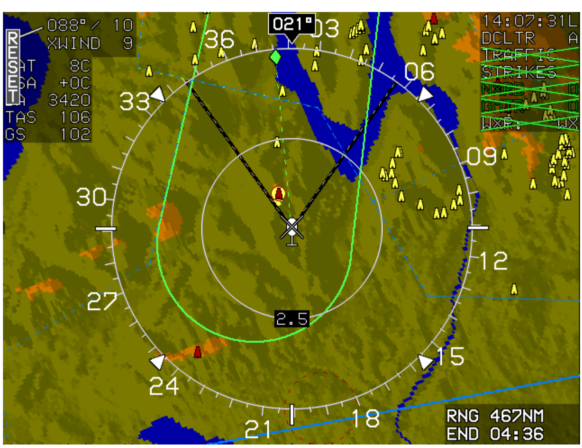



**Figure 8-5: Popup Mode**

## 8.4. Excessive Rate of Descent (GPWS Mode 1)

GPWS Mode 1 function is present in Enhanced HTAWS and uses aircraft vertical speed information and AGL altitude to alert when the rate of descent is hazardously high as compared to height above terrain. GPWS Mode 1 has a caution and warning threshold. When below the thresholds, a GPWS Mode 1 warning is generated.

**Table 8-3: HTAWS GPWS Mode 1 Envelope**

| Sink Rate (fpm) | AGL Altitude (ft.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | "Sink Rate" Caution Threshold | "Pull Up" Warning Threshold |
| $< 1000$ | $62.5\% \times (\text{Sink Rate} - 600)$ | $66\% \times \left(\begin{matrix}\text{Caution}\\ \text{Threshold}\end{matrix}\right)$ |
| 1000 to 3000 | Lesser of: 750 or $25\% \times (\text{Sink Rate})$ | |

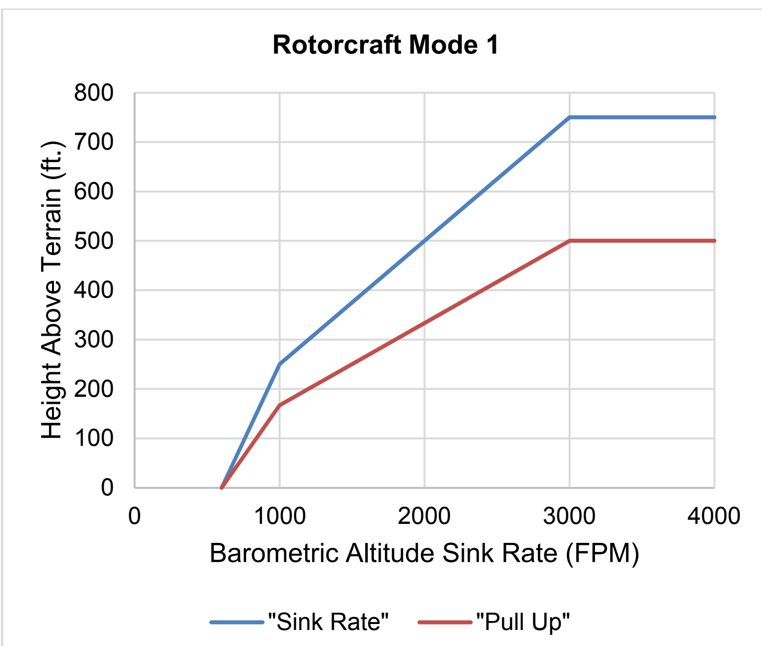



**Figure 8-6: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 1**

## 8.5. Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain (GPWS Mode 2)

GPWS Mode 2 function is present in Enhanced HTAWS only and uses filtered AGL rate and AGL altitude to alert when the rate of change of height above terrain is hazardously high as compared to height above terrain (i.e., flying level over rising terrain). Envelope selection is determined as follows and is based upon a 10 second sampling time.

There are two Mode 2 envelopes: Mode 2A, which is active when not in landing configuration, and Mode 2B, which is active when in landing configuration. Envelope selection is determined as follows.

**Table 8-4: HTAWS GPWS Mode 2 Envelopes**

| Landing Gear | Mode 2A | Mode 2B |
|---|---|---|
| Retractable | Landing Gear Up | Landing Gear Down |
| Fixed | AGL Altitude > 200 ft<br>or<br>Airspeed > 80 KIAS | AGL Altitude ≤ 200 ft<br>and<br>Airspeed ≤ 80 KIAS |

When the GPWS Mode 2 envelope is pierced, a GPWS Mode 2 warning is generated.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Table 8-5: HTAWS GPWS Mode 2A Envelopes (NOT in Landing Configuration)</th></tr>
<tr><th rowspan="2">AGL Rate (fpm)</th><th colspan="2">AGL Altitude (ft.)</th></tr>
<tr><th>“Caution, Terrain” Caution Threshold</th><th>“Pull Up” Warning Threshold</th></tr>
<tr><td>< 1905</td><td>$125\% \times (\text{AGL Rate} - 1600)$</td><td rowspan="2">$66\% \times \left(\begin{matrix}\text{Caution}\\ \text{Threshold}\end{matrix}\right)$</td></tr>
<tr><td>> 1905</td><td>20% of the lesser of:
<table>
<tr><th>Airspeed (KIAS)</th><th>AGL Rate (fpm)</th></tr>
<tr><td>$< 90$</td><td>3120</td></tr>
<tr><td>90 to 130</td><td>$3120 + 72 \times (\text{Airspeed} - 90)$</td></tr>
<tr><td>$> 130$</td><td>6000</td></tr>
</table>
or<br>AGL Rate</td></tr>
</table>

| Table 8-6: HTAWS GPWS Mode 2B Envelopes (Landing Configuration) | |
|---|---|
| **AGL Altitude (ft.)** | |
| **"Caution, Terrain" Caution Threshold** | **"Pull Up" Warning Threshold** |
| Lesser of:<br>300 or<br>$20\% \times (\text{AGL Rate} - 2000)$ | $66\% \times (\text{Caution Threshold})$ |

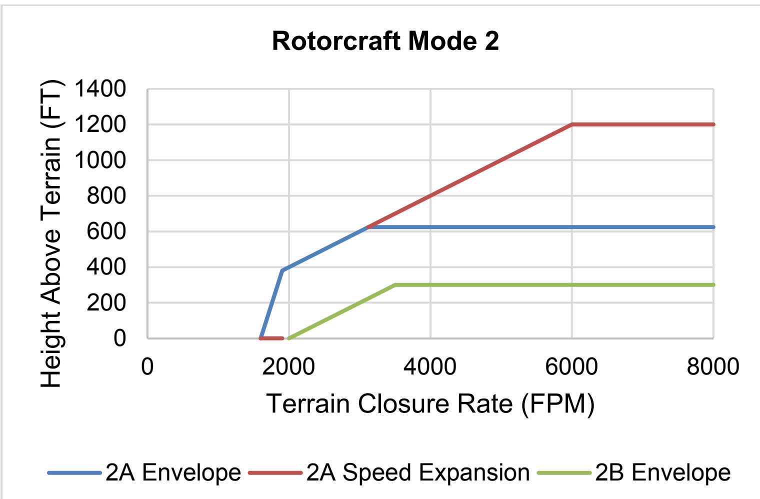



**Figure 8-7: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 2**

## 8.6. Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach (GPWS Mode 3)

GPWS Mode 3 function uses aircraft vertical speed information and AGL altitude to alert when a sink rate is detected immediately after takeoff or initiation of a missed approach. GPWS Mode 3 is armed by either being in ground mode or by being on the first leg of a missed approach procedure (as determined by the GPS/SBAS) with distance to the active runway threshold increasing. GPWS Mode 3 is disarmed upon climbing through **400 feet AGL**, traveling more than **3 NM** from the last point at which the ground definition was satisfied (this is near the liftoff point), or transitioning to the second leg of a missed approach procedure. GPWS Mode 3 has a caution threshold based upon height above terrain and vertical speed. When below the caution threshold, a GPWS Mode 3 warning is generated as defined: "**Don't Sink**" AGL = 140 % of sink rate.

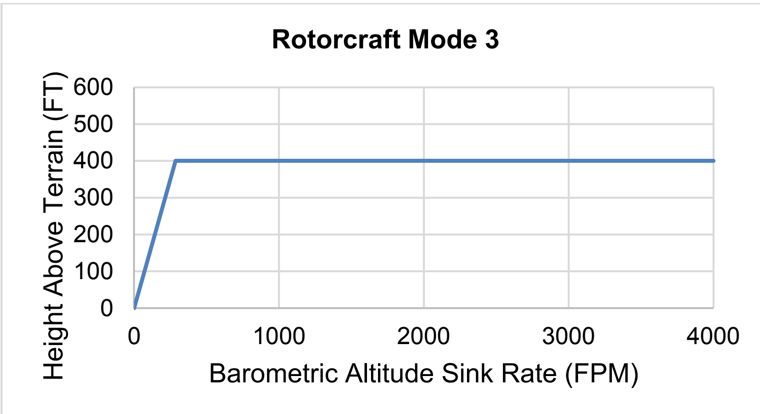



**Figure 8-8: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 3**

## 8.7. Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration (GPWS Mode 4)

GPWS Mode 4 function is present in Enhanced HTAWS and uses aircraft speed information and AGL altitude to alert when descending into terrain without properly configuring the aircraft for landing. There are two Mode 4 envelopes: Mode 4A, which gives cautions when landing gear is in other than landing configuration, and Mode 4B, which gives cautions when landing gear are in other than landing configuration. Applicability of Mode 4 envelopes to aircraft types are as follows.

**Table 8-7: HTAWS GPWS Mode 4 Envelopes**

| Landing Gear | Mode 4A | Mode 4B |
|---|---|---|
| Retractable | Landing Gear Up | Not Applicable |
| Fixed | Not Applicable | Not Applicable |

Mode 4 envelope consists of low-speed and high-speed regions.

**Table 8-8: HTAWS GPWS Mode 4 Alerting Criteria**

| Region | Caution Flag | Single Voice Alert |
|---|---|---|
| Low-Speed |   | "Too Low Gear" |
| High-Speed | | "Too Low Terrain" |
| Autorotation expansion, when engaged, regardless of speed | | "Too Low Gear" |

Mode 4 alerting criteria require the Mode 4 envelope to be entered from above so changing aircraft configuration while within a Mode 4 envelope does not generate an alert.

**Table 8-9: HTAWS GPWS Mode 4A Envelopes**

| Segment | Speed (KIAS) | AGL Altitude (ft.) |
|---|---|---|
| 4A Low-Speed | $< 100$ | 150 (400 in autorotation) |
| 4A High-Speed | $\geq 100$ | |

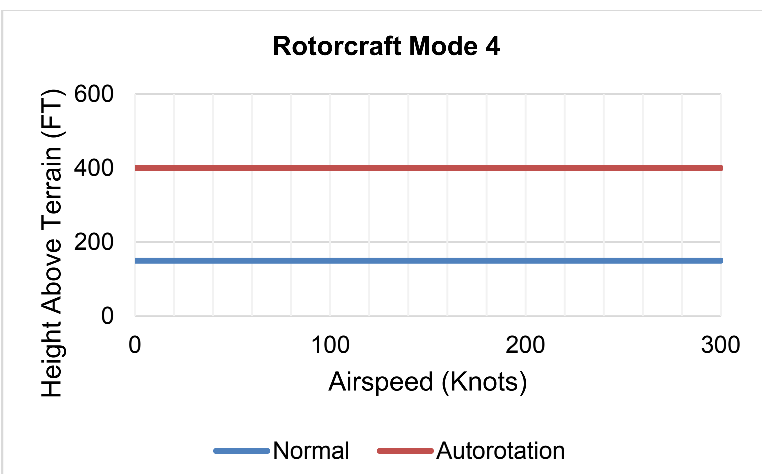



**Figure 8-9: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 4**

## 8.8. Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glideslope (GPWS Mode 5)

GPWS Mode 5 function is present in Enhanced HTAWS only and uses ILS glideslope deviation information and AGL altitude to alert when an excessive downward glideslope deviation is detected on the final approach segment of an ILS approach. GPWS Mode 5 is armed when a valid glideslope signal is being received, AND the aircraft is below **1000' AGL**.

GPWS Mode 5 has a caution and warning threshold. When below a threshold, a GPWS Mode 5 warning is generated. The curve compares glideslope deviation to AGL altitude.

**Table 8-10: HTAWS GPWS Mode 5 Envelopes**

| Caution Threshold | Warning Threshold |
|---|---|
| Greater of: $\begin{bmatrix} 1.3 + 1.4\% \times \\ (150 - \text{AGL Altitude}) \end{bmatrix}$ Dots or 1.3 Dots | Greater of: $\begin{bmatrix} 2 + 1\% \times \\ (150 - \text{AGL Altitude}) \end{bmatrix}$ Dots or 2 Dots |

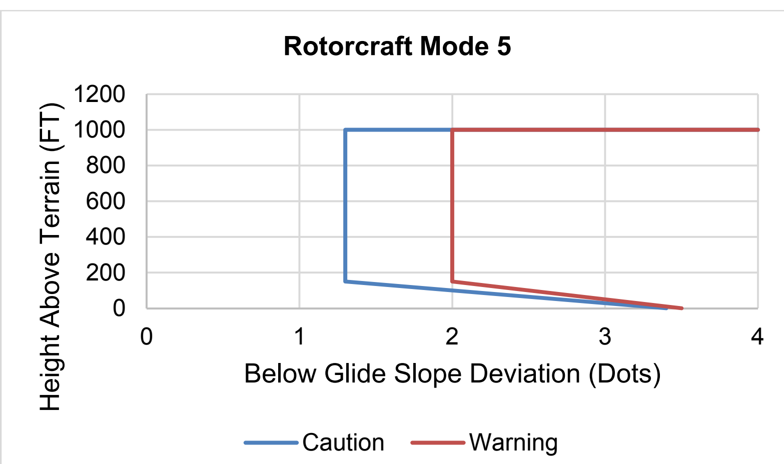



**Figure 8-10: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 5**

## 8.9. External Sensors and Switches

TAWS requires a variety of inputs from external sensors and switches to perform its functions as follows:

1) **GPS/SBAS Receiver**: Source of aircraft position, geodetic height, horizontal figure of merit (HFOM), vertical figure of merit (VFOM), loss of integrity (LOI), and loss of navigation (LON) inputs.

2) **Air Data Computer (ADC)**: Source of barometric altitude, outside air temperature, and vertical speed.

3) **ILS Receiver**: Glideslope receiver is the source of glideslope deviation.

4) **Radar Altimeter (RA)**: Source for radar altitude.

5) **Gear Position Sensors**: Landing gear position discretes, as configured in the system limits, are the source of landing gear position.

6) **TAWS Inhibit Switch**: As configured in the system limits, used for manual inhibiting of TAWS alerting functions. Gives an indication of actuation (e.g., toggle/rocker or pushbutton with indicator light and TAWS INHBT on the lower left corner of the PFD).

7) **Low Altitude Mode Switch**: As configured in the system limits, used for inhibiting and modifying HTAWS alerting functions to allow normal operation at low altitudes. Gives an indication of actuation (e.g., toggle/rocker or pushbutton with indicator light and TAWS LOW ALT on the lower left corner of the PFD).

8) **Audio Mute Switch**: Momentarily activated to silence active aural alerts is desired. It is connected directly to the EFIS IDU.

9) **Glideslope Deactivate Switch**: As configured in the system limits, momentarily activated to inhibit GPWS Mode 5 function.

10) **Low Torque Sensor**: A low torque discrete, as configured in the system limits, used for inhibiting and modifying HTAWS alerting functions during an autorotation.

Applicability of external sensors and switches for the applicable TAWS is as follows.

**Table 8-11: External Sensors and Switches (Applicable TAWS)**

| **Aircraft Type** | **Rotorcraft RG** | **Rotorcraft FG** | **Rotorcraft** |
|---|---|---|---|
| HTAWS Class | Enhanced | Enhanced | Normal |
| GPS/SBAS | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| ADC | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Gear Position Sensor | ✓ | | |
| TAWS Inhibit Switch | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Audio Cancel Switch | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Low Altitude Mode Switch | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Low Torque Sensor | ✓ | ✓ | |
| ILS | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Radar Altimeter | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Glideslope Deactivate Switch | ✓ | ✓ | |

Notes: RG = Retractable Gear; FG = Fixed Gear

## 8.10. TAWS Basic Parameter Determination

The fundamental parameters used for TAWS functions are.

**Table 8-12: HTAWS Basic Parameters Determination**

| **Parameter** | **Source** | **Notes** |
|---|---|---|
| Aircraft position, groundspeed and track | GPS/SBAS | HFOM must be less than or equal to the greater of 0.3 NM or horizontal alert limit (HAL) for mode of flight. |
| MSL Altitude | GPS/SBAS | Geodetic height converted to MSL with the current EGM database. To be considered valid for use as MSL altitude, the VFOM must be less than or equal to 106 feet. |

**Table 8-12: HTAWS Basic Parameters Determination**

| Parameter | Source | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| | | Secondary source of MSL altitude is barometric altitude from an air data computer. Barometric altitude is determined based upon a barometric setting in the following order of preference:<br>1) If either the pilot or co-pilot system is operating in QNH mode, the QNH barometric setting is used (i.e. on-side barometric setting preferred); or<br>2) If GPS/SBAS geodetic height has been valid within the last 30 minutes, a barometric setting derived from the GPS/SBAS geodetic height is used.<br>If neither of the above conditions is met, MSL altitude is marked as invalid.<br>When a reporting station elevation is determined and outside air temperature is valid, a temperature correction is applied.<br>TAWS uses the lower of the barometric altitude or the temperature-corrected altitude. In the case of QNH-mode barometric setting, reporting station elevation is derived from waypoint or active runway elevations in the active flight plan using the following logic: |

**Table 8-12: HTAWS Basic Parameters Determination**

| Parameter | Source | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| | | 1) If the aircraft is in **TERMINAL, DEPARTURE**, **IFR APPROACH**, or **VFR APPROACH** mode and an active runway exists, reporting station elevation is the elevation of the active runway threshold.<br>2) Otherwise, if the aircraft is in **TERMINAL** mode, reporting station elevation is the elevation of the airport causing **TERMINAL** mode.<br>3) In **ENROUTE** mode, no reporting station elevation is determined.<br>In the case of GPS/SBAS geodetic height-based barometric setting, reporting station elevation is the GPS MSL altitude reported at the time the barometric setting was determined (see Section 3 Display Symbology). |
| Terrain Data | Terrain Database | Considered valid for use, when the following conditions apply:<br>1) Aircraft position is valid;<br>2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the terrain database; and<br>3) Terrain database is not corrupt as determined by CRC-32 checks at system initialization and during runtime. |

**Table 8-12: HTAWS Basic Parameters Determination**

| Parameter | Source | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| Obstacle Data | Obstacle Database | Considered valid for use, when the following conditions apply:<br>1) Aircraft position is valid;<br>2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the obstacle database; and<br>3) Obstacle database is not corrupt as determined by CRC-32 checks at system initialization. |
| AGL Altitude | Radar Altitude | Secondary source for AGL altitude is MSL altitude less terrain altitude. |
| Vertical Speed | Instantaneous vertical speed | IVSI values come from barometric vertical speed from an ADC "quickened" with vertical acceleration from an AHRS. Secondary source for vertical speed is barometric vertical speed from an ADC. Tertiary source for vertical speed is GPS/SBAS vertical speed providing the VFOM is less than or equal to 106 feet. |
| Terrain Closure Rate | Smoothed first derivative of AGL altitude | Due to the multiple sources for altitude, there are multiple sources for terrain closure rate. |
| Runway/Reference point location | EFIS navigation database | Considered valid for use, when the following conditions apply:<br>1) Aircraft position is valid;<br>2) Aircraft position is within boundaries of the navigation database; and<br>3) Navigation database is not corrupt as determined by a CRC-32 check at system initialization. |

## 8.11. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Normal Operation)

The following automatic inhibit functions occur during normal TAWS operation to prevent nuisance warnings:

1) **FLTA function** is automatically inhibited when in terminal, departure, IFR approach, or VFR approach modes and within 2 NM and 1900’ of the reference point.

2) **GPWS Modes 1 through 4** are automatically inhibited when below 50 feet AGL (radar altimeter AGL altitude) or below 100 feet AGL (terrain database AGL altitude).

3) **GPWS Mode 4** is inhibited while Mode 3 is armed.

4) **GPWS Mode 5** is inhibited below 200’ AGL. This form of automatic inhibit remains active until the aircraft climbs above 1000’ AGL and prevents nuisance alarms on missed approach when glideslope receiver detects glideslope sidelobes.

5) **FLTA function** is automatically inhibited when indicated airspeed or groundspeed is below the HTAWS FLTA inhibit speed.

### 8.11.1. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Abnormal Operation)

The following automatic inhibit functions occur during the specified abnormal operations:

1) **Autorotation detection**: When the low torque sensor is active, an Enhanced HTAWS enters autorotation mode. In this mode:

    a) FLTA is inhibited;

    b) GPWS Mode 1 is inhibited;

    c) GPWS Mode 2 is inhibited; and

    d) GPWS Mode 4 uses a modified envelope (see § 8.7).

2) **System Sensor/Database Failures**: See Section 4 Revisionary Modes for system sensor failure results.

**Table 8-13: TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions**

| Sensor | Parameters Lost | Terrain Displaced | FLTA | GPWS Mode 1 | GPWS Mode 2 | GPWS Mode 3 | GPWS Mode 4 | GPWS Mode 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| GPS/SBAS (H) | AC Position | Inhibit | Inhibit | | | | | |
| TD | Terrain Elev. | Inhibit | Inhibit | | | | | |
| ILS | Glide-slope Dev. | | | | | | | Inhibit |
| MSL | MSL Altitude | Inhibit | Inhibit | | | | | |
| GPS/SBAS (H) + RADLT | AC Position, AGL Altitude | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit |
| GPS/SBAS (V) + ADC | MSL Altitude, VSI | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | | Inhibit | | |
| TD + RADLT | Terrain Elev. AGL Altitude | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit |

**Table 8-13: TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions**

| Sensor | Parameters Lost | Terrain Displaced | FLTA | GPWS Mode 1 | GPWS Mode 2 | GPWS Mode 3 | GPWS Mode 4 | GPWS Mode 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MSL + RADLT | MSL Altitude, AGL Altitude | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit |
| GPS/SBAS (V) + ADC + RADLT | MSL Altitude, VSI, AGL ALT | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit | Inhibit |

Notes:

1) Combinations listed give the minimum combinations with the worst consequences. Many other combinations are possible, but their effects are subsumed within the combinations listed.

2) GPS/SBAS (H) = HFOM > max (0.3NM, HAL). Indication is loss of terrain display on PFD and ND.

3) GPS/SBAS (V) = VFOM > 106'.

4) GPS/SBAS = GPS/SBAS (H) + GPS/SBAS (V). Indication is loss of terrain display on PFD and ND.

5) TD = Terrain Data invalid. This would be due to being beyond the database boundaries or database corruption.

6) ADC = Air Data Computer. Indication is ADC1 FAIL or ADC2 FAIL flag, or red Xs indicating a single ADC failure.

7) RADALT = Radar Altimeter. Indication is lack of radar altimeter source indication on radar altimeter display, RALT FAIL.

8) ILS = ILS Glideslope Deviation. Indication is lack of glideslope needles.

9) MSL = MSL Altitude Invalid. Indication is PLT1 TAWS / PLT2 TAWS or CPLT1 TAWS / CPLT2 TAWS in the absence of other failures.

### 8.11.2. TAWS Manual Inhibit Functions

The pilot may select the following manual inhibit functions:

1) **Terrain Display** function may be inhibited using an EFIS soft menu declutter control. The TAWS coloring of the Terrain Display function can be inhibited using the menu.


**Figure 8-11: Terrain Display Functionality**

2) **All TAWS** alerting functions (including popup functionality) are manually inhibited by actuation of the external TAWS inhibit switch. Terrain display functions, including FLTA warning (red) and caution (amber [yellow]) flags on the ND, are not affected by the TAWS inhibit switch.

3) **Low Altitude Mode Switch** may be actuated to inhibit or modify parameters for alerting functions. This switch desensitizes HTAWS when purposefully flying VFR at low altitudes with the following effects:

   a) GPWS Mode 1 is inhibited.

   b) GPWS Mode 2 is inhibited.

   c) GPWS Mode 3 is inhibited.

4) **GPWS Mode 5** is manually inhibited with the glideslope cancel switch when below 1000’ AGL. GPWS Mode 5 manual inhibit automatically resets by ascending above 1000’ AGL.

## 8.12. TAWS Selections on PFD

PFD declutter menu includes three option possibilities for TAWS:

1) SVS TAWS

2) SVS BASIC

3) None

The following figures show all possible scenarios including “None” where the aircraft pierces the TAWS FLTA terrain envelope, and SVS TAWS automatically becomes enabled for the safest possible warning alert condition.


**Figure 8-12: PFD SVS BASIC Option**

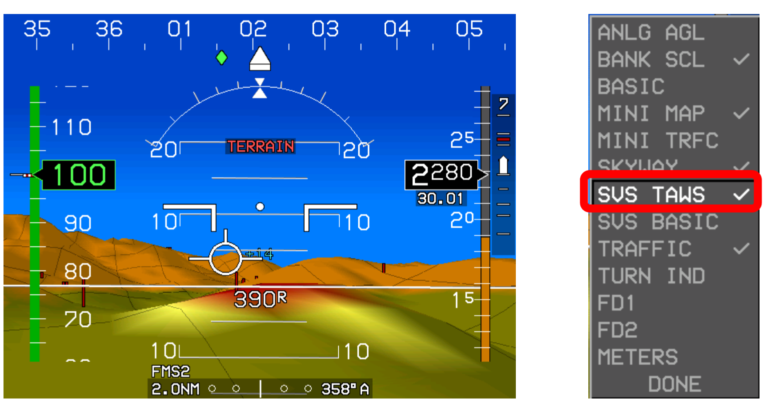



**Figure 8-13: PFD SVS TAWS Option**

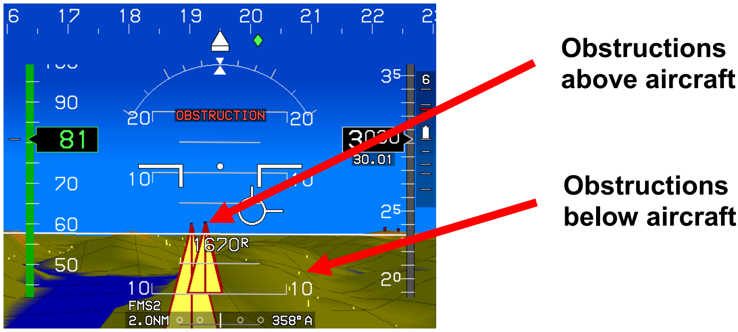
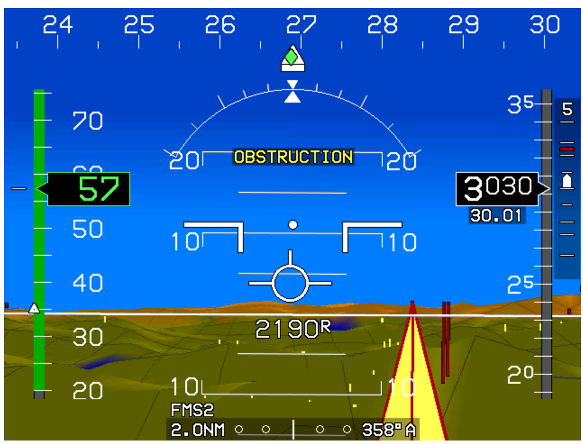
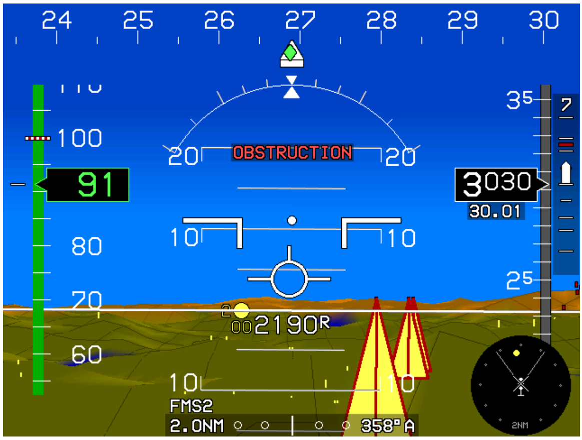



**Figure 8-14: PFD SVS TAWS Option and Obstructions**




Time-Critical Obstruction within TAWS FLTA caution envelope with aural annunciation “Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction”. The obstruction symbols flash.

**Figure 8-15: PFD Obstruction Caution**




Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope with aural annunciation “Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction.” The obstruction symbols flash.

**Figure 8-16: PFD Obstruction Warning**

If SVS TAWS and SVS BASIC are not checked and the aircraft pierces the TAWS FLTA terrain envelope, the EFIS automatically enables SVS TAWS. TERRAIN or TERRAIN takes precedence over OBSTRUCTION or OBSTRUCTION.

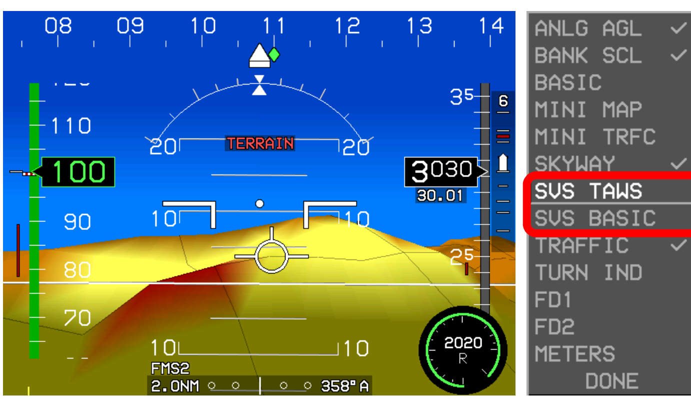



**Figure 8-17: Automatic PFD Terrain Warning**

Terrain and obstruction symbology for FLTA alerts meet the following requirements:

1) Terrain cells that pierce the FLTA warning volume are colored red.
2) Terrain cells that pierce the FLTA caution volume are colored yellow.
3) Obstructions whose tops pierce the FLTA warning volume are visually distinct from the non-alerting obstructions and will flash.
4) Obstructions whose tops pierce the FLTA caution volume are visually distinct from non-alerting obstructions.

# Section 9 Appendix

## 9.1. Appendix

This section contains a variety of useful information not found elsewhere in the document and includes operating tips, system specifications, and environmental requirements.

## 9.2. Operating Tips

With the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS installed and certified in all categories of certified aircraft, numerous tips and suggestions are available for obtaining the maximum performance and benefit from this system. Additional operating tips are available with future releases of this publication.

## 9.3. Domestic or International Flight Planning

Due to the differences in every aircraft avionics suite installation for the pilot to determine what equipment code is applicable for domestic or international flight plans, the aircraft operator must determine which certifications pertain to them. Visit the FAA website, www.faa.gov, for flight plan guidance for both domestic and international filers, as well as, information and documentation regarding FAA, ICAO, and flight services agreements and procedures.

## 9.4. Descent Planning

Instead of performing conventional time/speed/distance/descent-rate calculations, use the waypoint symbol for descent planning. Simply maintain the cruise altitude until the "X" at the bottom of the waypoint symbol is 2-3 degrees below the horizon (as indicated by the pitch scale), and then begin a 2-3 degree descent. Maintain the correct descent angle by keeping the flight path marker positioned on the waypoint "X" symbol. Following the skyway boxes assures the VNAV descent angle is maintained.

## 9.5. Terrain Clearance

Use the flight path marker to evaluate climb performance for terrain clearance. If climbing at the best climb speed to clear terrain and the flight path marker is overlaying the terrain, which must be cleared, the climb rate is insufficient. Either the course or climb rate must be altered to adequately clear the terrain. If the flight path marker is well clear of the terrain (overlaying blue sky), the climb is sufficient for the present time, and no further action is necessary until level off.

## 9.6. Departure Airport Information

On startup, all information for the departure airport is readily available. The altimeter is automatically set to the nearest IFR runway touchdown zone elevation. Press **NRST** to reveal the nearest airports when highlighted where all important data such as frequencies are displayed.

## 9.7. Unique Names for Flight Plans

Multiple routes between the same airport pairs are numbered automatically (KCEW-KDHN) [0], (KCEW-KDHN) [1], etc.). The work-around is to apply this easily remembered differentiation. If a route is routinely flown from one airport to another but different routing is necessary due to weather, hot MOA areas, etc., up to 10 different flight plans may be created for the same destination.

As an example for departing Sikes on a northern routing (KCEWN) or a southern routing (KCEWS), create two different user waypoints at the departure airport named KCEWN and KCEWS followed by different routing to clear the MOA or whatever creates the necessity for specific routing.

## 9.8. Altimeter Settings

Use caution when setting the altimeter and inadvertently changing the transition level. If this is reset to a lower than normal altitude, CHK BARO may appear due to the altimeter setting not on 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar.

## 9.9. Warnings, Cautions, and Advisories

Review Section 2 System Overview for the conditions precisely defining scenarios for various time-critical warning alerts, warning alerts, master visual and audio alerts, time-critical caution alerts and advisory alerts, as they appear including the conditions and time delay when applicable.

## 9.10. Magnetic vs. True North Modes of Operation

There are two modes for the ADAHRS:

1) Slaved mode (i.e., compass rose stabilized by Earth's magnetic flux horizontal field) is the normal mode. It works well over most of the surface of the earth (i.e., areas with a horizontal field of 5000nT or above, which includes about 2/3rds of Canadian NDA). ADAHRS senses magnetic flux with a 3D magnetometer. Performance in small horizontal fields is installation dependent as variable magnetic disturbances from the aircraft may begin to predominate.

2) Free or "DG" mode (i.e., compass rose not stabilized by the Earth's magnetic flux horizontal field and subject to drift) is used in areas of magnetic disturbances (oilrigs, MRI machines, etc.) or in areas where the horizontal field is too weak. In Free/"DG" mode, heading no longer corrects towards Earth's magnetic flux horizontal field, and the pilot may "slew" the heading solution.

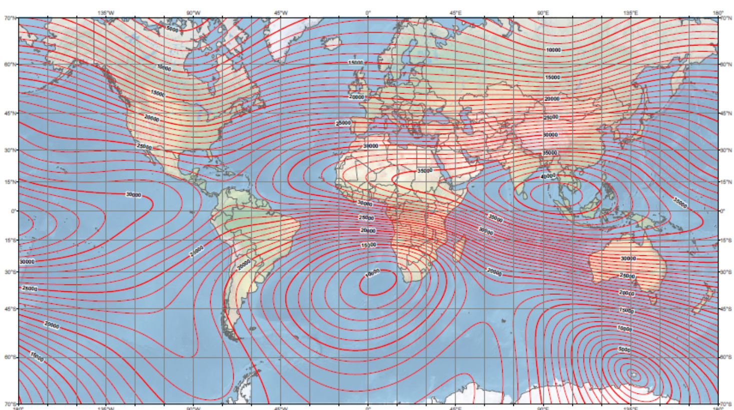


**Figure 9-1: US/UK World Magnetic Model**

There are two modes for the EFIS:

1) Magnetic North mode: Heading from the AHRS (whether slaved or Free/"DG") is used as-is and is expected to reflect magnetic north. GPS track is converted from true north-referenced to magnetic north-referenced using a magnetic variation database. PFD scenes and compass rose symbols are aligned with magnetic north, and wind is displayed referenced to magnetic north.

2) True North mode: GPS Track is used as-is and reflects true north. When AHRS is in slaved mode, heading from the AHRS is converted from magnetic north-referenced to true north-referenced using a magnetic variation database. When AHRS is in Free/"DG" mode, heading from the AHRS is used as-is and is expected to reflect true north. PFD scenes and compass rose symbols are aligned with true north, and wind is displayed referenced to true north.

**NOTE:**

Designating magnetic north vs. true north mode is critical since it determines how inputs are used – i.e., the relationship between GPS track and ADAHRS heading. Mixing things up in Free/"DG" mode (i.e., slewing the compass rose to match magnetic north when in true north mode and vice-versa) may result in large errors in wind calculations and GPS track/flight path marker displays.

## 9.11. Altitude Miscompare Threshold

The altitude miscompare threshold is based upon allowable altitude error. There are two components to allowable altitude error, instrument error and installed system error. Allowable instrument error is based upon the values of SAE AS8002A Table 1 as follows.

**Table 9-1: Allowable Instrument Error**

| Altitude | Allowed Error |
|---|---|
| Sea Level | 25' |
| 1,000' | 25' |
| 2,000' | 25' |
| 3,000' | 25' |
| 4,000' | 25' |
| 5,000' | 25' |
| 8,000' | 30' |
| 11,000' | 35' |
| 14,000' | 40' |
| 17,000' | 45' |
| 20,000' | 50' |

Allowable installed system error is added on top of instrument error and these values are derived from the regulations as follows.

| Table 9-2: Regulatory Reference | |
|---|---|
| **Regulation** | **Allowed Error** |
| 14 CFR § 27.1325 | At sea level, the greater of 30’ or 30% of the calibrated airspeed in knots. This increases proportionally to SAE AS8002A Table 1 at higher altitudes. |
| 14 CFR § 29.1325 | |

An allowable altitude error is computed for each compared value and added together to create the altitude miscompare threshold. This accommodates for the values deviating in different directions.

Worked example for a calibrated airspeed of 100 knots and comparing a first altitude of 3,490’ with a second altitude of 3,510’:

1) Calculate allowable instrument error based upon altitudes:
   Allowable Instrument Error #1 = 50’
   Allowable Instrument Error #2 = 50’

2) Calculate allowable installed system error based upon altitudes and calibrated airspeed:
   Allowable Installed System Error #1 = 30’
   Allowable Installed System Error #2 = 30’

3) Calculate altitude miscompare threshold based upon sum of above allowable errors:
   Altitude Miscompare Threshold = 160’

## 9.12. Airspeed Miscompare Threshold

Airspeed miscompare threshold is based upon allowable airspeed error. There are two components to allowable airspeed error, instrument error and installed system error. Allowable instrument error is based upon the values of SAE AS8002A Table 3 as follows.

| Table 9-3: Airspeed Error | |
|---|---|
| **Calibrated Airspeed** | **Allowed Error** |
| 50 knots | 5 knots |
| 80 knots | 3 knots |
| 100 knots | 2 knots |
| 120 knots | 2 knots |
| 150 knots | 2 knots |
| 200 knots | 2 knots |

Allowable installed system error is added on top of instrument. Error and these values are derived from the regulations as follows.

**Table 9-4: Airspeed Regulatory Reference**

| Regulation | Allowed Error |
|---|---|
| 14 CFR § 27.1323 | Starting from (0.8 x $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{CLIMB}}$): Greater of 5 knots or 3%.<br>Do not perform a comparison if either value is below (0.8 x $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{CLIMB}}$). |
| 14 CFR § 29.1323 | For climbing flight (VSI > 250 feet per minute):<br>Starting from ($\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{TOS}}$ – 10): 10 knots<br>Do not perform a comparison if either value is below ($\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{TOS}}$ – 10)<br>For other flight regimes:<br>Starting from (0.8 x $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{TOS}}$): Greater of 5 knots or 3%.<br>Do not perform a comparison if either value is below (0.8 x $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{TOS}}$).<br>Note: System uses $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{CLIMB}}$ as a substitute for $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{TOS}}$. |

An allowable airspeed error is computed for each compared value and added together to create the airspeed miscompare threshold and accommodates for the values deviating in different directions.

## 9.13. Jeppesen NavData Chart Compatibility

As GPS navigation, flight management systems, computer flight maps, and computer flight planning systems have gained acceptance, avionics companies and software developers have added more features. Even with the many systems available today, paper enroute, departure, arrival, and approach charts are still required and necessary for flight. Avionics systems, flight planning, computer mapping systems, and associated databases *do not* provide all of the navigation information needed to conduct a legal and safe flight. They are not a substitute for current aeronautical charts.

See www.Jeppesen.com for the latest information on coding instrument procedures, naming conventions, altitudes within the database, and aeronautical information compatibility.

## 9.14. ARINC-424 Path-Terminator Leg Types

For information, definitions, and examples, visit the FAA website, www.faa.gov, to view the Instrument Procedures Handbook (FAA-H-8083-16A).

## 9.15. Data Logging and Retrieval

The EFIS logs all data associated with a flight, including all flight instrument and navigation data, which may be downloaded for review after flight. Data from the last 5 flights or 20 hours are logged at a one-second interval.

Data logging files contain recordings of flight and engine parameters of up to five hours each from the previous five system operations. During system operation, flight and engine parameters are recorded every one second. Each time the parameters are recorded, a Zulu time stamp followed by three lines of comma delimited ASCII text data are written where the first line contains flight parameters and, the second line contains engine parameters.

With IDU powered off, open USB door, and insert USB flash drive. Power-up and select `Download LOG Files` to create a "\log" directory on the USB flash drive and copy the data logging files into the directory.

**CAUTION:**

**Always install a valid USB flash drive in the IDU prior to activating any GMF to avoid erroneous failure indications or corruption of the IDU.**

### 9.15.1. Delete LOG Files Delete LOG Files

1) If there are problems updating a navigation database or application software due to an excessively large log file, select "Delete Log Files" to delete all log files in the log directory.

   Files named "LOG00.dat" thru "LOG04.DAT" and "MSGLOG.DAT" are deleted. This does not affect operations of the EFIS, as the EFIS generates new "LOG00.DAT" and "MSGLOG.DAT" files once a flight has started.

2) Press any button on the IDU or push ❶ to return to the ground maintenance menu.

### 9.15.2. Logged Flags and Custom CAS Messages

Flags and custom CAS messages are logged in memory to a file named “caslog00.csv” (*.csv files may be opened in Microsoft Excel or similar spreadsheet software). In addition, data from the previous four flights are saved in files “caslog01.csv” through “caslog04.csv.” Upon system start, the existing “caslog00.csv” through “caslog03.csv” files are renamed “caslog01.csv” through “caslog04.csv,” and “caslog00.csv” is opened for active logging.

The first line of the log files contains column headings related to the flag’s text (for standard warning functions) or the “CAS Log File Text” parameter (for custom CAS messages). All standard warning functions are logged. Only custom CAS messages with valid “CAS Log File Text” parameters (i.e., not an empty string) are logged. Within the data fields of the log file, values are written as follows.

**Table 9-5: Log File Values**

| Category | Value |
|---|---|
| NORMAL | 0 |
| ADVISORY | 1 |
| CAUTION | 2 |
| WARNING | 3 |

## 9.16. Routes and Waypoints

### 9.16.1. VFR Flight Planning

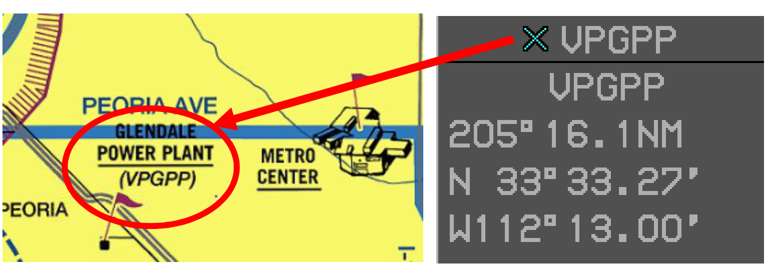



**Figure 9-2: VFR Waypoint**

The navigation database includes VFR waypoints, which consist of five digits beginning with “VP.” These may be found on VFR charts and should be loaded in the FMS prior to flight to ensure they are available in the database, and the INFO checked for proper location.

### 9.16.2. Download Routes and User Waypoints

1) Select Download Routes and User Waypoints from the GMF to download all routes and user waypoints stored in the IDU to the USB flash drive. This option is useful for fleet operations where multiple aircraft fly the same routes.

2) Routes are stored on USB flash drive as NAME1-NAME2.RTE where NAME1 is the 1 to 5-character designation of the origin waypoint and NAME2 is the 1 to 5 character designation of the destination waypoint. User waypoints are stored on the USB flash drive as "USER.DAT."

### 9.16.3. Upload Routes and User Waypoints

To copy all routes and user waypoints from a USB flash drive to the IDU, select Upload Routes and User Waypoints from GMF. Use this option in conjunction with the "Download Routes and User Waypoints" option to upload the same routes and user waypoints in multiple aircraft.

### 9.16.4. Delete Routes/User Waypoints

When corrupted routes cause the IDU to continually reboot, select "Delete Routes" on the Ground Maintenance page to remove all routes and the user waypoint file (USER.DAT) from the IDU.

## 9.17. EFIS Training Tool (ETT)

See the Installation and User Guide distributed with the ETT install files for directions to install and use the EFIS Training Tool.

Use the ETT to create routes and user waypoints to save and upload into the aircraft mounted IDUs. When uploading a saved flight plan (route) into an aircraft mounted IDU, the following rules apply:

1) Either upload flight plan (route) into each IDU to ensure flight plan (route) is saved in the route directory (all other displays); Or

2) Upload flight plan (route) into one display while in the ground mode. When in flight mode, activate that flight plan and on any other display, view active flight plan and press **SAVE (L1)** to save flight plan in the route directory. This action will save the new uploaded flight plan (route) in all other displays.

**NOTE:**

In a two-sided system, crossfill must be enabled to save flight plan to all other displays on each side of the system.

The ETT has a bezel with simulated buttons and encoders responsive to mouse and keyboard messages. Bezel graphics are derived from actual bezel design data, and the ETT presents an active display with 1:1 pixel correspondence to an actual IDU display. The audio output capability for the ETT matches the audio functionality in the actual IDU. This training tool simulates the functionalities of the IDU, which begins flight in Reno, Nevada at approximately 8000’ MSL. If different ETT startup conditions are required, they may be edited.

Flight plans may be created (on the PFD or MFD), stored, and activated in the same manner as on the EFIS displays installed in the aircraft. This allows for moving the start point to anywhere in the world where loaded NavData is present for practicing published procedures. As with the demonstrator program, the aircraft begins flying at approximately 8000’ MSL (unless the simulate.ini program is loaded) intercepting the first leg at a 45° angle.

## 9.18. USB Flash Drive Limitations

When powering up the IDU with a USB flash drive inserted and “Error: No updater files found on USB drive” displays, the USB is likely not acceptable for loading or transferring data.

1) Ensure the USB flash drive with required files is properly connected.

2) Try again after reboot.

3) Press any button to continue.

4) Try a different USB flash drive.

**NOTE:**

Maximum USB memory is not a factor, but the following should be considered:

USB must be formatted as FAT.

FAT-16 for USB Drives 2 GB or smaller

FAT-32 for any larger sized drive.

If the drive is not recognized, try another source.

## 9.19. Certification Basis

The following TSOs are considered applicable to the IDU-450 (depending upon the features of the installed software).

| Document Number | Document Title |
|---|---|
| ARINC 429-16 | Mark 33 Digital Information Transfer System (DITS) |
| ARINC 735A-1 | Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System |
| EIA-232D | Interface between Data Terminal Equipment and Data |
| EIA-422A | Electrical Characteristics of Balanced Voltage Digital Interface Circuits |
| FAA AC 23.1311-1B | Installation of Electronic Display in Part 23 Airplanes |
| RTCA/DO-155 | Minimum Performance Standards - Airborne Low-Range Radio Altimeters |
| RTCA/DO-229D | Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Global Positioning System/Wide Area Augmentation System Airborne Equipment |
| RTCA/DO-283A | Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Required Navigation Performance for Area Navigation |
| SAE AS396B | Bank and Pitch Instruments (Indicating Stabilized Type) |
| SAE AS8002A | Air Data Computer - Minimum Performance Standard |
| TSO-C4c | Bank and Pitch Instruments |
| TSO-C87 | Airborne Low-Range Radio Altimeter |
| TSO-C106 | Air Data Computer |

| Document Number | Document Title | |
|---|---|---|
| TSO-C194 | Terrain Awareness and Warning System | |
| TSO-C113 | Airborne Multipurpose Electronic Displays | SAE AS8034 |
| TSO-C52b | Flight Director Equipment | SAE AS8008 |
| TSO-C146a | Stand-Alone airborne navigation equipment using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) | |
| N/A | Airplane Aerodynamics and Performance, Lan and Roskam, 1981. | |

## 9.20. Environmental Requirements

The IDU-450 meets the requirements of RTCA/DO-160F requirements, Genesys Aerosystems claims the following:

1) The coldest storage temperature is -55°C.

2) Coldest condition in which the units can be powered up is -40°C and will take at least 4 minutes to warm up with the internal heater circuit operating.

| Sec. | Condition | Cat. | Test Category Description | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.0 | Temperature and Altitude | F2 | Equipment intended for installation in non-pressurized and non-controlled temperature location in an aircraft that is operated at altitudes up to 55,000 ft. (16,800 m) MSL.<br>Operating Low Temp: -55 deg C<br>Operating High temp: +70 deg C<br>Ground Survival Low Temp: -55 deg C<br>Ground Survival High Temp: +85 deg C<br>Altitude: +55,000 feet | +75°C for Short-Time Operating High Temp. Cat. V (30 minutes) for loss of cooling. |

| Sec. | Condition | Cat. | Test Category Description | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5.0 | Temperature Variation | B | Equipment in a non-temperature-controlled or partially temperature controlled internal section of the aircraft. | |
| 6.0 | Humidity | B | Equipment intended for installation in civil aircraft, non-civil transport aircraft and other classes, installed under conditions in which a more severe humidity environment than standard conditions may be encountered. | |
| 7.0 | Operational Shocks & Crash Safety | B | Equipment generally installed in fixed-wing aircraft or helicopters and tested for standard operational shock and crash safety. | Aircraft Type 5, Test Type R for Crash Safety Sustained Test |
| 8.0 | Vibration | H + R + U | H – Demonstrates performance at high-level, short duration transient vibration levels<br>R - (Fixed-Wing) Demonstrates performance at higher, robust vibration levels and after long term vibration exposure.<br>U - (Helicopter w/Unknown Frequencies) Demonstrates performance at higher vibration levels and after long term vibration exposure for fuselage and instrument panel equipment when the | Cat. H, curve R<br>Cat. R, curves B, B1<br>Cat. U, curve G |

| Sec. | Condition | Cat. | Test Category Description | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | specific rotor frequencies are unknown. | |
| 9.0 | Explosive Atmosphere | X | Not Applicable | |
| 10.0 | Waterproofness | W | Equipment is installed in locations where it may be subjected to falling water, such as condensation. | Drip proof test |
| 11.0 | Fluids Susceptibility | X | Not Applicable | |
| 12.0 | Sand and Dust | S | Equipment is installed in locations subject to blowing sand and dust. | |
| 13.0 | Fungus Resistance | F | Demonstrate whether equipment material is adversely affected by fungi growth. | By Analysis |
| 14.0 | Salt Fog | S | Equipment is subjected to a corrosive atmosphere | |
| 15.0 | Magnetic Effect | Z | Magnetic deflection distance less than 0.3m. | |
| 16.0 | Power Input | Z | Equipment intended for use on aircraft DC electrical systems where the DC supply has a battery whose capacity is small compared with the capacity of the DC generators. | 200 ms power interruption capacity |
| 17.0 | Voltage Spike | A | Equipment intended primarily for installation where a high degree of protection against damage by voltage spikes is required. | |

| Sec. | Condition | Cat. | Test Category Description | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 18.0 | Audio Frequency Conducted Susceptibility-Power Inputs | Z | Equipment intended for use on aircraft DC electrical systems where the DC supply may not have a battery of significant capacity floating on the dc bus at all times. | |
| 19.0 | Induced Signal Susceptibility | ZC | Equipment intended primarily for operation in systems where interference-free operation is required on aircraft whose primary power is constant frequency or DC. | |
| 20.0 | Radio Frequency Susceptibility (Radiated and Conducted) | Y | Equipment and interconnecting wiring installed in severe electromagnetic environments and to show compliance with the interim HIRF rules. | Radiated: K Minimum level at all frequencies to be 100V/m |
| 21.0 | Emission of Radio Frequency Energy | M | Equipment in areas where apertures are EM significant but not in direct view of aircraft antennas, such as passenger cabin or cockpit. | |

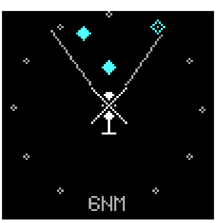
| Sec. | Condition | Cat. | Test Category Description | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 22.0 | Lightning Induced Transient Susceptibility | A3J33 | Equipment interconnected with wiring installed within any airframe or airframe section when structural resistance is also a significant source of induced transients, (i.e., carbon fiber composite structures). Level 3 designates equipment and interconnecting wiring installed in a moderately exposed environment. | Level 4 for MSU and OAT Probe pins. |
| 23.0 | Lightning Direct Effects | X | Not Applicable | |
| 24.0 | Icing | X | Not Applicable | |
| 25.0 | Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) | A | Electronic equipment that is installed, repaired, or operated in an aerospace environment. | |
| 26.0 | Fire, Flammability | C | Non-metallic equipment, component parts, sub-assemblies installed in pressurized or non-pressurized zones and non-fire zones with largest dimension greater than 50 mm. | By Analysis |

# Traffic

## T 1. Traffic Symbology


**Figure T-1: Traffic Symbology**

## T 2. Traffic Thumbnail




When selected from declutter options, the traffic thumbnail is displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD above the active waypoint identifier and has clock face markings fixed at the 6 NM scale.

**Figure T-2: Traffic Thumbnail**

The traffic thumbnail is automatically enabled while there is an active traffic warning (TA or RA) and the aircraft is above 500’ AGL. During a traffic warning, the traffic thumbnail scale automatically adjusts in multiple multiples of 2 NM (2 NM, 4NM, or 6NM), to optimally display the traffic. While the traffic thumbnail is mutually exclusive with the mini-map, so it too disappears in unusual attitude mode.

## T 3. Traffic Display Definitions

1) Resolution Advisory (**RA**): Traffic with a dangerous closest point of approach and generates climb or descent commands as defined by internal TCAS-II sensor logic.

2) Traffic Advisory (**TA**): Traffic with a dangerous closest point of approach as defined by internal traffic sensor logic.

3) Proximate Advisory (**PA**): Traffic within 6 NM and ±1200 feet from ownship that is not a RA or TA.

4) Other Traffic (**OT**): Traffic beyond 6 NM or ±1200 feet from ownship that is not a RA or TA.

### T 3.1. Traffic Rendering Rules

Traffic thumbnail and PFD traffic are rendered as follows.

**Table T-1: Traffic Symbology**

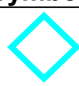
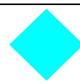
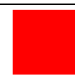
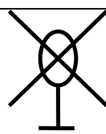
| Type Traffic | Symbology | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| TCAS-I, TCAS-II, and TIS-A |  Other Traffic |  Proximate Advisory |  Traffic Advisory (Flashing) |  Resolution Advisory (Flashing) |
| Ownship Symbol |  | | | |

**Table T-2: Traffic Rendering Rules**

| Type Traffic | Distance | Results |
|---|---|---|
| OT and PA Traffic | Beyond 6 NM | Not displayed |
| TAS | Within 200’ of ground | Not displayed |
| OT and PA Traffic with no bearing | Not displayed | |

**Table T-3: Pilot Selected OT and PA Traffic Altitude-Filter**

| Mode | Parameter |
|---|---|
| **AUTO** | If aircraft VSI is less than -500FPM, traffic within +2,700 and -9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.<br>If aircraft VSI is more than +500FPM, traffic within -2,700 and +9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed. |

**Table T-3: Pilot Selected OT and PA Traffic Altitude-Filter**

| Mode | Parameter |
|---|---|
| | Otherwise, traffic within -2,700 and +2,700 feet of aircraft altitude displayed. |
| **ABOVE** | Traffic within -2,700 and +9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed. |
| **BELOW** | Traffic within +2,700 and -9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed. |
| **NORMAL** | Traffic within -2,700 and +2,700 feet of aircraft altitude displayed. |
| **ALL** | All received traffic displayed, no altitude filtering. |

## T 4. Dedicated Traffic Page

When selected, a traffic page is available based roughly on the appearance of a TCAS display and has the following elements.

### T 4.1. Traffic Display Format

The traffic page is a centered display format with the ownship symbol centered in the traffic page with data displayed out to an equal distance in all directions. When the AHRS is in DG Mode, “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol.

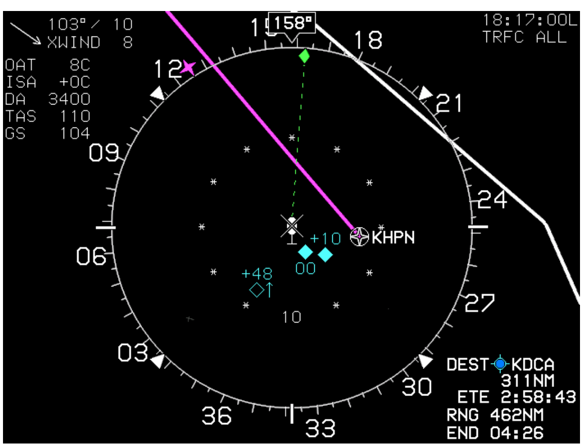



**Figure T-3: Traffic Display Format**

### T 4.2. Traffic Page Screen Range

The following traffic screen selected ranges are available (all distances represent the distance from the ownship symbol to the compass rose): 5NM, 10NM, and 20NM.

A TCAS range ring is centered upon the ownship symbol to help the pilot judge range to displayed symbols with a 3NM radius in 5NM and 10NM ranges, has a radius of half the range in 20NM, 50NM, and 100NM ranges, and is presented on the TCAS range ring (e.g., 3NM, 10NM, 25NM, or 50NM).

### T 4.3. Compass Rose Symbols


**Normal Mode** **True North Mode**

**Figure T-4: Traffic Screen Range Compass Rose Symbols**

The compass rose is aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input. A digital heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the compass rose boundary circle. Compass rose symbols are as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology. A green dashed lubber line connects the center of the aircraft symbol and the track pointer.

If a target altitude is set and not captured, an altitude capture predictor arc is displayed on the lubber line at a point corresponding with predicted climb or descent distance (based upon current VSI). A top of descent symbol is shown at the point where a VNAV descent is predicted to commence. The track pointer, lubber line, altitude capture predictor arc, and top of descent symbol are not displayed when groundspeed is less than 30 knots. A pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the compass rose. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer is displayed on the heading scale at a point corresponding with the active waypoint and turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

## T 4.4. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

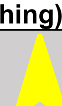
When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path, when selected, is shown on the traffic page in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all the requirements of GPS/SBAS path definition and matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map). Active flight plan path waypoint symbols for fly-over waypoints are distinct from fly-by waypoints and consist of the waypoint symbol within a circle. When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray dashed lines.

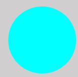
When there is an active waypoint and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is manual, the manual course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint and matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta and turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The traffic page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

When traffic source is ADS-B, traffic vectors and aircraft identification data are shown. The traffic vector is a line connecting the traffic's current position with the traffic's predicted position based on its current track and groundspeed. The prediction time, in minutes, is pilot-selectable. Aircraft identification (e.g. aircraft registration number or scheduled airline flight number) is text located near the traffic symbol in the same color as the traffic symbol.

**Table T-4: ADS-B and TIS-B Traffic Symbols**

| | Other Traffic | Proximate Advisory | Traffic Advisory (Flashing) |
|---|---|---|---|
| High-Integrity Traffic with Track Information |  |  |  |
| High-Integrity Traffic without Track Information |  |  |  |

| Table T-4: ADS-B and TIS-B Traffic Symbols | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Other Traffic** | **Proximate Advisory** | **Traffic Advisory (Flashing)** |
| Degraded Position Traffic with Track Information |  |  |  |
| Degraded Position Traffic without Track Information |  |  |  |

### T 4.5. Clock and Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of traffic page.


**Figure T-5: Clock and Options**

| Table T-5: Clock and Options | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Feature** | **Options** | **Notes** |
| **Zulu Time or Local Offset** | **hh:mm:ssZ hh:mm:ssL** | Synchronized with the GPS/SBAS constellation. |
| **Traffic Status** | Enabled or Disabled | If traffic is disabled, overlying red “X”. When enabled, traffic altitude filtering is as follows (see Table T-3).<br>AUTO = **TRFC AUTO**<br>ABOVE = **TRFC ABV**<br>BELOW = **TRFC BLW**<br>NORMAL = **TRFC NORM**<br>ALL = **TRFC ALL** |
| **ADS-B Traffic Vector Length** | | Length of traffic vector annunciated as VECT## (traffic vector length in minutes) |

## T 4.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions

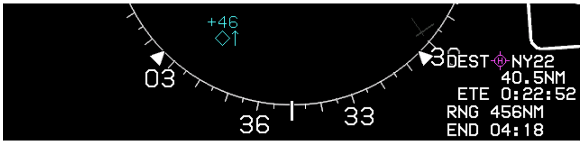



**Figure T-6: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions**

## T 5. MFD Traffic Format (FORMAT) Menu

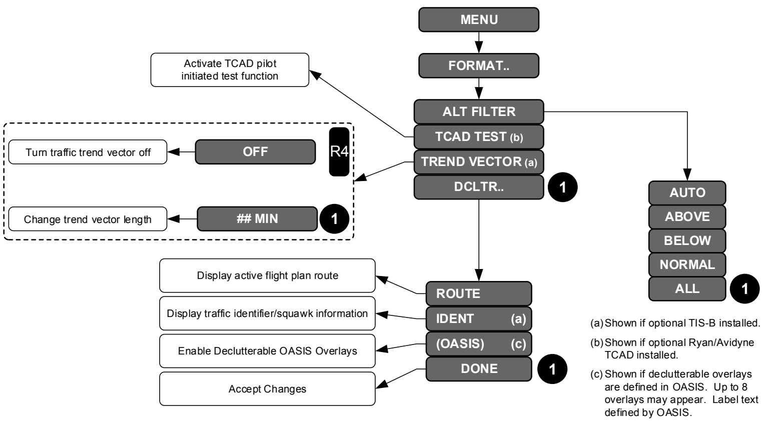



**Figure T-7: MFD Traffic Format (FORMAT) Menu**

Upon selecting the MFD format menu, a list appears with the following options:

1) **ROUTE ON/ROUTE OFF**: Toggles active flight plan route.

2) **IDENT OFF/IDENT ON**: When TCAS flag is TIS-B, toggles traffic identifier/squawk information.

3) **ALT FILTER**: Sets traffic altitude filter to AUTO, ABOVE, BELOW, NORMAL, or ALL.

4) **TCAD TEST**: Activates test function when Ryan/Avidyne TCAD.

5) **TREND VECTOR**: When TCAS flag is TIS-B, sets traffic trend vector length in minutes. **OFF (R4)** turns off traffic trend vector.

## T 6. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu

If traffic enabled, loss of communications with traffic sensor (TRFC).

## T 7. Menu Synchronization

**Table T-6: Menu Synchronization**

| Menu Parameter | Notes |
|---|---|
| *The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence.* | |
| Traffic Filter Setting | |
| *The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference.* | |
| PFD Traffic Thumbnail Show Flag | |
| *The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.* | |
| MFD Traffic Page Settings | |

# Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)

## RBP 1.  Remote BUGs Panel

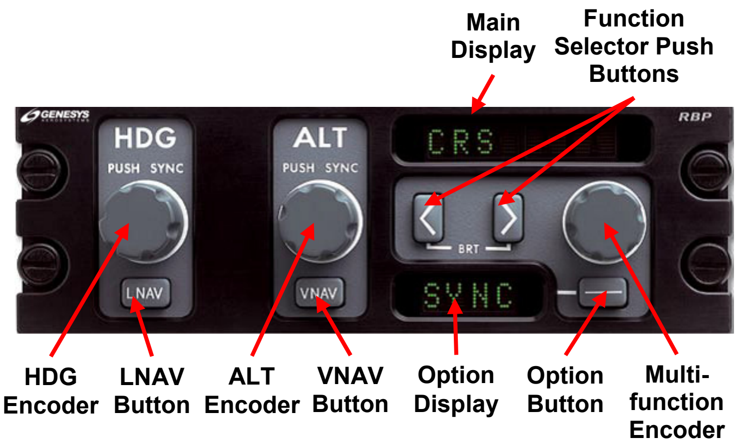



**Figure RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel**

The Remote Bugs Panel (RBP) provides dedicated controls for frequently needed bugs and additional controls for setting IDU parameters such as defined in Table RBP-1.

During initialization, the RBP begins with "GENESYS RBP" on the main and option display screens. To access the internal light sensor control for brightness, press the two arrow buttons simultaneously and rotate the multifunction encoder to make adjustments. Press the Option button to exit the brightness control program and return the RBP to normal operation.

The heading (HDG) and altitude (ALT) encoders behave similarly as the encoders on the IDU-450. (See Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures for HDG and ALT encoder description).

**Table RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)**

| Button/Encoder | Function | Scroll | Push |
|---|---|---|---|
| HDG Encoder | Heading Bug | Increment or decrement | Synchronize to current heading |

**Table RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)**

| Button/Encoder | Function | Scroll | Push |
|---|---|---|---|
| ALT Encoder | Altitude Bug | Increment or decrement target altitude | Synchronize to current altitude |
| Multifunction Encoder | GPS Course | Increment or decrement | Synchronize to current bearing to active waypoint |
| Multifunction Encoder | VOR 1 Course | Increment or decrement | Synchronize to current bearing to the station |
| Multifunction Encoder | VOR 2 Course | | |
| Multifunction Encoder | Airspeed Bug | Increment or decrement | Synchronize to current airspeed |
| Multifunction Encoder | Vertical Speed Bug | Increment or decrement | Synchronize to current VSI |
| Multifunction Encoder | Climb Angle Set | Increment or decrement | Set to 3° |
| Multifunction Encoder | Descent Angle Set | | |
| Multifunction Encoder | Decision Height Bug | Increment or decrement | Set to 200’ AGL |
| Multifunction Encoder | Minimum Altitude Bug | Increment or decrement | Synchronize to current altitude |
| Option “---“ Button | GPS Course | N/A | Change OBS mode (manual or automatic) |
| Option “---“ Button | VOR 1 Course | N/A | No function |
| Option “---“ Button | VOR 2 Course | | |
| Option “---“ Button | Airspeed Bug | N/A | Toggle on or off |
| Option “---“ Button | Vertical Speed Bug | N/A | Toggle on or off |

| Table RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel (RBP) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Button/Encoder** | **Function** | **Scroll** | **Push** |
| Option “---“ Button | Climb Angle Setting | N/A | No function |
| Option “---“ Button | Descent Angle Setting | N/A | No function |
| Option “---“ Button | Decision Height Bug | N/A | Toggle on or off |
| Option “---“ Button | Minimum Altitude Bug | N/A | Toggle on or off |
| Arrow Buttons | Function Scroll | N/A | Move through “Set” options. Press both arrow buttons simultaneously to place into dimming mode. |
| VNAV Button (With autopilot enabled) | VNAV | N/A | Switch autopilot pitch steering and commanded VSI between VNAV sub-mode and target altitude sub-mode |
| LNAV Button (With autopilot enabled) | LNAV | N/A | Switch autopilot roll steering between LNAV sub-mode and heading sub-mode |

## RBP 1.1. Multifunction Encoder

FMS OBS function is available:

1) On the Side in Command; OR

2) When side in command cannot be determined; OR

3) If not cross-linked; OR

4) When side in command is not using FMS as its NAV source.

VOR1 OBS function is available:

1) On the side in command; OR

2) When side in command cannot be determined; OR

3) When side in command is not using VOR1 as its NAV source.

VOR2 OBS function is available:

1) On the side in command; OR

2) When side in command cannot be determined; OR

3) When side in command is not using VOR2 as its NAV source.

SPD bug function is disabled (it is driven by a control on the AFCS panel).

VSI bug function is available when the AFCS is in VNAV mode with a VSI climb or VSI descent as the current vertical control law and:

1) On the side in command; OR

2) When side in command cannot be determined.

Climb angle function is available:

1) On the side in command; OR

2) When side in command cannot be determined.

Descent angle function is available:

3) On the side in command; OR

4) When side in command cannot be determined.

Otherwise, there are no changes to the multifunction encoder functions.

## RBP 2. Menu Synchronization

| Table RBP-2: Menu Synchronization | |
|---|---|
| **Menu Parameter** | **Notes** |
| *The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence.* | |
| AHRS 1 and 2 mode and slewing values | |
| VNAV Climb Angle | |
| VNAV Descent Angle | |
| Decision Height Setting | Used when "Dual Decision Height Flag" is false. |
| Heading Bug | |
| Minimum Altitude Bug Value | |
| VLOC OBS Settings | |
| Airspeed Bug Setting | |
| Target Altitude Bug Setting | |
| Settable V-Speeds | |
| VSI Bug Setting | |
| Crosslink Synchronization Status | |
| *For menue synchronization. The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays when crosslink is enabled. Otherwise, they are only synchronized onside. These parameters are FMS parameters and allow the pilot and co-pilot FMSs to be operated independently when crosslink is inhibited.* | |
| Active Flight Plan Parameters | |
| *The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference.* | |
| Sensor Selections | |
| Transition Altitude | |
| Barometric Setting Units | |
| Barometric Setting Value | |
| Barometric Setting Mode | |
| Decision Height Setting | Used when "Dual Decision Height Flag" is true. |
| Navigation Source | |

**Table RBP-2: Menu Synchronization**

| Menu Parameter | Notes |
|---|---|
| PFD Analog AGL | |
| PFD Altitude (meters) Show Flag | |
| *The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.* | |
| MFD Selected Page | This parameter is transmitted to all other IDUs to support weather radar vertical profile mode selection. |
| MFD Map Page Settings | Map scale is transmitted onside to support weather radar range selection. |
| MFD Map and HSI Page Pointer Settings | |
| MFD Map Function Declutter Settings | |
| MFD Show ETA Flag | |
| MFD Map NavData Symbol Declutter Settings | |

# WX-500 Lightning Strikes

## S 1. WX-500 Data

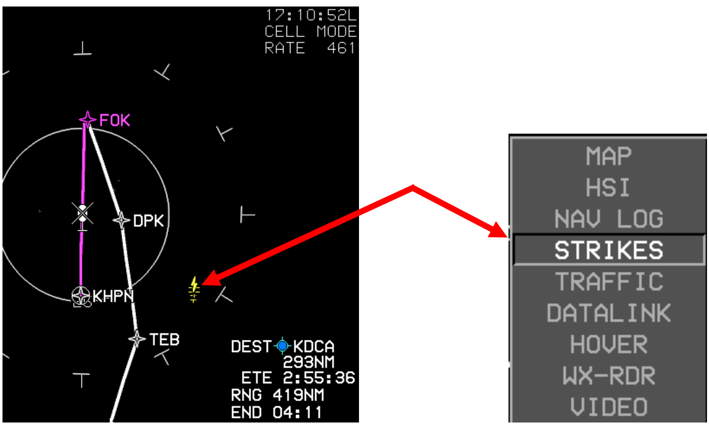



**Figure S-1: Strikes Page**

When selected, the ND displays cell mode or strike mode lightning strikes in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with the following limits.

**Table S-1: Lightning Strikes**

| Time or Distance Limit | View |
|---|---|
| Display scale less than 25 NM | Strikes not shown |
| More than 3 minutes old | |
| Strikes less than 20 seconds old | Lightning symbol |
| Strikes between 20 seconds and 2 minutes old | Large cross symbol |
| Strikes between 2 and 3 minutes old | Small cross symbol |

The pilot may select either an arced or centered display format.

**Arced**: Ownship displaced toward the bottom of the screen. Strike data are displayed in a larger scale while displaying all data within range ahead of the aircraft.

**Centered**: Ownship symbol is in the center of the ND with navigation data is displayed out to an equal distance in all directions.

The strikes page has Strikefinder markings aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input. When the AHRS is in DG mode, “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol.

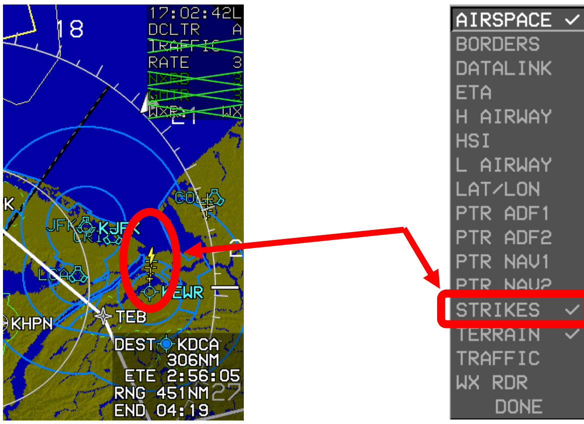



**Figure S-2: Lightning Symbols**

## S 2. Strikes Page Screen Range

The following screen ranges may be selected with all distances representing the distance from the ownship symbol to the “Strikefinder” markings: 12.5 NM, 25 NM, 50 NM, 100 NM, and 200 NM. The range ring is centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to displayed symbols. The range ring has half the radius of the “Strikefinder” markings displayed indicating the range corresponding to the radius of the range ring such as (1.5 NM, 25 NM, 50 NM, and 10 NM.) The range ring is completely visible in arced display format for the pilot to ascertain the current strikes page setting.

## S 3. Air Data and Groundspeed


**Figure S-3: Air Data and Groundspeed in Upper Left Corner**

## S 4. Clock and Options


Clock with Local Offset Time


Clock with Zulu Time

**Figure S-4: Clock and Options**

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of traffic screen:

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time**: As specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

2) **WX-500 Status**: When selected, displays cell mode lightning strikes in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with the limits found in Table S-2.

**Table S-2: WX-500 Status**

| Condition | Annunciation |
|---|---|
| System Normal, Strikes Selected | **RATE ###** depicts current strike rate. Strike symbols shown |
| System Normal, Strikes De-selected "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" in EFIS Limits. | **STRIKES** overlaid with green "X" Strike symbols removed |
| System Normal, Strikes De-selected "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" in EFIS Limits. | **STRIKES** overlaid with red "X" Strike symbols removed |
| System Failed, "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" in EFIS Limits. | **STRK TST** shown Strike symbols removed |

A new strike rate value is calculated every five seconds during normal operation, based upon strikes within the selected display range. The number of fresh strikes (less than 20 seconds old) is used to generate a strike rate representing strikes per minute. Strike rate increases are displayed immediately upon calculation, while decreases in strike rate are damped. Activating the strike clear function resets the strike rate to zero.

## S 5. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown on the strikes page in correct relationship to the ownship symbol.

When there is an active waypoint and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is manual, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint. The pointer matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

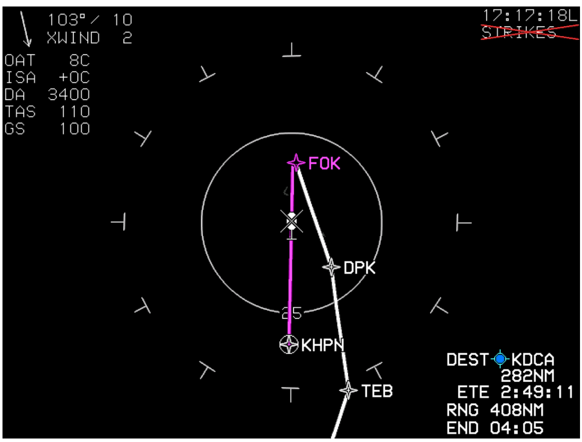



**Figure S-5: Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways**

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The strikes page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

## S 6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions


**Active Waypoint** **Active Waypoint as Destination**

**Figure S-6: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions**

## S 7. MFD Strikes Format (FORMAT) Menu

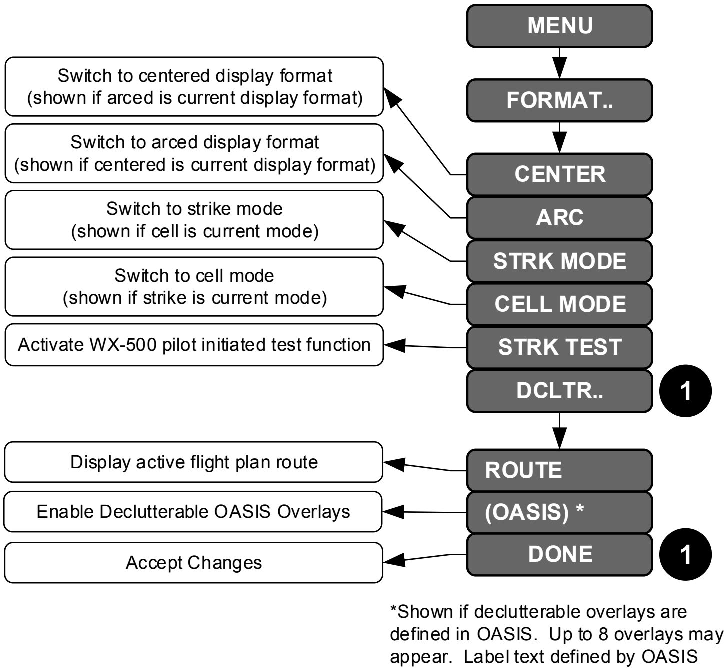



**Figure S-7: MFD Strikes Format (FORMAT) Menu**

Upon selecting the MFD format menu when in the Strikes page, the following option list appears:

1) **CENTER/ARC**: Toggles centered and arced display format.

2) **ROUTE ON/ROUTE OFF**: Toggles the active flight plan route.

3) **STRK MODE/CELL MODE**: Toggles strike and cell mode strikes.

4) **STRK TEST:** Activates the WX-500 test function.

## S 8. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

**CLR STRKS (L2)** or **WX LGND (L2)**: On ND or Strikes page with WX-500 enabled, **CLR STRKS** activates the strike clear option.

## S 9. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu

PAGE menu allows the pilot to select which MFD page to display:

**STRIKES**: Shows the Strikes page.

## S 10. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu

If the WX-500 option is enabled, loss of communications with the WX-500.

## S 11. Menu Synchronization

**Table S-3: Menu Synchronization**

| Menu Parameter | Notes |
|---|---|
| *The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.* | |
| MFD Selected Page | Parameter is transmitted to all other IDUs to support weather radar vertical profile mode selection. |
| MFD Map Page Settings | Map scale is transmitted onside to support weather radar range selection. |
| MFD Strike (WX-500) Page Settings | |

# Datalink

## D 1. Datalink Symbology

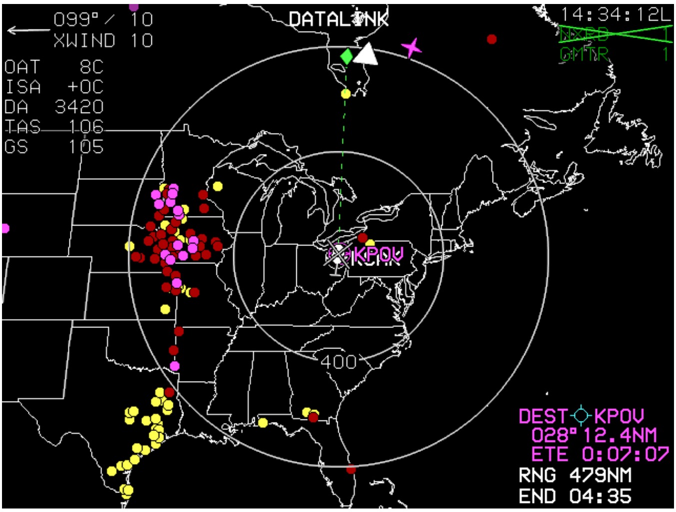



**Figure D-1: Datalink Symbology with G METAR On**

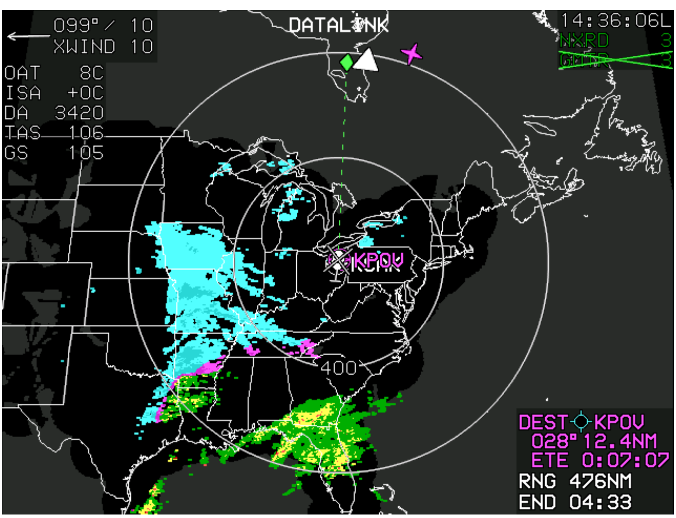



**Figure D-2: Datalink Symbology with NEXRAD On**

| Table D-1: ADS-B Data | |
|---|---|
| NEXRAD Data | Available if included in user subscription. |
| Graphical METAR Data | Available if textual METAR data is included in user subscription. Derived from textual METAR data using EFIS algorithm. |

NEXRAD data is displayed on the ND in correct relationship as colored regions of precipitation using the convention.

**Table D-2: Datalink NEXRAD Data**

| Color | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Gray Shading | Areas beyond the limits of radar coverage or areas with missing data |
| Magenta | Rain >= 50dBZ |
| Red | Rain >= 45dBZ and < 50dBZ |
| Light Red | Rain >= 40dBZ and < 45dBZ |
| Amber (Yellow) | Rain >= 30dBZ and < 40dBZ |
| Green | Rain >= 20dBZ and < 30dBZ |
| Cyan | Snow >= 20dBZ |
| Light Cyan | Snow >= 5dBZ and < 20dBZ |
| Magenta | Mixed Precipitation >= 20dBZ (Area is distinguishable from rain >= 50dBZ by graphical context) |
| Light Magenta | Mixed Precipitation >= 5dBZ and < 20dBZ |

Graphical METARs are displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol as a large color-filled circle as follows.

**Table D-3: Graphical METARS (GMETARS) Screen Range**

| Screen Range | Display |
|---|---|
| 50 NM | All GMETARS with Airport Symbol and ID |
| 100 NM | All GMETARS with Airport Symbol only |
| 200 NM | All GMETARS |
| 400 NM | VFR GMETARS are decluttered |
| 800NM and 1,600 NM | VFR and MVFR GMETARS are decluttered |

Graphical METARs are also displayed in the menu system “nearest airport,” “nearest weather,” and “info” functions.


**Figure D-3: NRST Airport INFO**

If the airport has an available datalinked METAR, the circular part of the airport symbol is colored-fill with the following convention.

**Table D-4: Graphical METAR Symbols**

| Color | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Sky Blue | Visual Flight Rules (VFR) |
| Green | Marginal Visual Flight Rules (MVFR) |
| Amber (Yellow) | Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) |
| Red | Low Instrument Flight Rules (LIFR) |
| Magenta | Less than Category 1 Approach Minimums |
| Black | No Data |

Graphical weather conditions data are displayed in the menu system “info” function as large colored squares per the following convention.

**Table D-5: Datalink Graphical METAR Precipitation**

| Color | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Sky blue | No significant precipitation |
| Green | Rain |
| White | Snow |
| Red | Hazardous weather |
| Right half gray | Obscuration to visibility |
| Small black square centered in large square | High wind |
| Black | No data |

Textual METAR and TAF data are displayed when appropriate in the menu system "info" function. Time of observation and forecast are contained within the text.

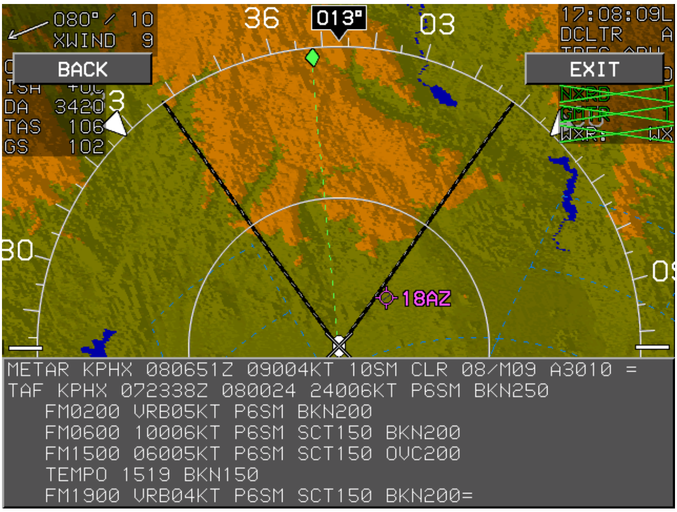
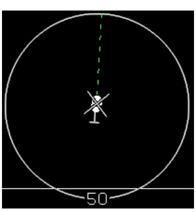



**Figure D-4: METAR and TAF Report for KPHX**

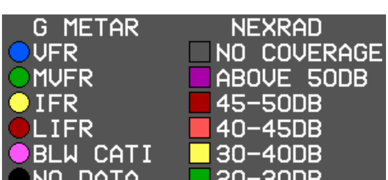
### D 1.1. Ownship Symbol




When not panning with AHRS in the DG mode, "DG" appears to the right of the ownship symbol. The datalink page is always displayed in north-up orientation with a boundary circle in place of the compass rose. If not in pan mode, the ownship symbol is aligned with the aircraft heading.

**Figure D-5: Datalink Symbology Rotorcraft Ownship Symbol**

### D 1.2. Datalink Page Legend




When selected, the datalink page legend depicts symbology used for graphical METARs and NEXRAD with winter colors.

**Figure D-6: ADS-B Datalink Page Legend**

## D 1.3. Air Data and Groundspeed

Air data and groundspeed are displayed in the upper left corner of the datalink page as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

## D 1.4. Clock/Options

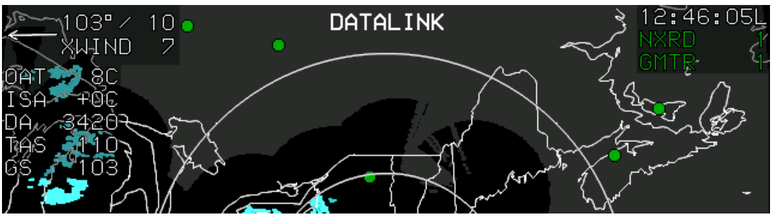



**Figure D-7: Clock/Options**

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the ND:

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time:** As in Section 3 Display Symbology.

2) **Datalink Weather Status**: When status of NEXRAD, graphical METARs are displayed as follows.

**Table D-6: Datalink NEXRAD Status**

| **Condition** | **Status Annunciation** | |
|---|---|---|
| | ***NEXRAD** | **Graphical METAR** |
| Never completely downlinked | No Annunciation | |
| Downlinked within last 5 minutes and selected for display*. “Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled. | “NXRD ##” in green. ## is age in minutes.<br>NEXRAD shown. | “GMTR ##” in green. ## is age in minutes.<br>GMETARS shown. |
| Downlinked within last 5 minutes and deselected from display*. “Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled. | “NXRD ##” in green. ## is age in minutes.<br>“NXRD ##” overlaid with green “X”<br>NEXRAD not shown. | “GMTR ##” in green. ## is age in minutes.<br>“GMTR ##” overlaid with green “X”<br>GMETARS not shown. |

| Table D-6: Datalink NEXRAD Status | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Condition** | **Status Annunciation** | |
| | ***NEXRAD** | **Graphical METAR** |
| Not downlinked within last 5 minutes but downlinked within last 10 minutes and selected for display*. "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled. | "NXRD ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes.<br>NEXRAD shown. | "GMTR ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes.<br>GMETARS shown. |
| Not downlinked within last 5 minutes but downlinked within last 10 minutes and deselected from display*. "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled. | "NXRD ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes.<br>"NXRD ##" overlaid with green "X"<br>NEXRAD not shown. | "GMTR ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes.<br>"GMTR ##" overlaid with green "X"<br>GMETARS not shown. |
| Not downlinked within last 10 minutes but downlinked within last 75 minutes and selected for display*. | "NXRD ##" in red. ## is age in minutes.<br>NEXRAD shown. | "GMTR ##" in red. ## is age in minutes.<br>GMETARS shown. |
| Not downlinked within last 10 minutes but downlinked within last 75 minutes and deselected from display*. "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled. | "NXRD ##" in red. ## is age in minutes.<br>"NXRD ##" overlaid with green "X"<br>NEXRAD not shown. | "GMTR ##" in red. ## is age in minutes.<br>"GMTR ##" overlaid with green "X"<br>GMETARS not shown. |
| Not downlinked within last 75 minutes (timed-out). "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled. | "NXRD XX" in red<br>"NXRD XX" overlaid with red "X"<br>NEXRAD not shown. | "GMTR XX" in red<br>"GMTR XX" overlaid with red "X"<br>GMETARS not shown. |
| * If installed, weather radar selected for display | | |

## D 1.5. Datalink Page Screen Range

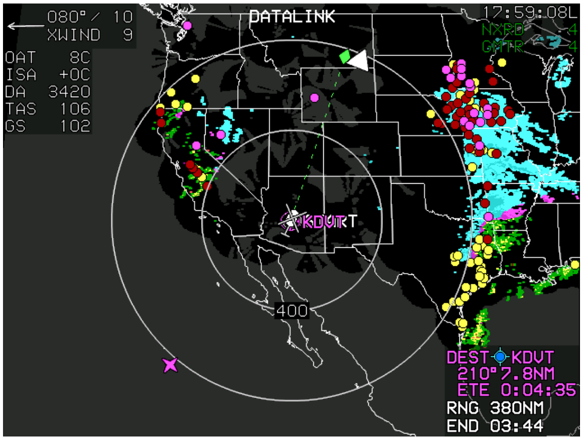



**Figure D-8: Datalink Page Screen Range**

When selected, the following screen ranges (all distances represent distance from the ownship symbol to the boundary circle) are available. Radius of the range ring is presented on the range ring.

**Table D-7: Datalink Page Screen Ranges**

| Ownship to Boundary Circle | Radius Range Values |
|---|---|
| 50 NM | 25 NM |
| 100 NM | 50 NM |
| 200 NM | 100 NM |
| 400 NM | 200 NM |
| 800 NM | 400 NM |
| 1,600 NM | 800 NM |

## D 1.6. Boundary Circle Symbols

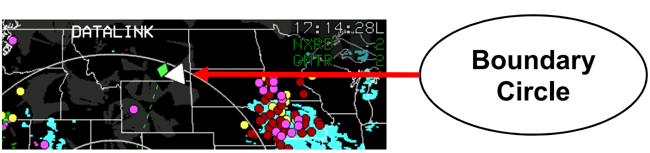



**Figure D-9: Boundary Circle Symbol**

A white triangular heading pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the boundary circle with a green diamond-shaped track pointer aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth. A green dashed lubber line connects the center of the aircraft symbol and the track pointer.

If a target or VNAV altitude is set and not captured, an altitude capture predictor arc is displayed on the lubber line at a point corresponding with predicted climb or descent distance (based upon current VSI). The track pointer, lubber line, and altitude capture predictor arc are not displayed when groundspeed is less than 60 knots. A pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the boundary circle. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer displayed on the boundary circle at a point corresponds with the active waypoint. The waypoint pointer turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution. Boundary circle symbols are not drawn when in pan mode.

### D 1.7. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and automatic GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the flight plan path, when selected, is shown in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all GPS/SBAS path definition requirements and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map). Active flight plan path fly-over waypoints symbols are distinct from fly-by waypoints and consist of the waypoint symbol within a circle. When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray dashed lines.

When there is an active waypoint and manual GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The datalink page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

### D 1.8. Borders

National and United States state borders are drawn in white in correct relationship to the ownship symbol.

### D 1.9. Pan Mode

Use the pan mode to change the location of the center of the page away from current location and view weather conditions along the route of flight and at the intended destination or alternate destination. When pan mode is active, press **NORTH (L3)**, **SOUTH (L4)**, **EAST (R3)**, or **WEST (R4)** to pan in indicated direction. When pan mode is active, a line is drawn from the map center to the aircraft's current position, and bearing and distance to the map center is always displayed above the ownship symbol when the aircraft is more than 0.5 NM away. If referenced to magnetic north, (as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology) when panning, the nearest displayed graphical METAR symbol within the inner range ring is highlighted with a flashing circle. When such a point is highlighted, dedicated buttons are present to allow the pilot to view and hide the waypoint information (including datalink weather information) associated with that point.

## D 2. MFD Datalink Format (FORMAT) Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu when in the Datalink page, an option list appears with the following options:

1) **PAN ON/PAN OFF**: Toggles Datalink page pan mode.
2) **DCLTR**: Only available when datalink weather products are available for display. Allows the pilot to select individual datalink weather products for display. Only those datalink weather products available for display appear in the selection box.
3) **ROUTE ON/ROUTE OFF**: Toggles showing the active flight plan route on the Datalink page.

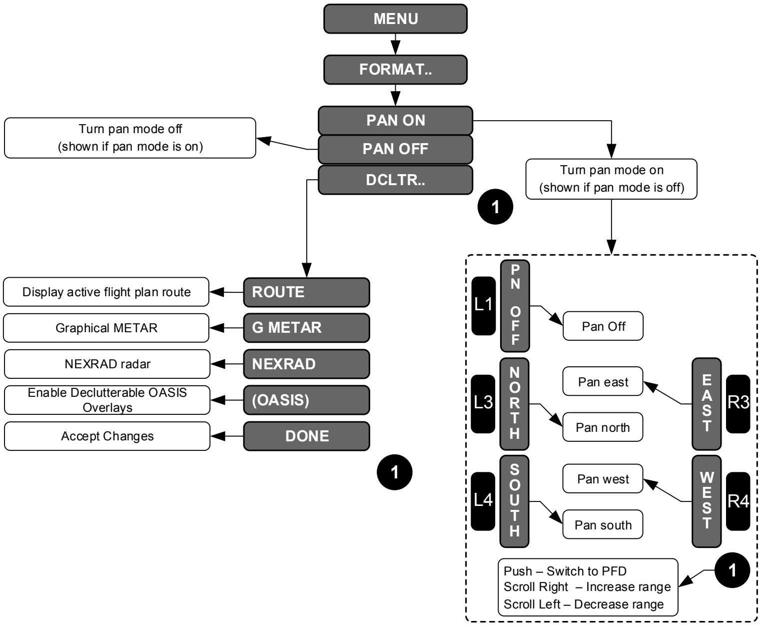
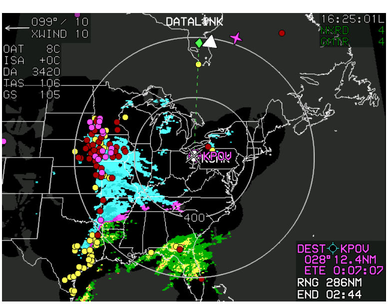


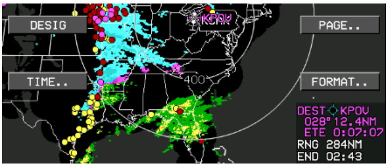

**Figure D-10: MFD Datalink Format (FORMAT) Menu**

## D 2.1. MFD DATALINK Page (Step-By-Step)

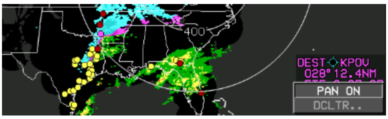

1) Press **MENU (R1)** then **PAGE (R3)** and scroll ❶ to **DATALINK** and push to enter.




2) Example shows MFD with DATALINK.




3) Press **MENU (R1)** then **FORMAT (R4)** to format Datalink page.




4) Scroll ❶ to **PAN ON**, **DCLTR..**, or **ROUTE ON**, Push to enter.

## D 3. Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions

| Table D-8: Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions | |
|---|---|
| **FPL (L1)** | When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **PN OFF** appears. Press to disable pan mode. **RESET** has precedence over **PN OFF**. |
| **ACTV (L2)** | When showing ND or Datalink page with: (a) pan mode enabled; (b) information for the nearest highlighted waypoint being shown; and (c) airport weather information present in the information block; **WX** appears. Press to display textual METAR and TAF data for the airport. |
| **INFO (L3)** | When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **NORTH** appears. Press to shift the center of page in the specified direction. |
| **OBS (L4)** | When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **SOUTH** appears. Press to shift the center of page in the specified direction. |
| **BARO (R2)** | When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **INFO** or **HIDE** appears. Press to toggle the display of information for the nearest highlighted waypoint. Refer to the INFO Menu requirements for the amount and type of information presented. |
| **NRST (R3)** | When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **EAST** appears. Press to shift the center of page in the specified direction. |
|  **(R4)** | When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **WEST** appears. Press to shift the center of page in the specified direction. |

## D 4. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options

**NRST APT (R3):** Datalink, **WX LGND (L2)** and **EXPND WX (L3)** are available to show a weather symbol legend and highlighted result METAR and TAF text respectively.

**Identifier Entry Box**: Highlighted result information includes datalinked weather information when available.

## D 5. MFD Fault Display Menu

If ADS-B datalink is enabled, an indication of ADS-B position validity (ADSB POSN), an indication of whether maintenance of the ADS-B receiver is required (ADSB MAINT) and an indication of whether the Conflict Situational Awareness algorithm is working (ADSB CSA). MFD Page (PAGE) Menu

**DATALINK**: Shows the Datalink page.

## D 6. Menu Synchronization

**Table D-9: Menu Synchronization**

| Menu Parameter | Notes |
|---|---|
| *The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.* | |
| MFD Selected Page | This parameter is transmitted to all other IDUs to support weather radar vertical profile mode selection. |
| MFD Datalink Page Settings | |

# Weather Radar

## WX 1. Weather Radar

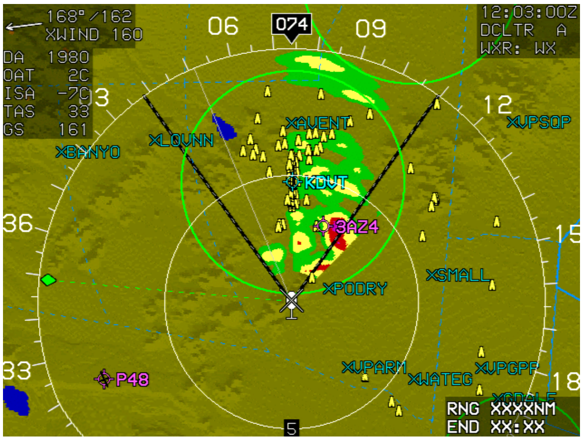



**Figure WX-1: Weather Radar Image on ND**

Weather radar automatically declutters when weather radar returns are selected for display on the ND map page in correct relationship to the ownship symbol unless inhibited during active FLTA alerts. When weather radar is selected, Datalink NEXRAD is automatically deselected. Table WX-1 defines all inhibited factors with display.

| **Table WX-1: Weather Radar Inhibited Conditions** |
|---|
| During Active FLTA alerts |
| ND Moving Map Pan Mode |
| When North Up orientation is selected |
| When RDR-2100 is in vertical profile mode |
| When screen range is too small to effectively show the weather returns (defined as when the length of the weather radar scan line is longer than 512 pixels given current weather radar scale setting, screen range, and screen mode) |

## WX 2. Weather Radar Page Format (FORMAT) Menu

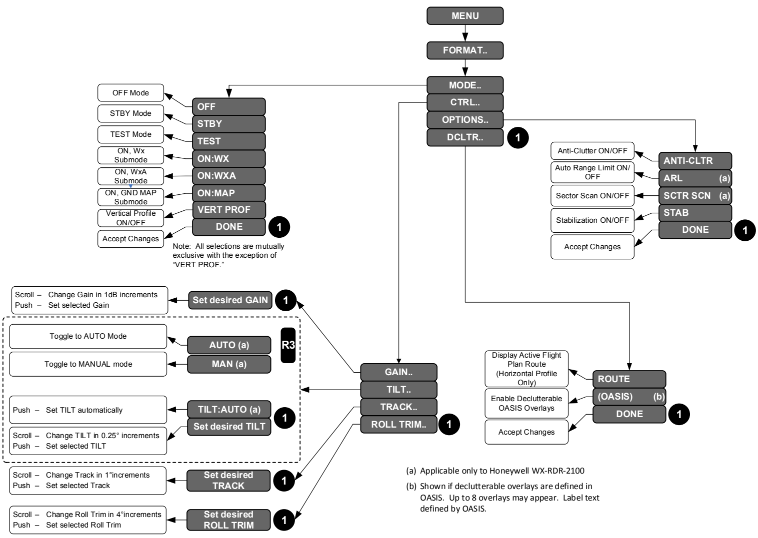



**Figure WX-2: MFD WX RDR Format (FORMAT) Menu**

Upon selecting MFD format menu in the WX RDR page when weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 without external RCP installed, the following list appears.

1) **MODE**: Set the weather radar mode to either **OFF**, **STBY**, **TEST**, **ON**: **WX**, **ON**: **WXA**, **ON**: **MAP**, or **VERT PROF**.

**NOTE:**

The weather radar modes are mutually exclusive and therefore selecting one turns off the other modes with the exception of vertical profile, which appears in the selection box only when the selected weather radar mode is not OFF or STBY.

2) **CTRL**: Activates a list to control live parameters as follows:

   a) **GAIN**: Changes the gain in increments of 1dB.

   b) **TILT**: Changes tilt in units of 0.25 degrees if tilt mode is manual for both weather radar type RDR-2000 and RDR-2100. **TILT:AUTO** is set when tilt is automatic (only RDR-2100 only). When weather radar type is RDR-2100, toggles **AUTO/MAN** tilt mode.

c) **TRACK**: Changes track in increments of 1 degree.

d) **ROLL TRIM**: Changes roll trim in increments of 4 degree.

3) **OPTIONS**: Select or deselect available options to **ANTI-CLTR**, **ARL** (RDR-2100 only), **SCTR SCN** (RDR-2100 only), or **STAB**.

4) **ROUTE ON**/**ROUTE OFF**: Toggles active flight plan route.

In a horizontal depiction, the weather page uses an arced format with the ownship symbol centered in the bottom of the display with the weather area depicted as an arc ahead of the ownship symbol.

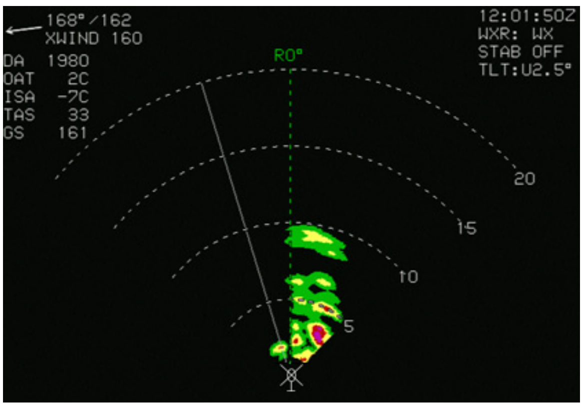



**Figure WX-3: Radar Image in Arced Format**

In a profile depiction, the weather page uses an arced format with the ownship symbol centered on the left side of the display and the weather area depicted as an arc to the right of the ownship symbol.

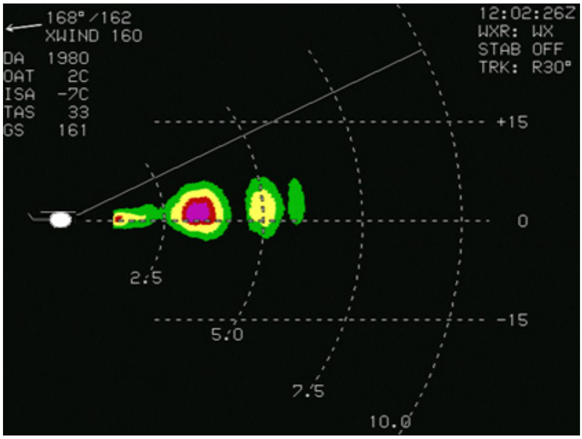



**Figure WX-4: Radar Image in Profile Depiction**

To select profile depiction, use the weather radar control panel connected to the IDU. The EFIS ensures at least one weather radar-enabled page is showing the weather radar page prior to entering into profile depiction and disables profile depiction if the pilot sets the pages for no weather radar page on any weather radar-enabled page. The purpose is to maximize the availability of weather radar information on the ND page. The ND page only shows a horizontal depiction and disables profile depiction if the weather radar mode is set to off or standby via radar control panel.

### WX 2.1. Weather Page Screen Range

Weather page screen range is pilot-selectable with either ❶ (RDR-2000 and RDR-2100 weather radar types) or a control panel directly attached to the weather radar receiver-transmitter. Weather page screen range is displayed as a series of equidistant dashed arcs centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to the displayed weather radar returns. All distances represent the distance from the ownship symbol to the outer dashed arc: 5NM, 10NM, 20NM, 40NM, 80NM, 160NM, 240NM, and 320NM.

For most screen ranges, there are four equidistant dashed arcs. When in 2.5NM range, there are five equidistant dashed arcs. Each arc is labeled with distance in nautical miles at its right-most point (horizontal depiction) or bottom-most point (profile depiction). In profile depiction, there are also three horizontal altitude lines drawn relative to the aircraft's altitude to help judge the vertical distance to the displayed weather radar returns. The center line is level with the ownship symbol to represent the aircraft's altitude. The other two lines are equally spaced above and below the center line to represent altitude differences above and below the aircraft. The number of feet above and below the aircraft varies with the selected range to compensate for the radar scan width at the different ranges.

## WX 2.2. Track Line

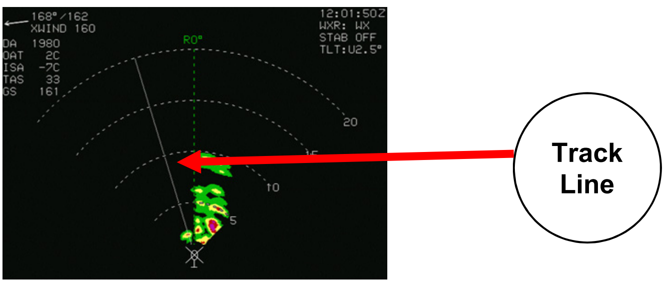



**Figure WX-5: Radar Track Line**

When the weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 and in horizontal depiction, a dashed track line emanates from the ownship symbol to the outer dashed arc. The value of the track line in whole degrees left or right of aircraft heading is displayed adjacent to the outer end of the track line.

## WX 2.3. Active Flight Plan Path/ Manual Course/Runways

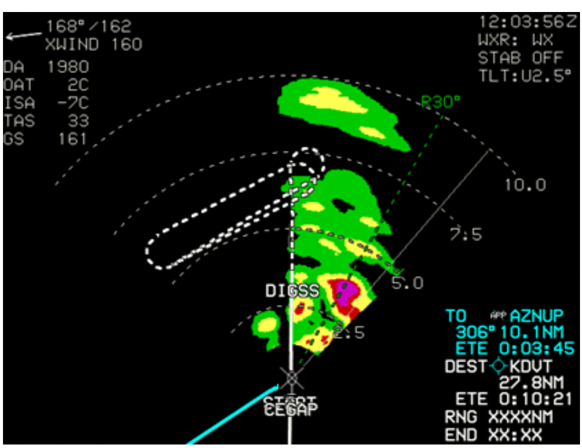



**Figure WX-6: Radar Active Flight Plan**

The active flight plan path (when selected), waypoints, and manual course appear, when the weather radar page is showing horizontal depiction. The weather radar page displays airport runways, when the weather radar page is showing horizontal depiction.

### WX 2.4. Weather Radar Return Data

Weather radar return data are displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol as colored regions according to the value of the ARINC 453 3-bit range bins.

**Table WX-2: Weather Radar Return Data**

| ARINC 453 3-Bit Range Bin | Color | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 000b | Black | No returns |
| 001b | Green | Low-level weather or low-level ground returns |
| 010b | Amber (Yellow) | Mid-level weather or mid-level ground returns |
| 011b | Red | Third-level weather returns. color is black when in MAP mode. |
| 100b | Magenta | Fourth-level weather or third-level ground returns. With RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 weather radar type, color alternates between magenta and black at 1Hz when internal submode is WXA. |
| 101b | Cyan | Automatic range limit returns. Indicates areas of unreliable returns due to radar power absorption. |
| 110b | Light Gray | Moderate turbulence returns |
| 111b | White | Severe turbulence returns |

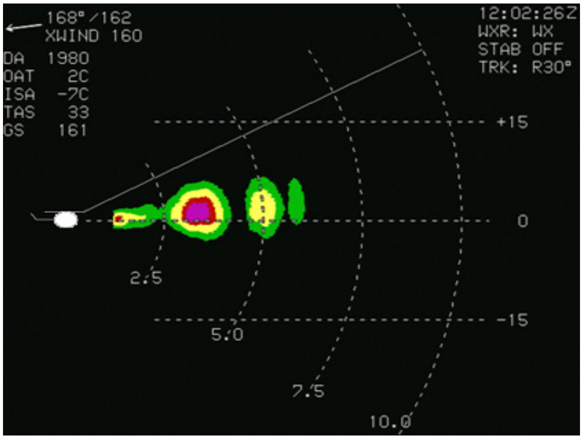



**Figure WX-7: Radar Return Data**

The following weather radar-specific warnings appear in a conspicuous area adjacent to weather radar return data so they do not conflict with the weather radar return data. Only one warning appears at any given time, with the following order of precedence:

1) **WX ALRT**: Weather alert condition is active.
2) **TURB ALRT**: Turbulence alert condition is active.
3) **STAB LIMIT**: Aircraft attitude has moved to a point where the weather radar antenna can no longer be effectively stabilized.
4) **ANT FAULT**: Weather radar antenna is temporarily dislodged by turbulence.

### WX 2.5. Air Data and Groundspeed

Air data and groundspeed are displayed in upper left corner of the weather radar page as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

### WX 2.6. Clock/Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner:


**Figure WX-8: Radar Clock/Options**

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time**: As in Section 3 Display Symbology;

2) **Weather Radar Mode Annunciation**: As in Table WX-3 and Table WX-4.

**Table WX-3: RDR 2100 Applicability**

| Mode | Annunciation |
|---|---|
| Off | **WXR:OFF** |
| Standby | **WXR:STBY** |
| Weather only | **WXR:WX** |
| Weather alert | **WXR:WXA** |
| Ground map | **WXR:GMAP** |
| Contour | **WXR:CONT** |
| Test | **WXR:TEST** |
| Not defined | **WXR:----** |

**Table WX-4: RDR 2100 Mode Annunciation**

| Annunciation | Conditions |
|---|---|
| **Overlaid with Red X** | Weather radar mode is off or not defined.<br>Cooling fault condition exists.<br>Attitude or range fault condition exists.<br>T/R fault condition exists. |
| **STAB OFF (Stabilization)** | Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”;<br>Mode not standby or forced standby; and<br>Weather radar indicates stabilization is off. |
| **TGT ALERT (Target Alert)** | Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”;<br>Mode not standby or forced standby;<br>Weather radar presenting horizontal depiction. |
| **“TLT:UXX.X” or** | U = Up or Down (either U or D, but not both, may appear – use “U” for 0°); |

| Table WX-4: RDR 2100 Mode Annunciation | |
|---|---|
| **Annunciation** | **Conditions** |
| **"TLT:AUTO" (TILT)** | XX.X represents absolute value of the tilt angle in degrees truncated to the nearest tenth;<br>"TLT:AUTO" used where weather radar reports a value of -16°, representing automatic tilt.<br>Weather radar tilt annunciation only appears when all following conditions are true:<br>1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red "X";<br>2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and<br>3) Radar not in vertical profile depiction. |
| **TRK:LXX (TRACK)** | L = Left or Right (either L or R, but not both, may appear – use "R" for 0°); and<br>XX represents absolute value of the track angle in degrees.<br>Weather radar track annunciation only appears when all following conditions are true:<br>1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red "X";<br>2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and<br>3) Radar in vertical profile depiction. |
| **"GN:SXXDB," "GN:CAL," or "GN:MAX" (GAIN)** | S = Sign (either "+" or "-," but not both, may appear – use "+" for 0°); and<br>XXDB represents the manual gain setting in decibels.<br>"GN:CAL" represents the calibrated condition<br>"GN:MAX" represents maximum manual gain<br>Weather radar manual gain annunciation only appears when all following weather radar mode conditions are true:<br>1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red "X";<br>2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and<br>3) Mode is ground map. |

### WX 2.7. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Bearing and Distance Functions

Displayed as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

## WX 3. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu

Upon selecting the MFD faults menu, the status of the following system parameters are displayed if weather radar is enabled:

1) Indicates weather radar power/communication status (WXR PWR X or WXR PWR OK). Status failed (WXR PWR X) reflects any one of the following conditions is true:
    a) Loss of weather radar communication.
    b) Weather radar mode is OFF.
2) Indicates weather radar fault status (WXR FAULT –, WXR FAULT X, or WXR FAULT OK). Status failed (WXR FAULT –) indicates it is not possible to determine weather radar faults. Status failed (WXR FAULT X) reflects any of the following conditions is true:
    a) A cooling fault condition exists.
    b) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6 or Collins 800/840, a display or control bus fault condition exists.
    c) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6, Collins 800/840, or Honeywell PRIMUS, a calibration or air data fault condition exists.
    d) An attitude or range fault condition exists.
    e) A control fault condition exists.
    f) A T/R fault condition exists.
3) If weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100, indicates radar control panel status (WXR RCP X or WXR RCP OK). Status failed (WXR RCP X) indicates loss of communication or a failure status using same test as invalid data SSM for output labels 270, 271, 273, or 275.

## WX 4. Menu Synchronization

| Table WX-5: Menu Synchronization | |
|---|---|
| **Menu Parameter** | **Notes** |
| *The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference.* | |
| Weather Radar Scale | Onside because range is controlled by the weather radar. |
| *The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.* | |
| MFD Selected Page | This parameter is transmitted to all other IDUs to support weather radar vertical profile mode selection. |
| MFD Map Page Settings | Map scale is transmitted onside to support weather radar range selection. |

# Video

## V 1. Video Input Page

The video input page is an image of 640 by 480 pixels and accepts video input signals in the RS-170 composite format. The system is configurable to the NTSC, PAL (including the PAL-m and PAL-nc variants), or SECAM versions of RS-170 separately for each video input. In addition, an auto-detection mode, which programs the video input chip to process most standard RS-170 formats, is configurable for each video input.

When no video signal is detected, the video input page is black and **NO VIDEO IMAGE AVAILABLE** is displayed in white on the center of the page. To aid in diagnosing problems with undetected video signals, the following annunciations are also displayed:

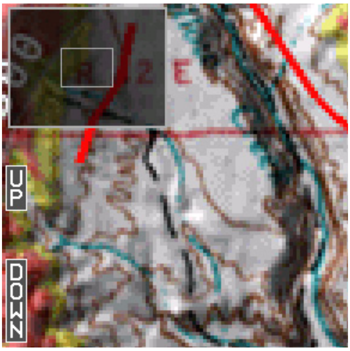
1) **NO INTERLACED SIGNAL**: No interlaced signal detected.
2) **NO HORIZ OR VERT SYNC**: No horizontal or vertical synchronization detected.
3) **NO COLOR SIGNAL**: No video chroma signal detected.
4) **LOAD ERROR DETECTED**: Video chip reports a load error.
5) **TRIGGER ERROR DETECTED**: Video chip reports a trigger error.
6) **PROGRAMMING ERROR DETECTED**: Video chip reports a programming error.

### V 1.1. ZOOM Level

Scroll ❶ CW to increase or CCW to decrease zoom levels from 1 (no pixel replication) to 10 in increments of 1.


**Figure V-1: Encoder Functions for MFD Video Page**

### V 1.2. Pan Mode




When the ZOOM level is greater than 1, the Video Input page has a pan mode for selecting the portion of the video image displayed by replicating pixels. When pan mode is active, controls are present to allow moving the portion displayed up, down, left, and right.

**Figure V-2: Video Pan View**

A mini-map of the displayed image's position in the full video image is displayed for 10 seconds after:

1) Entering pan mode;
2) Changing the zoom level to a value greater than 1;
3) Panning the zoomed image.

Exiting pan mode removes pan mode controls and mini-map, if any.

**Table V-1: Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions With Pan Mode Enabled**

| | Tile Legend | Action |
|---|---|---|
| **L2** | **UP** | Press to move the section of video image displayed in specified direction. |
| **L3** | **DOWN** | |
| **R2** | **LEFT** | |
| **R3** | **RIGHT** | |

## V 2. Video Input Status Display

When selected, the following are optionally displayed in the upper right corner of the Video Input page:

4) **Label**: Identifies video input source and is configurable to one of a set of predefined labels. If no label is configured, the label is **VIDEO-n** where **n** is the video input source number.
5) **ZOOM**: Amount of pixel expansion is displayed as **ZOOM nnX** where **nn** is the ZOOM level.

6) **Brightness**: Displayed as **BRT nnn%** where **nnn** is the brightness setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

7) **Contrast**: Displayed as **CTRST nnn%** where **nnn** is the contrast setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

8) **Saturation**: Chroma saturation is displayed as **SAT nnn%** where **nnn** is the saturation setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

9) **Hue**: Chroma hue is displayed as **HUE nnn%** where **nnn** is the hue setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

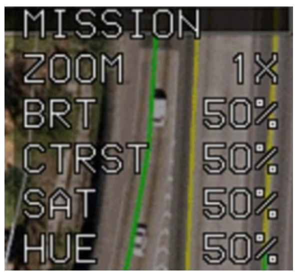



**Figure V-3: Video Status**

## V 3. MFD Video Input Format (FORMAT) Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu when in the Video Input page, a list appears with the following options.

**Table V-2: Video Input Controls**

| Controls Settings | Definition | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| **BRT** | Adjust brightness setting | **DFLT (R4)** resets to nominal default (50%) value. |
| **CTRST** | Adjust contrast setting | **DFLT (R4)** resets to nominal default (50%) value. |
| **SAT** | Adjust chroma saturation (color intensity) setting | **DFLT (R4)** resets to nominal default (50%) value. |
| **HUE** | Adjust chroma hue (red-green balance) settings | **DFLT (R4)** resets to nominal default value (50%) value. |

| Table V-2: Video Input Controls | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Controls Settings** | **Definition** | **Notes** |
| **SOURCE** | Select optional video source | Displays selected video input, only if more than one video input is enabled. |
| **DCLTR** | Activate option list to select video input status | Video input status settings as in V 2. |

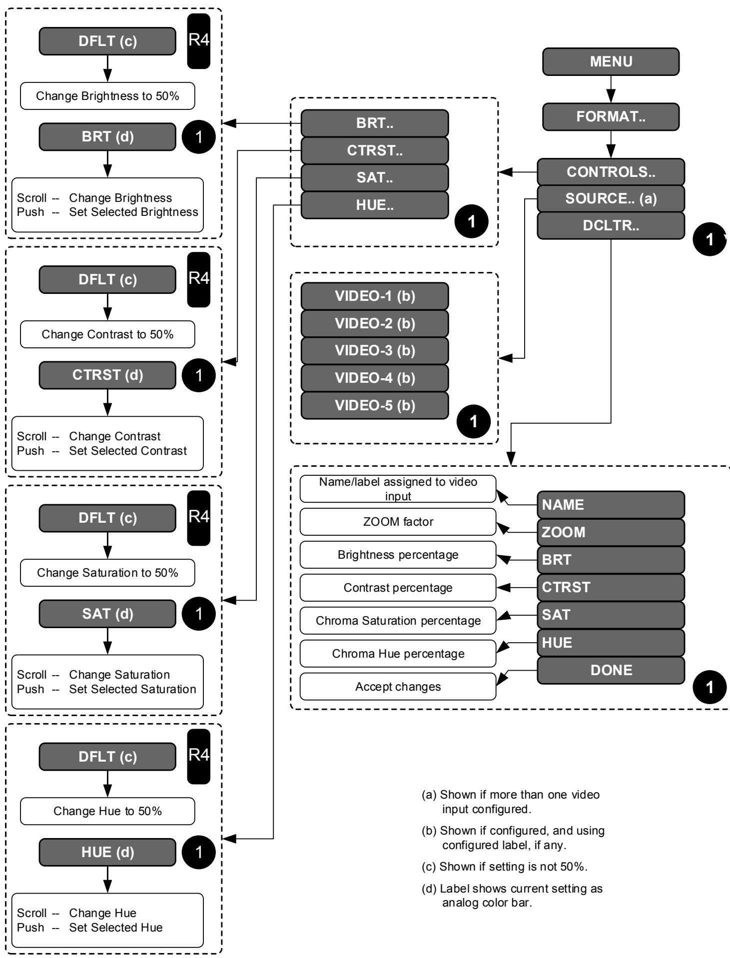



**Figure V-4: MFD Video Input Format (FORMAT) Menu**

## V 4. Menu Synchronization

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Table V-3: Menu Synchronization</th></tr>
<tr><th>Menu Parameter</th><th>Notes</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MFD Video Page Settings</td><td>Video hardware settings<br>• Selected Input<br>• Brightness<br>• Contrast<br>• Saturation<br>• Hue</td></tr>
</table>

# Round Dials

## RD 1. Airspeed Display

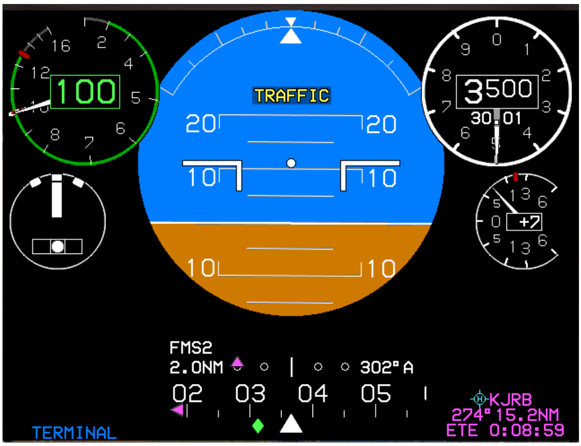
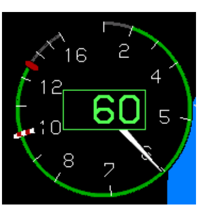
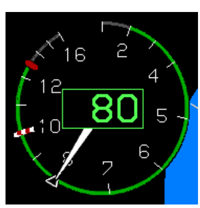



**Figure RD-1: Round Dials Airspeed Display**

The airspeed display digitally displays indicated airspeed in knots, miles, or kilometers per hour (as per aircraft “Speed Units” system limit) and is scaled to show the entire operating range of the aircraft. Clockwise movement indicates increasing speed. When an ADC sensor fails, the display appears as shown in Figure RD-8.




Without airspeed bugs




IAS bug set to 80 and indicating 80 KIAS


IAS bug set to 80 and indicating 70 KIAS

**Figure RD-2: Round Dials Airspeed Display Limits**

1) Gray safe-operating area from bottom of dial to **VMIN**. Airspeed is gray at 0 (indicating “dead” airspeed) but otherwise green.

2) Green safe operating range area from $\mathbf{V_{MIN}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{NO}}$. $\mathbf{V_{MIN}}$ refers to the minimum speed for effective airspeed indication (usually 20KIAS, depending on the connected ADC). Airspeed readout is gray at 0 (indicating “dead” airspeed) but otherwise green.

3) Amber (yellow) caution range area from $\mathbf{V_{NO}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{NE}}$ (power-on). Airspeed readout is yellow.

4) Red radial line at $\mathbf{V_{NE}}$ (power-on). Airspeed readout is red at or above the red radial line.

The airspeed dial for Part 27 and Part 29 rotorcraft has additional specific airspeed markings as follows:

A red cross-hatched radial line at $\mathbf{V_{NE}}$ (power-off).

## RD 2. Round Dials PFD

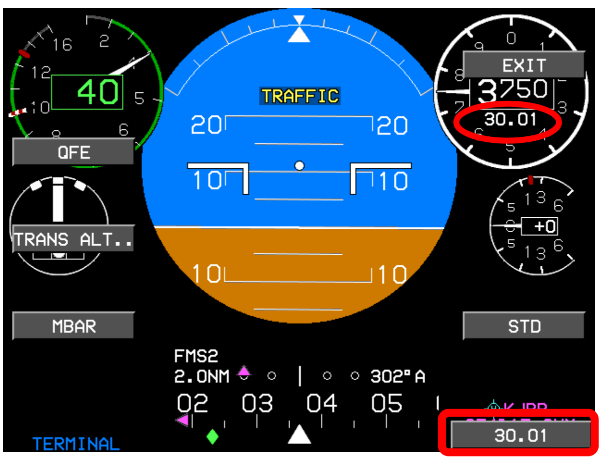



**Figure RD-3: Round Dials PFI Area (QNH)**

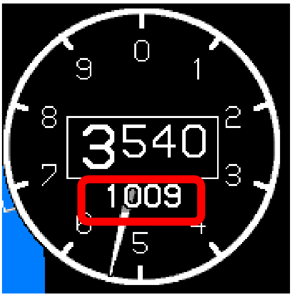
## RD 3. Round Dials PFI Configuration

Altitude display and changing altimeter setting:

1) Press **BARO (R2)** to enter BARO mode and view the inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) value in the lower right corner.

2) Scroll ❶ CW to increase or CCW to decrease QNH. (As shown encircled in red in Figure RD-3, Figure RD-4, and Figure RD-5.)

3) Push ❶ or press **EXIT (R1)** to enter the new value.




The altimeter setting digitally displays the altimeter setting in either inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) according to the pilot-selected units.

**Figure RD-4: Altimeter QNH**


The mode is annunciated as QFE operations otherwise, no mode is annunciated

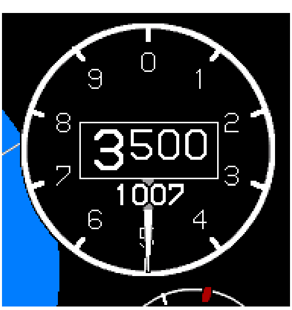
**Figure RD-5: Altimeter QFE**

**QFE**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (i.e., airport or runway threshold).

**QNE**: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

**QNH**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

## RD 4. Altitude Display




The altitude readout digitally displays barometric altitude to the nearest ten feet as adjusted by an altimeter setting and shows a 1000-foot range with labels and graduations every 100 feet. CW rotation of the pointer indicates increasing altitude. All graduations are removed when below sea level.

**Figure RD-6: Altitude Display**

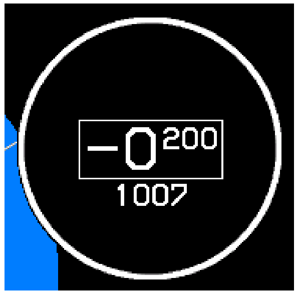



**Figure RD-7: Altitude Display (When Below Sea Level)**

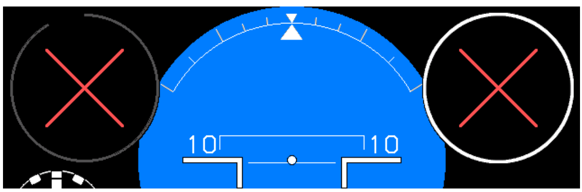



**Figure RD-8: Airspeed and Altitude with Loss of ADC**


Altitude sub-mode user-selectable triangular target altitude bug shown here at 4,400’. The bug is limited to -1,000’ up to the service ceiling and is removed when more than 500’ away from current altitude.

**Figure RD-9: Target Altitude Bug**

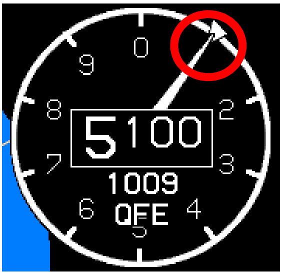
The target altitude bug can be used as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys HeliSAS-E or other autopilot, the bug characteristics indicate the following modes:

1) Filled-white when in altitude hold mode.

2) Hollow-white when in a climb or descent mode.

3) Filled-white during altitude hold capture.

When not vertically integrated with the Genesys HeliSAS-E or other autopilot, the target altitude bug is filled-white at all times.




When in VNAV sub-mode, the VNAV altitude bug appears when within 500’ from the current altitude. In this example, the VNAV altitude is 5,100’.

**Figure RD-10: VNAV Sub-Mode**

The VNAV bug can be used as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys HeliSAS-E or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input as a control parameter for climbs or descents with another autopilot. The following bug characteristics indicate the following modes:

1) Filled-magenta when in altitude hold mode.

2) Hollow-magenta when in a climb or descent mode.

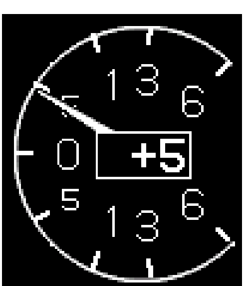
3) Filled-magenta during altitude hold capture.

When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the VNAV bug is filled-white at all times.


Metric altitude values may be selected from within the declutter menu with a resolution of 1 meter.

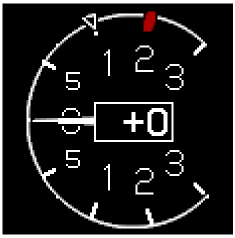
**Figure RD-11: Metric Altitude**

## RD 5. Vertical Speed Indicator

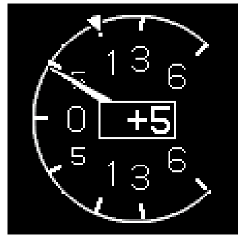



The VSI is located below the altitude display with a readout and dial pointer and scale of ±6,000 feet per minute. The integral scale graduations are ±500, ±1,000, ±3,000, and ±6,000 feet per minute. CW (upward) rotation of the pointer indicates increasing vertical speed while CCW indicates decreasing speed.

**Figure RD-12: Vertical Speed Indicator**




VSI bug set to +1,000 fpm
with HeliSAS enabled




VSI bug set to +1,000 fpm
without autopilot enabled.

**Figure RD-13: VSI Bugs**

The vertical speed bug is mutually exclusive with the IAS bug and can be used either as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the HeliSAS-E or other autopilot as a control parameter for climbs or descents. When vertically integrated, the vertical speed bug is filled-white when in VSI climb or descent mode. Otherwise, the vertical speed bug is hollow-white as shown above on the left. When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the vertical bug is filled-white at all times.

## RD 6. Heading Display

The heading display appears in a blacked-out area on the bottom to emulate a "Basic-T."

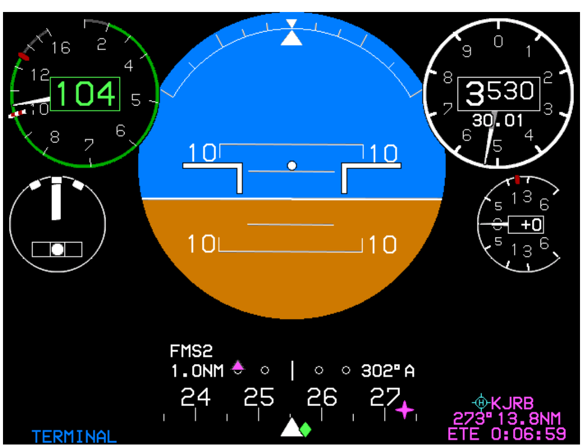



**Figure RD-14: Heading Display**

## RD 7. Turn Rate Indicator

The turn rate indicator is displayed below the airspeed display. This standard turn needle displays marks representing a standard rate turn. The full scale for the turn needle is beyond the standard rate turn mark. This allows the pilot to fly a standard rate turn. The balance ball is driven from accelerometers within the AHRS.

**Figure RD-15: Turn Rate Indicator**

**Table RD-1: PFD Declutter Options and Features**

| Declutter Options | Configuration | | | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Tapes | Basic | Round Dials | |
| PFD Analog AGL Indicator | ✓ | ✓ | | |
| Full-Time or Auto Decluttered Bank Scale Display | ✓ | | | |
| Basic Mode | ✓ | ✓ | | |
| PFD Mini-Map | ✓ | ✓ | | |
| PFD Traffic Thumbnail | ✓ | ✓ | | |
| Skyway Guidance | ✓ | | | |
| Perspective Traffic Depiction | ✓ | | | |
| Turn Rate Indication | ✓ | ✓ | | |
| Single Cue Flight Director | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Dual Cue Flight Director | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| METERS | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |

# INDEX

## *A*

***B***



***C***



***D***

***H***



***I***

*M*

***S***

***T***



***U***

# Glossary

**AGL Indication (Rad Alt, GPS Alt, Baro Alt)** – Display of altitude above the ground, with designation of the altitude source as R (radio altitude), G (GPS WAAS geodetic altitude less local ground elevation), or B (barometric altitude less local ground elevation).

**Air Data and Groundspeed** – Display of density altitude, outside air temperature, ISA temperature deviation, true airspeed, and groundspeed.

**Airspeed Information** – Display of airspeed is the indicated airspeed tape and airspeed readout with associated data. The airspeed function includes color-coded caution bands for minimum and maximum speeds based on V-speeds set in the EFIS limits.

**Altitude Information** – Display of altitude information is the altitude tape and altitude readout.

**Approach Mode Signal Output** – Conventional autopilot approach mode signals are course error output, the left/right deviation signal (localizer output) and the up/down deviation signal (glideslope output). Signals are based on the selected ILS source.

**Attitude Information** – Display of attitude information includes pitch and roll. The bank angle scale may be set to auto-declutter by the pilot when the bank angle is less than 2.8°. The pitch ladder is limited to ±10° from the flight path marker or aircraft waterline, whichever is greater. The unusual attitude display appears when the aircraft pitch exceeds ± 30° or bank angle exceeds 65° (fixed wing) or 50° (rotorcraft).

**Autoset** – Automatically selects features or settings.

**Azimuth** – Angle between the north vector and the perpendicular projection of the star down onto the horizon. Usually measured in degrees (°).

**Barometric Altimetry** – Measurement of altitude based on the atmosphere (pressure and temperature).

**Barometric Correction** – Display and altitude correction for local barometric pressure.

**Bezel** – Faceplate of the IDU comprised of pushbuttons along the pushbuttons along the sides and rotary encoders along the bottom.

**Chroma** – Colorfulness relative to the brightness.

**Conformally** – Angle-preserving. Example: Traffic appears conformally on the PFD.

**Course Deviation Indicator** – Display of course deviation from selected course, including a To-From indicator.

**Critical Flight Phase** – Phase(s) of flight where the failure mode would result in a hazard condition using flight phases. For example, failure of ILS would only be a hazard condition during approach and landing.

**Crossfill** – Transfer of data and information between IDUs in a dual system with two PFDs configured.

**Cross-linked** – Synchronized across both EFIS systems.

**Datalinked** – Display of received data such as weather or traffic from peripheral systems such as ADS-B.

**dBZ** – Decibel relative to radar reflectivity (Z). Composite reflectivity shows the highest dBZ (strongest reflected energy) at all elevations. Unlike base reflectivity, which only shows reflected energy at a single elevation scan of the radar, composite reflectivity displays the highest reflectivity of ALL elevations scans. If there is heavier precipitation in the atmosphere over an area of lighter precipitation (i.e. rain has yet to reach the ground), the composite reflectivity displays the stronger dBZ level.

**Deadband** – Neutral zone where no action or changes are made.

**Directional Scale (Compass Rose or Arc) and Ownship Symbol** – Display of general directional information. All MFD pages include a form of the compass rose with current heading pointer and aircraft “ownship” symbol.

**Discrete** – A logic input or output that identifies a condition or status of or for an ancillary system. Discretes are defined by the operating software or settings programmed specifically for the aircraft.

**Display of ADF** – Display of single ADF bearing information in the form of an RMI needle.

**Display of Glideslope** – Display of Glideslope 1 or Glideslope 2 in the form of vertical deviation dots and deviation on PFD or MFD HSI page.

**Display of Lightning Cell Information** – Display of lightning information from a WX-500 system and shown in the form of lightning cells. The pilot may show individual lightning strike data by selecting the dedicated WX-500 page.

**Display of Localizer** – Display of Localizer 1 or Localizer 2 in the form of horizontal deviation dots and deviation.

**Display of Marker Beacon** – Display of outer, middle, and inner marker beacons in the form of a color-coded circle with the corresponding letter (O, M, I).

**Display of Traffic Information** – When integrated with an appropriate traffic system, the PFD and MFD display traffic information in two formats. One format is via traffic symbols as shown on the PFD and MFD Map page and Traffic page. The second format is with the traffic pop-up thumbnail display showing traffic position in a full 360° format on the PFD.

**Display of VOR RMI** – Display of VOR1 and VOR2 bearing in the form of RMI needles.

**Dot** – (CDI scale referenced) represents an additional 2° for VOR and 1.25° for Localizer.

**EFIS-Coupled** – The EFIS is coupled to an autopilot and controls the lateral and vertical modes of the autopilot.

**Failure Condition Hazard Description** – A description of the failure mode to be analyzed.

**Flight Director (Selectable Function)** – Display of flight director in a single or dual cue format when selected for display on the PFD.

**Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector)** – Display of aircraft's actual flight path, showing where the aircraft is going as opposed to where the aircraft is pointed.

**Flight Plan and Navigation Display** – Display of the active GPS WAAS/SBAS-based flight plan, including course line, waypoints, ground track, glide range, projected path, altitude capture predictor, approach procedure, missed approach procedure, and the aircraft present position on the active leg.

**Geodetic** – Set of reference points used to locate places on the earth.

**Geodesic** – A generalization of the notion of a straight line to curved spaces. The shortest route between two points on the Earth's surface.

**Geoid** – Global mean sea level.

**G-Force and Fast/Slow Indicator** – Indications to show the G-force on the aircraft or, for aircraft equipped with a compatible angle of attack computer, the deviation from the reference speed while in the landing configuration.

**Glideslope Sidelobes** – False glideslope signals.

**GPS WAAS Course Deviation Indicator (CDI)** – Display of CDI relative to selected course, either automatic based on active flight plan or manual based on pilot-selected OBS.

**GPS WAAS Functions** – The EFIS meets the GPS WAAS navigation and flight planning/management requirements of TSO-C146a (RTCA/DO-229D) for Class Gamma 3 equipment. These functions include navigation, flight planning (function select, flight plan generation and editing, selected waypoints, user waypoints, etc.), path definition including approach and departure paths, GPS altitude, dead reckoning, navigation modes with automatic mode switching, loss of navigation monitoring, loss of integrity monitoring, etc. The database used with the GPS WAAS functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

**Heading Bug** – Display and control of selected heading using a bug. May be used to drive heading bug output to autopilot for HSI-based heading mode.

**Heading Display** – Display of heading with directional scale is provided at the top of the PFD. This is the same heading information provided on the MFD.

**Heading Mode Signal Output** – Conventional autopilot heading mode signal is a heading error output based on the difference between the EFIS desired heading and the actual aircraft heading. The EFIS desired heading is either the pilot-selected heading bug or a heading designed to achieve and maintain the active GPS-based flight plan.

**Hectopascal (hPa)** – International System of Units (SI) unit measure of pressure, equals one millibar (mbar).

**HeliSAS** – Genesys Aerosystems' helicopter autopilot and stability augmentation system.

**Horizontal Situation Indicator (Selectable Function)** – Display of VOR or localizer and glideslope deviation when selected for display on the PFD.

**HOTAS** – Hands On Throttle And Stick

**Hover Vector Display (Rotorcraft Only)** – Display of hover drift in a rotorcraft installation when the helicopter is traveling less than 30 knots airspeed.

**Inches of Mercury (inHg)** – Unit of atmospheric pressure used in the United States. Named for the use of mercurial barometers which equate height of a column of mercury with air pressure.


**Inhibit** – Prevention of activity or occurrence. Examples are:

XFILL INHBT and TAWS INHBT.

**Integrated Peripherals** – Internal devices of the essential unit.

**Ionosphere** – Region of the atmosphere between the stratosphere and exosphere, 50 to 250 miles (80 to 400 km) above the surface of the earth.

**International Standard Atmosphere (ISA)** – Standard model of the change of pressure, temperature, density, and viscosity over a wide range of altitudes or elevations.

**Landing Gear Indication** – When enabled on retractable landing gear aircraft, PFD shows indication of landing gear extended.

**Lubber Line** – Line marked on the compass showing the direction straight ahead.

**Mach Display** – Display of Mach number when the aircraft is traveling at or above 0.35 Mach. This function may be deselected by a setting in the IDU configuration (limits) file.

**Magnetic Declination (MAGVAR)** – Sometimes called magnetic variation; the angle between magnetic north and true north.

**Map Data** – Display of map data, including airspace, VFR/IFR airports, VHF navaids such as VOR/NDB/DME, jet/victor airways, and display range rings.

**Menu Functions** – The EFIS includes menus to access functions on both the PFD and the MFD.

**Mesocyclonic** – Contains a vortex of air within a convective; air rises and rotates around a vertical axis, often in the same direction as low pressure systems.

**Millibar (mbar)** – Metric (not SI) unit of pressure, one thousandth of a bar, which is about equal to the atmospheric pressure on Earth at sea level - 1013 millibars.


**Miscompare** – Disparity of data or information. Examples are:

ALT MISCOMP, ATT MISCOMP, GPS MISCOMP, GS MISCOMP, HDG MISCOMP, IAS MISCOMP, LOC MISCOMP, PLT MISCOMP, CPLT MISCOMP, RALT MISCOMP, and BARO MISCOMP.

**NavData®** – Jeppesen's aeronautical database to navigate the global airspace system.

**Navigation Data Display** – Display of active waypoint, bearing to waypoint, and ground track based on active flight plan. The pilot may also select flight plan information as a mini-map (thumbnail map). These functions are analyzed as part of the GPS WAAS functions not the PFD functions.

**Navigation Log** – Display of navigation information based on active flight plan, including next waypoint, destination, estimated time remaining, and fuel totalizer-based range and endurance. This function may be deselected by a setting in the IDU configuration (limits) file. These functions are analyzed as part of the GPS WAAS functions not the MFD functions.

**Navigation Mode Signal Output** – Conventional autopilot Navigation mode signals are the course error output and the left-right deviation signals. Course error output is based on the difference between the EFIS selected course (OBS) and the actual aircraft heading. These signals are based on the selected navigation signal (VOR, GPS).

**Nondirectional** – Functions in all directions.

**Noodle** – Navigation Display (ND) projected path; curving path based upon the aircraft bank angle and groundspeed used effectively to assist in course interception and making small adjustments to bank angle for proper roll out.

**Nanoteslas (nT)** – A unit of measurement of the strength of the magnetic field. Earth's strongest magnetic field is located at the poles, and the weakest field is near the equator.

**Obstructions Display** – Display of obstructions identified in the embedded obstruction database which are within 8.5 NM of the aircraft present position. Non-threatening obstructions are displayed by color to identify altitude relative to the aircraft's current altitude (amber [yellow] < 2000' below, light red < 500' below, bright red = at or above aircraft). Threatening obstructions, defined as those that pierce the TAWS envelope, are identified by highlight when producing a caution and identified by flashing highlight when producing a warning. The database used with the obstruction functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

**Omnibearing** – Magnetic bearing of an omni-range station.

**Offset** – When referring to parallel track of an active flight plan, "offset" implies the distance paralleling the original track. When referring to VNAV altitudes, "offset" refers to the distance before or after the waypoint the VNAV altitude must be reached.

**Ownship** – Principal eye-point; referring to icon of aircraft represented on display.

**Pitch Limit Indicator** – Appears when the aircraft is within 10 knots of stall speed, based on the VSI setting in the EFIS limits. The intent is to notify the pilot of a possible stall condition so corrective action is taken before the stall occurs. This function may be deselected by a setting in the IDU configuration (limits) file.

**Q-Routes** – Published RNAV routes, including Q-Routes and T-Routes, can be flight planned for use by the Genesys EFIS, subject to any limitations or requirements noted on enroute charts, in applicable advisory circulars, or by NOTAM. RNAV routes are depicted in blue on aeronautical charts and are identified by the letter “Q” or “T” followed by the airway number, e.g., Q35, T-205. Published RNAV routes are RNAV-2 except when specifically charted as RNAV-1.

**QFE** – Barometric setting that results in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold).

**QNE** – Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure attitude for flight above the transition attitude.

**QNH** – Barometric setting that results in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

**Recency** – State of occurrence, appearance, or origin.

**Selection and Display of Selected Course** – Omni-Bearing Select (OBS) function for the pilot to select the course for navigation. Selected course is displayed for reference.

**Settable V-Speeds, Targets** – The pilot may set certain V-speeds for reference during flight. In addition, the pilot may set certain information at any time for reference during flight, including target airspeed (with corresponding bug) and target altitude (with corresponding bug).

**Side in Command** – Side of aircraft control responsible for its operation.

**Skipped Waypoint** – A skipped waypoint is a waypoint associated with a dynamic termination leg with a zero length. These are either:

1) An altitude termination leg when current aircraft altitude is above the termination altitude; or

2) System-created (i.e., not NavData® specified) intercept to a “Course to a Fix” leg where there is insufficient distance to calculate an intercept heading.

**Skyway VNAV/LNAV Guidance (Synthetic Vision)** – Display of GPS-based active navigation route, flight plan, procedure, or OBS course in a three-dimensional series of skyway boxes. Also known as Highway in the Sky (HITS).

**Slip Indicator** – Display of aircraft lateral accelerations via an integral slip/skid indicator function. The slip indicator is a rectangle just below the heading pointer that moves left and right to indicate the lateral acceleration sensed by the AHRS in the same manner as the ball in a mechanical slip indicator.

**Strikefinder** – Lightning detector system (WX-500) connected to EFIS and enabled through factory program settings.

**Suppressed Waypoint** – A suppressed waypoint (designated by brackets) is an airport associated with an IFR or VFR approach procedure.

**Symbology** – Use of symbols.

**T-Routes** – T-Routes are available for use by GPS or GPS/SBAS equipped aircraft from 1,200 feet above the surface (or in some instances higher) up to but not including 18.000 feet MSL. T-Routes are depicted on enroute low altitude charts and considered to include the same attributes of Low altitude airways in the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS declutter menus.

**Talker** – IDU providing data to external sensors and generating aural alerts. IDUs depend upon intra-system communications to determine which IDU on a side takes over “talker” responsibilities. Only one talker (transmit enabled) per side, two talkers in a two sided system, and a master talker PFD when considering aircraft limits. Any IDU may become a talker through auto reversionary means in the event of the PFD failing.

**Terrain Display (PFD Artificial Horizon)** – Conformal display of surrounding terrain presented with the artificial horizon, shown in the correct scale and perspective for the aircraft’s current position and altitude. Includes conformal display of known runway locations, direction, scale, and perspective based on aircraft’s current position and altitude.

**Terrain Display and TAWS/HTAWS** – Display of terrain, including identification and annunciation of threatening terrain in accordance with Terrain Awareness Warning System (TAWS) requirements. Coloring scheme for SVS-TAWS PFD and MAP has been simplified as follows:

Non-alerting Terrain below aircraft – Olive Shades

Non-alerting terrain above aircraft – Brown Shades

TAWS FLTA Caution Terrain – Amber (Yellow)

TAWS FLTA Warning Terrain – Red

Obstacles Below aircraft – Amber (Yellow)

Obstacles above aircraft – Red

When over water – Deep Blue

Threatening terrain is determined by the requirements of TAWS TSO-C151b (fixed wing) and TSO-C194 HTAWS (rotorcraft). Threatening terrain is shaded amber (yellow) for caution situations or shaded red for warning situations per TSO-C151b and TSO-C194. TAWS cautions and warnings are accompanied by an amber (yellow) or red flag and an aural annunciation. TAWS Class A, TAWS Class B, TAWS Class C, Enhanced HTAWS, or HTAWS functions may be activated in the system prior to installation. The database used with the TAWS functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

**Timer Indication** – Pilot-selected function for a count-up or count-down timer.

**Traffic Display** – When integrated with an appropriate traffic system, traffic is shown using standard TCAS symbology showing relative position, altitude, climb/decent, and color. The pilot may also show traffic information by selecting the dedicated traffic display page.

**Vertical Speed Display** – Display of altitude rate of change (vertical speed or climb rate).

**$V_{PROC}$ (Procedure Speed)** – The aircraft's normal speed (in airspeed units and configured in EFIS limits) for flying instrument approaches (DPs, IAPs, STARs). This value is used for calculating the turn radius used for instrument procedure legs. This speed is not seen on the airspeed tape and only found in the aircraft speed settings inside the limits.

**Warning, Caution, and Advisory Flags** – Display of, warning, caution, and advisory indications accompanied by aural indications. The flags are stacked in the lower left corner of the PFD. Warnings are always shown at the top of the flag stack, followed by cautions and then advisories. These flags remain in view for as long as the situation exists.

**Waterline** – Indication of the aircraft's longitudinal axis or waterline (attitude).

**Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)** – Developed by Federal Aviation Administration to provide accurate positioning part of the Satellite Based Augmentation System (SBAS). Other countries have similar systems: Europe: European Geostationary Overlay System (EGNOS); Japan: MTSAT Satellite-based Augmentation System (MSAS); India: GPS Aided GEO Augmented Navigation system (GAGAN).

**Wind Information** – Display of wind direction, wind speed, and cross wind component.

**Zulu Clock, Timers** – Display of Zulu time (based on GPS data) and pilot-selected timer.

Copyright © 2018 Genesys Aerosystems. All rights reserved.


# IDU-450 Version 8.0F
# Pilot Guide (Rotorcraft)

GENESYS AEROSYSTEMS

PRECISE PERFORMANCE.
PROVEN EXPERIENCE.
PERSONALIZED ATTENTION.

64-000102-080F

genesys-aerosystems.com | 1-817-215-7600
Genesys Aerosystems One S-TEC Way, Municipal Airport, Mineral Wells, TX 76067 USA